



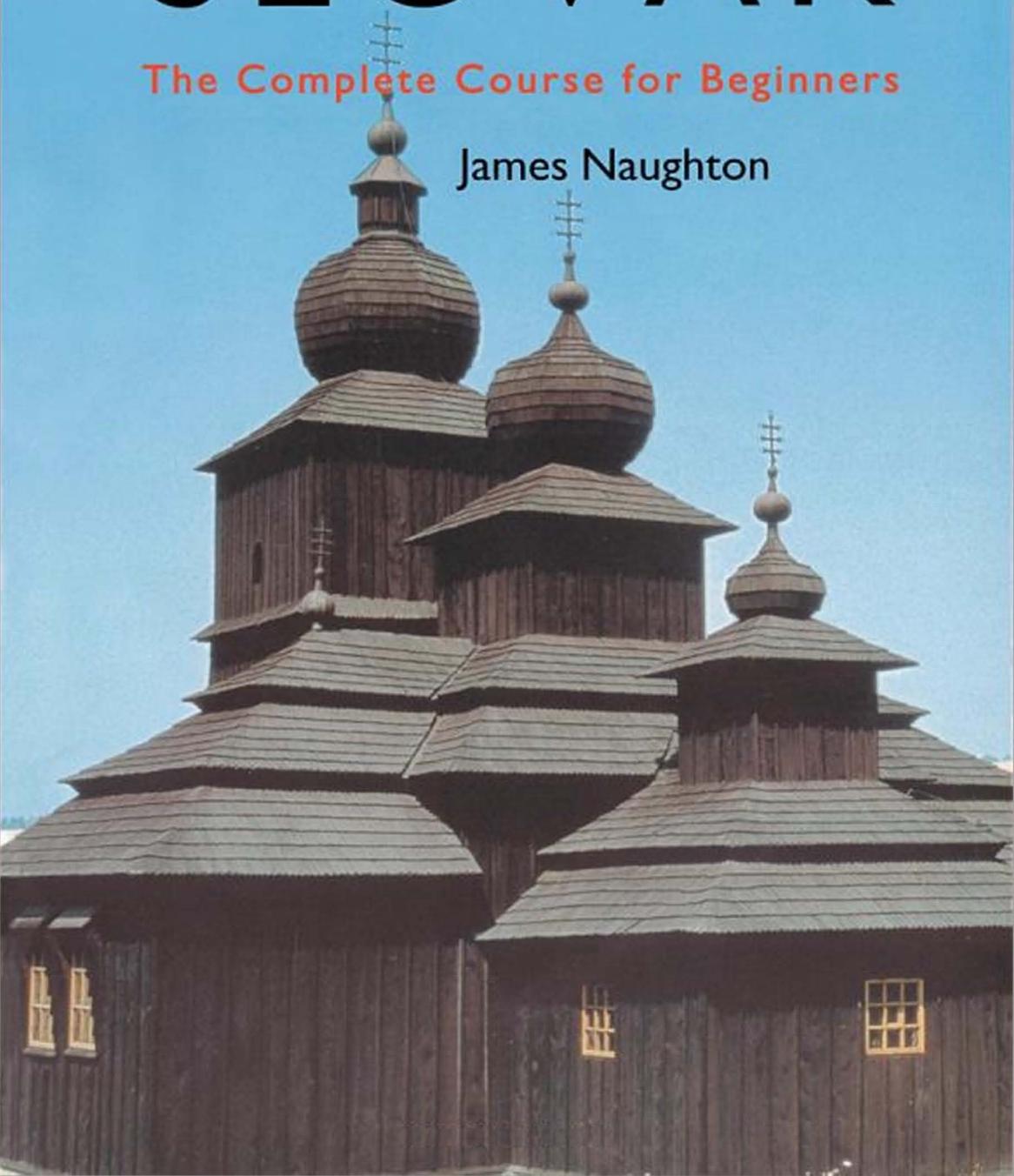
Cassettes  
Available

COLLOQUIAL

# SLOVAK

The Complete Course for Beginners

James Naughton



**Colloquial**

# **Slovak**

## **The Colloquial Series**

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

|                                     |                          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Albanian                            | Japanese                 |
| Amharic                             | Korean                   |
| Arabic (Levantine)                  | Latvian                  |
| Arabic of Egypt                     | Lithuanian               |
| Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Arabia | Malay                    |
| Basque                              | Norwegian                |
| Bulgarian                           | Punjabi                  |
| * Cambodian                         | Persian                  |
| * Cantonese                         | Polish                   |
| * Chinese                           | Portuguese               |
| Czech                               | Romanian                 |
| Danish                              | * Russian                |
| Dutch                               | Serbo-Croat              |
| English                             | Slovak                   |
| Estonian                            | Slovene                  |
| French                              | Somali                   |
| German                              | * Spanish                |
| * Greek                             | Spanish of Latin America |
| Gujarati                            | Swedish                  |
| Hindi                               | * Thai                   |
| Hungarian                           | Turkish                  |
| Indonesian                          | Ukrainian                |
| Italian                             | * Vietnamese             |
|                                     | Welsh                    |

Accompanying cassette(s) are available for the above titles.

\* Accompanying CDs are also available.

# **Colloquial Slovak**

**The Complete Course  
for Beginners**

**James Naughton**



**London and New York**

First published 1997  
by Routledge  
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada  
by Routledge  
29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

© 1997 James Naughton

Maps of Slovakia (p. 8) and the High Tatras (p. 171) by Kristoffer Blegvad  
Map of Bratislava (p. 192) by Matthew Crabbe

Typeset in Times Ten by Florencetype Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon

Printed and bound in England by Clays Ltd, St Ives PLC

The author has asserted his moral rights in accordance with Section 77 of  
the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced  
or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means,  
now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording,  
or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in  
writing from the publishers.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data*

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

*Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data*

Naughton, James, 1950-

Colloquial Slovak: The Complete Course for Beginners.

1. Slovak language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English.

PG5239.3.E54C65 1996

491.8'682421—dc20 95-26195

ISBN 0-415-11540-X (book)

ISBN 0-415-11541-8 (cassettes)

ISBN 0-415-11542-6 (book and cassettes course)

# Contents

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>Abbreviations used</b>                                     | vii |
| <b>Introduction</b>   | 1   |
| <b>Pronunciation guide</b>                                    | 4   |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>1 Ako sa máte?</b><br>How are you?                         | 10  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>2 Čo robíte?</b><br>What are you doing?                    | 22  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>3 Si lenivá?</b><br>Are you lazy?                          | 32  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>4 Idem do mesta</b><br>I'm going to town                   | 42  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>5 Chcem íst' do kina</b><br>I want to go to the cinema     | 54  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>6 To je krásna dedina!</b><br>That's a lovely village!     | 66  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>7 Raňajky, obed, večera</b><br>Breakfast, lunch, supper    | 81  |
| <br>  |     |
| <b>8 Chcela napísat' list</b><br>She wanted to write a letter | 93  |

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>9 Stratila som cestovný pas</b><br>I've lost my passport                      | <b>106</b> |
| <b>10 Môžem íst' d'alej?</b><br>Can I come in?                                   | <b>119</b> |
| <b>11 Nakupovanie</b><br>Shopping  | <b>131</b> |
| <b>12 Kol'ko je hodín?</b><br>What time is it?                                   | <b>143</b> |
| <b>13 Ako mačka s myšou</b><br>Like a cat with a mouse                           | <b>153</b> |
| <b>14 Sveter, Tatry a Ľudovít Štúr</b><br>A sweater, the Tatras and Ľudovít Štúr | <b>164</b> |
| <b>15 Čo keby?</b><br>What if?   | <b>180</b> |
| <b>16 Máte vol'ný stôl?</b><br>Do you have a table free?                         | <b>195</b> |
| <b>Grammar summary</b>   | <b>214</b> |
| <b>Key to exercises</b>  | <b>228</b> |
| <b>Slovak–English glossary</b>   | <b>246</b> |
| <b>English–Slovak glossary</b>   | <b>276</b> |
| <b>Index of language points</b>  | <b>285</b> |

# Abbreviations used

|              |                                    |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>acc.</i>  | accusative                         |
| <i>adj.</i>  | adjective                          |
| <i>dat.</i>  | dative                             |
| <i>f.</i>    | feminine                           |
| <i>freq.</i> | frequentative                      |
| <i>gen.</i>  | genitive                           |
| <i>impf</i>  | imperfective                       |
| <i>ins.</i>  | instrumental                       |
| <i>loc.</i>  | locative                           |
| <i>m.</i>    | masculine                          |
| <i>n.</i>    | neuter                             |
| <i>nom.</i>  | nominative                         |
| <i>pf</i>    | perfective                         |
| <i>pl.</i>   | plural                             |
| <i>sg</i>    | singular                           |
| > <          | arrowheads pointing to perfectives |

# Introduction

Slovakia, with its capital Bratislava (not far from Vienna), has been an independent state since Czechoslovakia split at the end of 1992. This 'Velvet Divorce' was preceded in 1989 by the 'Velvet Revolution', which saw the fall of communism in Czechoslovakia, during Russia's Gorbachev years. Now the rather less affluent next-door neighbour of the Czech Republic and Austria, Slovakia is grappling with problems of major adjustment to a radically changed economic and political environment. Far less visited by foreigners than the Czech Republic or Austria, Slovakia, with its mountains, ski resorts, remote country districts, viniculture, castles and old towns, merits more attention, along with its literature and other arts. Watch out for films, or Slovak orchestras and performers on your CDs.

Slovakia's present population is something over five and a quarter million (including a sizeable Hungarian minority). As a result of emigration last century and this, there are also many people of Slovak descent all over the globe, especially in North America.

Up to 1918 Slovakia had been part of the kingdom of Hungary since the tenth century. After the First World War, and the fall of the Habsburg-ruled Austro-Hungarian Empire, Slovakia became part of Czechoslovakia. During the Second World War it was briefly semi-independent under Nazi hegemony, before going back to Czechoslovakia, soon under communist rule.

The Slovak language is very close to Czech, both in vocabulary and in grammar, and Czechs can understand Slovak quite easily. Standard Slovak is rather modern in origin, based on central Slovak dialects, and shaped into its present form since the 1840s. It had to struggle to make headway under Hungarian educational dominance, but quickly became the main medium of education and public life in Slovakia from 1918.

There are no great conflicts today between educated spoken and written norms, though dialect usage is still strong and varied.

Sometimes however you find that a word in common everyday use which is also in Czech is rejected as ‘incorrect’ by guardians of the language, in favour of another Slovak equivalent.

This book has been designed for the complete beginner and it assumes no kind of specialized linguistic competence. It aims to take learners up to a level at which they can communicate usefully on a range of everyday topics and begin to tackle books and newspapers. It combines everyday dialogues and simple narrative texts with explanation of individual language points and essential structures. A recording has been produced to accompany the book, and its use is of course particularly recommended if you are working without a teacher or native speaker.

## Further reading

- Klaudia Holšková *et al.*, *Dobrý deň, slovenčina* [Good day, Slovak], Bratislava: Univerzita Komenského, 1991. (Good revision material, with dialogues and texts using everyday language. Entirely in Slovak, except for the vocabulary brochure.)
- Tomáš Dratva and Viktoria Buznová, *Slovenčina pre cudzincov* [Slovak for Foreigners], Bratislava: Slovenské pedagogické nakladateľstvo, 1992. (All in Slovak, colour pictures, reading, exercises.)
- Peter Baláž, Miloslav Darovec and Heather Trebatická, *Slovak for Slavists*, Bratislava: Slovenské pedagogické nakladateľstvo, 2nd edn, 1985. (Strictly grammar-based, reliable within its scope.)
- James Naughton, *Traveller's Literary Companion to Eastern and Central Europe*. Brighton: In Print, 1995. (Chapter on Slovak literature, bibliography of available English translations, brief literary extracts.)
- The Slavonic Languages*, ed. Bernard Comrie and Greville G. Corbett, London and New York: Routledge, 1993. (Chapter on Slovak, for linguists, by David Short, lecturer at the School of Slavonic and East European Studies, London.)
- John King and Richard Nebeský, *Czech and Slovak Republics*, Hawthorn, Australia: Lonely Planet, 1995. (Widely available guidebook.)
- Colin Saunders and Renáta Nárožná, *Walking in the High and Tatras*, Milnthorpe, Cumbria: Cicerone Press, 1994. (Detailed walking guide.)

## Dictionaries

- Jana Smejkalová, Dagmar Smrčinová, Katarína Herrmannová and Karel Hais, *Anglicko-slovenský a slovensko-anglický vreckový slovník*

- 
- [English–Slovak and Slovak–English Pocket Dictionary], Bratislava: Slovenské pedagogické nakladateľstvo, 8th edn 1991.
- Júlia Vilikovská and Pavel Vilikovský, *Slovensko–anglický slovník* [Slovak–English dictionary], Bratislava: Slovenské pedagogické nakladateľstvo, 6th edn, 1991.
- Ján Šimko, *Anglicko–slovenský slovník* [English–Slovak dictionary], Bratislava: Slovenské pedagogické nakladateľstvo, 1967.

## Acknowledgements

I am much indebted to Marta Černotová, Heda Dučáková, Libor Janský and Oľga Willett for their kind corrections and improvements to the Slovak text at various stages in the preparation of this book. I am also grateful to Sarah Foulkes for her helpful suggestions at the editing stage, and to all the staff concerned at Routledge. Finally, I would like to thank my four speakers at the recording for their further helpful improvements and corrections.

# Pronunciation guide

Slovak **a**, **e**, **i/y**, **o**, **u** are quite close to the English vowels in *puck*, *peck*, *pick*, *pock*, *pook*. (There's no difference in sound between **i** and **y**, it's just a matter of spelling.)

## Vowels

Slovak **a**, **e**, **i/y**, **o**, **u** are quite close to the English vowels in *puck*, *peck*, *pick*, *pock*, *pook*. (There's no difference in sound between **i** and **y**, it's just a matter of spelling.)

With acute signs added (**á**, **é**, **í/y**, **ó**, **ú**) the vowels are pronounced longer: roughly like *ah*, *eh*, *ee*, *aw*, *oo*.

Word stress is on the first vowel. Practise saying:

|                      |                                |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>a, á</b>          | <b>brat, mal, málo, bál sa</b> |
| <b>e, é</b>          | <b>ten, krém, pekné, mesto</b> |
| <b>i, í and y, ý</b> | <b>pivo, víno; syn, milý</b>   |
| <b>o, ó</b>          | <b>bol, góľ, ona, bola</b>     |
| <b>u, ú</b>          | <b>ruka, ruku, mú, malú</b>    |

Ä is normally pronounced the same as *e*:

|          |                    |
|----------|--------------------|
| <b>ä</b> | <b>mäso, mäkký</b> |
|----------|--------------------|

There are also several diphthongs (one vowel merging quickly into another). These also count as long vowels. Three have a brief *i* sound gliding into *a*, *e*, *u*:

|           |                       |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| <b>ia</b> | <b>piatok, prosia</b> |
| <b>ie</b> | <b>viem, spievam</b>  |
| <b>iu</b> | <b>tretiu</b>         |

Another, spelt ô, has a brief *u* gliding into *o*:

|          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| <b>ô</b> | <b>stôl, skôr</b> |
|----------|-------------------|

These sequences of letters are like their first vowel followed by English *w*.

|           |                     |
|-----------|---------------------|
| <b>ou</b> | <b>rukou, malou</b> |
| <b>au</b> | <b>auto, august</b> |
| <b>eu</b> | <b>Európa</b>       |

## Consonants

We needn't really discuss **b, d, f, g** (as in *good*), **h, k, l, m, n, p, s** (as in *sun*), **t** (as in *stop*), **x** and **z**, as they are roughly the same as in English.

**K, p, and t** in fact lack the English slight puff of air (except at the end of a word):

**kilo, ruka, pil, kúpil, talent**

**Ch** is like Scottish *loch*. **R** is trilled, also like Scottish English:

**chláp, chyba, ucho**

**rád, rieka, hora**

Both **r** and **l** can act as vowels, sometimes even lengthened to **í** and **Í**. Try:

**prvý, plný, hlboký; hĺbka, vŕba**

**V** is mostly like English *v*, but at the end of a word it sounds like English *w*, also between a vowel and most following consonants:

**víno, Viera** – but: **domov, krv, polievka, pravda**

**Qu** and **w** only turn up in foreign words like **Quido /kvido/** and **WC /vétsé/**.

## Soft consonants

All the so-called *soft consonants* except **c, dz** and **j** are written with *soft signs*.

After soft consonants the **i** vowel is regularly spelt with 'soft i' (**mäkké i**), rather than 'hard y' (**tvrdé y**).

**C** is like *ts* in *bats*. **Dz** is like *ds* in *rods*. **J** is like *y* in *yes*:

|           |                                  |
|-----------|----------------------------------|
| <b>c</b>  | <b>noc, práca, cena, Slováci</b> |
| <b>dz</b> | <b>medzi, cudzí, prichádza</b>   |
| <b>j</b>  | <b>ja, Ján, moje, ahoj</b>       |

**Č, š, ž** and **dž** are like *chin*, *shin*, *vision* and *juice*:

|           |                               |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| <b>č</b>  | <b>čaká, reč, Angličan</b>    |
| <b>š</b>  | <b>široký, špinavý, pišeš</b> |
| <b>ž</b>  | <b>žena, môžeš, žiletka</b>   |
| <b>dž</b> | <b>džús, džem, hádže</b>      |

**Ď/d'**, **Ť/t'**, **Ň/ň** and **L/l'** are reasonably close to British English *duty*, *tune*, *new* and *value* (as pronounced *dyooty*, *tyoon*, *nyoo* and *valyoo*):

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Ď/d'</b> | <b>ďakujem, maďarský</b>     |
| <b>Ť/t'</b> | <b>byť, mať, tava, tahať</b> |
| <b>Ň/ň</b>  | <b>ňou, spálňa, kaviareň</b> |
| <b>L/l'</b> | <b>ľud, veľa, klúč, ziaľ</b> |

Now try pronouncing the Slovak names for the various signs:

|                  |                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>dlžeň</b>     | long sign (as in á)              |
| <b>mäkčeň</b>    | soft sign (č, Ď/d')              |
| <b>vokáň</b>     | circumflex (ô)                   |
| <b>dve bodky</b> | two dots (ä = široké ä ‘wide ä’) |

## Soft spelling rule

Before **e**, **i** and **í** you usually pronounce **d**, **t**, **n** as *d'*, *t'*, *ň*. In other words the soft sign is omitted in the spelling:

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| <b>d'</b> | <b>dedina /de'dīna/, sedem /se'dēm/, vidím /vi'dīm/</b> |
| <b>t'</b> | <b>otec /o'tec/, deti /de'tī/, tisíc /ti'sīc/</b>       |
| <b>ň</b>  | <b>nemá /ňemá/, nič /ňič/</b>                           |

(Linguists also prescribe a ‘soft l’ in words like **pole** and **leto**, but the sound normally produced is much like an ordinary English *l*.)

In foreign words like **politika**, **idea** the above rule fails to apply. A few native words, and the forms of standard adjectives, are also exempt:

**ten, teraz, teda, vtedy, jeden**

**To je krásne!**      That's beautiful!

## Voiced and voiceless sounds

(You can skip this bit the first time round if you like. It involves some rather more subtle detail.)

In each of these pairs the first letter sound is normally *voiced* (with humming vocal chords), the second is its *voiceless* equivalent:

**b–p, d–t, d'–t', g–k, h–ch, v–f, z–s, ž–š, dz–c, dž–č**

The voiced letters are pronounced *voicelessly* at the end of a word (before a pause), or just before a voiceless sound:

**dub /dup/, hrad /hrat/, sneh /sňech/, muž /muš/**

**včera /fčera/, vták /fták/, ľahký /fachký/, ťažký /fašký/**

The reverse also occurs in certain words:

**kde /gde/, prosba /prozba/, but not before v: svoj /svoj/ ‘one’s own’**

Prepositions like v ‘in’ are pronounced as part of the next word:

**v meste /vmeste/ ‘in town’, v kine /fkiňe/ ‘in the cinema’**

**s Petrom /spetrom/ ‘with Peter’, s matkou /zmatkou/ ‘with mother’**

## The alphabet

Alphabetical order is much the same as in English, but note:

- **ch** comes after **h** in the dictionary
- **č, š, ž** and **ä, ô** also count separately (after **c, s, z; a, o**)

Other letters (**d', á**, etc.) are *not* treated separately.

## A spot of geography

Revise your **výslovnosť** ‘pronunciation’ with some basic place names:

**Slovensko** ‘Slovakia’, **Slovenská republika** ‘the Slovak Republic’, **západné Slovensko** ‘western Slovakia’, **stredné Slovensko** ‘central Slovakia’, **východné Slovensko** ‘eastern Slovakia’

**Rieky** ‘rivers’ – **Dunaj** ‘the Danube’, **Hron, Váh, Ipeľ, Hornád, Morava**

**Hory** ‘mountains’ – **Vysoké Tatry** ‘the High Tatras’, **Veľká a Malá Fatra** ‘the Great and Little Fatra’, **Beskydy** ‘the Beskids’, **Malé Karpaty** ‘the Little/Lesser Carpathians’, **Biele Karpaty** ‘the White Carpathians’

**Hlavné mesto** ‘capital’ – **Bratislava** (population about 442 000),



**Petržalka** (its biggest modern suburb), **Devín** (nearby ancient rock fortress)

**Iné mestá** ‘other towns’ – **Košice** (population about 235 000), **Nitra**, **Trenčín**, **Žilina**, **Martin**, **Komárno**, **Banská Bystrica**, **Prešov**, **Poprad**, **Trnava**, **Prievidza**, **Piešťany**

## **Basic numbers**

Now say numbers one to twelve:

1 **jeden**, 2 **dva**, 3 **tri**, 4 **štýri**, 5 **päť**, 6 **šesť**, 7 **sedem**, 8 **osem**, 9 **deväť**, 10 **desať**, 11 **jedenásť**, 12 **dvanásť**

**Ešte raz!**  
**A do videnia!**

Again! Once more!  
And goodbye!

# 1 Ako sa máte?

## How are you?

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- use greetings, and say 'please' and 'thank you'
- say 'I', 'you', 'he/she/it' etc.
- know the verbs 'to be' and 'to have'
- ask questions
- use adjectives
- form the present tense of some verbs
- say 'yes', 'no' and 'not'

### Dialogue 1

*Meeting up and introducing yourself: Jozef seems to be an English Slovak*

JOZEF: Dobrý deň. Vy ste Viera Ondrušová?

VIERA: Áno. To som ja.

JOZEF: Teší ma. Ja som Jozef Novák.

VIERA: Ste Američan?

JOZEF: Nie! Ja som Angličan. Vy ste Slovenka?

VIERA: Áno! Samozrejme! Ja som Slovenka. Máte kufor?

JOZEF: Áno! Mám. Tu je.

VIERA: Tak dobre. Pod'me. Auto čaká vonku.

JOZEF: Hello (lit. Good day). Are you Viera Ondrušová?

VIERA: Yes. That's me.

JOZEF: Pleased to meet you. I'm Jozef Novák.

VIERA: Are you (an) American?

JOZEF: No. I am English. Are you Slovak?

VIERA: Yes! Of course! I'm Slovak. Do you have a case?

JOZEF: Yes. I have. Here it is.

VIERA: Right, then (so, good). Let's go. The car's waiting outside.

## Vocabulary

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <b>dobrý deň</b>           | hello ( <i>lit. Good day</i> )                      |
| <b>vy ste ... /ste ...</b> | you are ...   |
| <b>ja som ... /som ...</b> | I am ...  |
| <b>teší ma</b>             | pleased to meet you ( <i>lit. It pleases me</i> )   |
| <b>áno</b>                 | yes   |
| <b>nie</b>                 | no  |
| <b>samoarezime</b>         | of course   |
| <b>Viera</b>               | = first name Vera                                   |
| <b>Ondrušová</b>           | = surname ( <i>m.</i> Ondruš, without <b>-ová</b> ) |
| <b>Jozef</b>               | = first name Joseph                                 |
| <b>Novák</b>               | = surname ( <i>f.</i> Nováková, adds <b>-ová</b> )  |
| <b>Slovák</b>              | (a) Slovak (man)                                    |
| <b>Slovenka</b>            | (a) Slovak (woman)                                  |
| <b>Američan</b>            | (an) American (man)                                 |
| <b>Američanka</b>          | (an) American (woman) (adds <b>-ka</b> )            |
| <b>Angličan</b>            | (an) Englishman                                     |
| <b>Angličanka</b>          | (an) Englishwoman                                   |
| <b>máte ...?</b>           | do you have ...? ( <i>lit. you have ...?</i> )      |
| <b>mám</b>                 | I have  |
| <b>tu je</b>               | here it is  |
| <b>pod'me</b>              | let's go  |
| <b>auto</b>                | car   |
| <b>čaká</b>                | (s/he, it) waits, is waiting                        |
| <b>dobre</b>               | well, good, fine                                    |
| <b>tak dobre</b>           | right, OK then                                      |
| <b>kufor</b>               | suitcase  |
| <b>tak</b>                 | so  |
| <b>vonku</b>               | outside   |

## Language points

### No articles

Notice how Slovak does not have any word corresponding to English 'a' or 'the':

**Mám kufor.**

I have a suitcase.

**Tu je kufor.**

Here is the suitcase.

### Pronouns

The basic pronouns (words like 'I', 'you', 'she') are:

|                     |                          |                |                         |
|---------------------|--------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| <b>ja</b>           | I                        | <b>my</b>      | we                      |
| <b>ty</b>           | you                      | <b>vy</b>      | you                     |
| <b>on, ona, ono</b> | he, she, it<br>(animate) | <b>oni/ony</b> | they<br>(male/non-male) |
| <b>to</b>           | that, this, it           |                |                         |

Note especially the two different words for 'you'. **Ty** is used to address one person, someone you know well (also a child). **Vy** is used to address: (a) more than one person, (b) one person who is a stranger, older than you, or less familiar in general.

**Dievča** 'girl', **dieťa** 'child' and other words for the young of animals count as 'it', so can be called **ono**.

If 'they' is entirely non-male you should say **ony** (without a soft ſ), but the two forms don't sound very different.

### 'To have'

Verbs are listed under the infinitive form, which ends in **t**. It is the same as an English verb with 'to', e.g. **mať** 'to have'.

To say 'I have', 'you have', 'he has', etc. (i.e. to form the present tense) you replace the **-at** ending of **mať** by personal endings:

|                      |                  |                   |           |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| <b>(ja) mám</b>      | I have           | <b>(my) máme</b>  | we have   |
| <b>(ty) máš</b>      | you have         | <b>(vy) máte</b>  | you have  |
| <b>(on, ona, to)</b> | he, she, this/it | <b>(oni) majú</b> | they have |
| <b>má</b>            | has              |                   |           |

Pronouns **ja**, **ty**, etc. are only used with verbs for emphasis or clarity (e.g. to show whether the subject is 'he' or 'she').

|                    |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Mám kufor.</b>  | I have a suitcase.    |
| <b>Majú kufor.</b> | They have a suitcase. |
| <b>Má kufor.</b>   | S/he has a suitcase.  |

## 'To be'

The present tense of **byť** 'to be' is irregular. It goes:

|                      |                |                 |                   |
|----------------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| <b>(ja) som</b>      | I am           | <b>(my) sme</b> | we are            |
| <b>(ty) si</b>       | you are        |                 | (pronounce /zme/) |
| <b>(on, ona, to)</b> | he, she, it is | <b>(vy) ste</b> | you are           |

**je**

|                 |          |
|-----------------|----------|
| <b>(oní) sú</b> | they are |
|-----------------|----------|

|                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>Som Viera.</b>   | I am Viera.              |
| <b>Ty si Ján.</b>   | You are Ján.             |
| <b>Tu som.</b>      | Here I am.               |
| <b>Sme tu.</b>      | We are here.             |
| <b>To je kufor.</b> | That/this is a suitcase. |

## Questions

Simple questions may be asked by a change of intonation:

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <b>Más kufor?</b>     | Do you have a suitcase?                         |
| <b>Ty si Jana?</b>    | Are you Jana? ( <i>lit.</i> You are Jana?)      |
| <b>Si Angličanka?</b> | Are you English ( <i>lit.</i> an Englishwoman)? |
| <b>Ste tam?</b>       | Are you there?                                  |
| <b>Sú doma?</b>       | Are they at home?                               |

Sometimes the order of words (subject and verb) may be reversed, like this:

|                           |                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>Je Viera Slovenka?</b> | Is Viera (a) Slovak? |
| <b>Je to hrad?</b>        | Is it a castle?      |

## Exercise 1

Write or say the following in Slovak:

- Hello. I am Jozef.

- 2 Pleased to meet you.
- 3 Are you (a) Slovak man/woman?
- 4 No. I am an Englishman/woman.
- 5 Viera is waiting outside.

### **Exercise 2**

Work out the questions (English and Slovak) to which these are the answers:

- 1 Áno. Ja som Američanka.
- 2 Áno. Viera je Slovenka.
- 3 Samozrejme. Máme kufor. Tu je.
- 4 Áno. Som vonku.
- 5 Áno. Ja som Jana.

### **Dialogue 2**

*Jozef and Viera drive into Bratislava, which Jozef has never seen before. He seems to be going on some course*

- JOZEF: Čo je to?
- VIERA: Vlavo? To je Bratislavský hrad.
- JOZEF: To je pekný hrad. Je aj Bratislava pekná?
- VIERA: Áno. Najmä staré mesto je veľmi pekné.
- JOZEF: Kde je rieka?
- VIERA: Dunaj? Dunaj je tam. Vpravo.
- JOZEF: Dunaj? Nie je modrý?
- VIERA: Nie. Bohužiaľ. Voda nie je čistá. Rieka je špinavá.
- JOZEF: Kto je nás učiteľ? Ako sa volá?
- VIERA: Volá sa Štefan Horák.
- JOZEF: What's that?
- VIERA: On the left? That's Bratislava Castle.
- JOZEF: That's a lovely (pretty) castle. Is Bratislava pretty, too (also lovely)?
- VIERA: Yes. The old town especially is very pretty.
- JOZEF: Where is the river?
- VIERA: The Danube? The Danube's there. On the right.
- JOZEF: The Danube? Is it not blue?
- VIERA: No. Unfortunately. The water isn't clean. The river is dirty.
- JOZEF: Who is our teacher? What is his name?
- VIERA: His name is Štefan Horák.

## Vocabulary

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>čo je to?</b>    | what is that?  |
| <b>kde je ... ?</b> | where is ... ?   |
| <b>kto je ... ?</b> | who is ... ?   |
| <b>ako sa volá?</b> | what's his/her name? ( <i>lit.</i> how self he calls?) |
| <b>volá sa ...</b>  | his/her name is ... ( <i>lit.</i> he calls self ...)   |

|                          |                            |                        |                      |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>aj</b>                | also (= in addition)       | <b>pekný, -á, -é</b>   | nice, pretty, lovely |
| <b>bohužiaľ</b>          | unfortunately, regrettably | <b>rieka</b>           | river                |
| <b>Bratislavský hrad</b> | Bratislava Castle          | <b>špinavý, -á, -é</b> | dirty                |
| <b>čistý, -á, -é</b>     | clean, pure                | <b>starý, -á, -é</b>   | old                  |
| <b>Dunaj</b>             | the Danube                 | <b>učiteľ</b>          | male teacher         |
| <b>mesto</b>             | town                       | <b>učiteľka</b>        | female teacher       |
| <b>modrý, -á, -é</b>     | blue                       | <b>veľmi</b>           | very                 |
| <b>najmä</b>             | especially                 | <b>vľavo</b>           | on the left          |
| <b>nás</b>               | our                        | <b>voda</b>            | water                |
| <b>nie je</b>            | it is not                  | <b>vpravo</b>          | on the right         |

## Language points

### Gender

When describing a noun with an adjective (e.g. 'a lovely town') you need to know the so-called gender of the noun: *masculine*, *feminine* or *neuter*. This is because the ending of the adjective changes accordingly.

You will not be surprised to hear that nouns for males are normally masculine, while nouns for females are normally feminine!

A good rule of thumb for any other noun is:

*Ending in a consonant – masculine:*

**hrad** 'castle', **kufor** 'suitcase', **Dunaj** 'Danube'

*Ending in -a (or -ost')* – feminine:

**rieka** 'river', **voda** 'water'; **radost'** 'joy'

*Ending in -o (or -e)* – neuter:

**mesto** 'town', **auto** 'car'; **srdce** 'heart', **námestie** 'square'

Exceptions will be noted as they occur.

## Adjectives

Adjectives (e.g. **pekný** ‘nice, lovely’) vary in the way they end, depending on the gender of the noun to which they refer:

**pekný hrad** (*masculine*)

**pekná rieka** (*feminine*)

**pekné mesto** (*neuter*)

Learn some pairs of common adjectives now:

|               |           |                         |       |
|---------------|-----------|-------------------------|-------|
| <b>veľký</b>  | big       | <b>malý</b>             | small |
| <b>starý</b>  | old       | <b>nový</b>             | new   |
|               |           | <b>mladý</b>            | young |
| <b>dobrý</b>  | good      | <b>zlý</b>              | bad   |
| <b>krásny</b> | beautiful | <b>škaredý, ošklivý</b> | ugly  |

Note that **krásny** has a short -y, because the previous vowel á is long. Similarly, the feminine form is **krásna**, and the neuter is **krásne**. This tendency to avoid two long vowels in adjacent syllables is called the *rhythmic law*.

When a name like **Bratislava** describes a following noun in English, in Slovak you need to make it into an adjective, often with -ský: **Bratislavský hrad** Bratislava Castle.

## More verbs

Most verbs ending in **-ať** have a present tense like **mať** ‘to have’, e.g. **čakať** ‘to wait’. Note how the Slovak present can be translated in two ways:

When the previous vowel is long, the á is shortened to a. This is

|               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>čakám</b>  | I am waiting, I wait        |
| <b>čakáš</b>  | you are waiting, you wait   |
| <b>čaká</b>   | he/she/it is waiting, waits |
| <b>čakáme</b> | we are waiting, we wait     |
| <b>čakáte</b> | you are waiting, you wait   |
| <b>čakajú</b> | they are waiting, they wait |

the *rhythmic law* working again, as seen in adjectives above.

Look at **bývať** ‘to live’ (= ‘reside’), and interpret the forms yourself!

|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| <b>bývam</b> | <b>bývame</b> |
| <b>bývaš</b> | <b>bývate</b> |
| <b>býva</b>  | <b>bývajú</b> |

**Bývate tu?**

Do you live here?

**Nie. Ja tu nebývam.**

No. I don't live here.

## Saying ‘not’

To make a verb negative (as you see from the example just above) you add **ne-** to it, e.g. **nečakám** ‘I am not waiting’, **nemajú** ‘they don't have’.

The only exception is the present of **byť** ‘to be’, which uses **nie** as a separate word, e.g. **nie som** ‘I am not’, **nie sú** ‘they are not’.

Before other parts of speech **nie** is also a separate word:

**Nie dnes, ale zajtra.**

Not today, but tomorrow.

## My name is . . .

The verb **voláť** ‘to call’ combines with **sa** ‘self’ to form the reflexive verb ‘to call oneself’. This pronoun **sa** remains the same whatever the subject of the verb:

|                 |                        |                  |                      |
|-----------------|------------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <b>volám sa</b> | I call myself          | <b>voláme sa</b> | we call ourselves    |
| <b>voláš sa</b> | you call yourself      | <b>voláte sa</b> | you call yourselves  |
| <b>volá sa</b>  | s/he calls him/herself | <b>volajú sa</b> | they call themselves |

‘I call myself’ amounts to English ‘I am called . . .’ or ‘my name is . . .’

**Volám sa Jana.**

My name is Jana.

Similarly:

**Volá sa Jozef.**

His name is Jozef (Joseph).

**Volajú sa Mária a Jozef.**

They are called Mária and Jozef (Mary and Joseph).

## How are you?

**Mat'** 'to have' combined with **sa** 'self' has the idiomatic sense 'to be feeling', hence the standard phrase:

**Ako sa máte?**

How are you? How are you  
feeling? How are things?

That is the **vy**, or formal mode of address, of course. With someone to whom you say **ty**, you use the expression:

**Ako sa máš?**

How are you?

A conventional answer would be:

**Ďakujem. Mám sa dobre.** Thank you. I am (feeling) well.

Or simply:

**Ďakujem, dobre.**

Thank you, well.

If feeling notably unwell, you might of course wish to say:

**Zle!**

Badly!

Neutral, but unenthusiastic, is:

**Ujde to.**

Not too bad. Okay. It'll do.

Note how **sa** self is *not* always after the verb! In fact, as a rule, it comes in the second possible position in a sentence:

**Ako sa máte? – Mám sa  
dobre.**

How are you? I am well.

**Ivan sa má dobre.**

Ivan is well.

**Ivan a Peter sa majú dobre.** Igor and Peter are well.

## Please and thank you

**Prosím** is 'please'. For 'please may I have ...' you can say **prosím si** .... **Si** is another form of **sa** ('self'). It means 'to/for oneself', and so **prosím si** means literally 'I ask for myself'.

**Prosím si čaj.**

Please may I have some tea.

**Čaj, prosím!**

Tea, please!

**Prosím?** means 'what do you want?' or 'what did you say?'

**Ďakujem** is 'thank you'. **Vďaka** is 'thanks'. **Ďakujem** regularly elicits the response **nech sa páči** (*lit.* 'let it please'):

**Ďakujem pekne.**  
– Nech sa páči.

Thank you very much (*lit. nicely*).  
– You're welcome.

### **Exercise 3**

Fill in the blanks with appropriate adjectives in the right form:

- 1 Náš hrad je \_\_\_\_\_. (*pretty*)
- 2 Dunaj nie je \_\_\_\_\_. (*blue*)
- 3 Mám \_\_\_\_\_ auto. (*new*)
- 4 Voda je \_\_\_\_\_. (*clean*)
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ mesto je \_\_\_\_\_. (*old – beautiful*)

### **Exercise 4**

Revise your vocabulary and find opposites for the following:

čistý, malý, vpravo, áno, škaredý, mladý

### **Exercise 5**

Translate these sentences, then make them negative

- 1 Viera je Slovenka.
- 2 Čakajú vonku.
- 3 Bývam tu.
- 4 Som Angličan.

### **Exercise 6**

Answer these questions in an appropriate way:

- 1 Ako sa máte?
- 2 Ste Slovák/Slovenka?
- 3 Ako sa voláte?
- 4 Je Bratislava pekné mesto?
- 5 Je Dunaj čistý?
- 6 Kto je náš učiteľ? Ako sa volá?
- 7 Je Štefan starý?

### **Exercise 7**

Fill in the blanks in this simple dialogue:

- ...?
- Ďakujem. Dobre.
- ...?
- Nie. Nemám auto.
- ...?
- Áno. Samozrejme. Štefan je tu. Čaká vonku.
- Tak dobre. ...
- Do videnia.

### **Dialogue 3**

*Someone delivers a letter by hand*

PÁN A: Dobrý deň. Ako sa máte?

PANI B-OVÁ: Ďakujem. Dobre. Čakáte dlho?

PÁN A: Nie. Krátko.

PANI B-OVÁ: Tu máte list. Nech sa páči.

PÁN A: Ďakujem. Do videnia.

PANI B-OVÁ: Do videnia.

MR A: *Good day. How are you?*

MRS B: *Thank you. Well. Have you been waiting (are you waiting) long?*

MR A: *No. For a short time.*

MRS B: *Here is (lit. you have) a letter. Help yourself.*

MR A: *Thank you. Goodbye.*

MRS B: *Goodbye.*

### **Vocabulary**

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>dlho</b>         | for a long time       |
| <b>krátko</b>       | for a short time      |
| <b>list</b>         | letter                |
| <b>nech sa páči</b> | please, help yourself |
| <b>do videnia</b>   | goodbye               |

## Dialogue 4



*Adam and Eve have a heavy case to deal with . . .*

- ADAM: Ahoj, Eva.
- eva: Servus, Adam.
- ADAM: Čakáš dlho?
- eva: Áno. Veľmi dlho.
- ADAM: Ako sa máš, Eva?
- eva: Dobre. Tu máš kufor. Kde máš auto? Ty nemáš auto?
- ADAM: Nie. Nemám auto. A ty máš?
- eva: Nie. Tiež nemám. Bohužiaľ.
- ADAM: Ale kufor je veľký! A aj ťažký.
- eva: Ale ty si silný chlap. Nie?
- ADAM: Nie. Nie som veľmi silný. Ale máme šťastie! Vonku čaká taxík.
- ADAM: Hi, Eva.
- eva: Hi (lit. servant), Adam.
- ADAM: Have you been waiting (lit. are you waiting) long?
- eva: Yes. Very long.
- ADAM: How are you, Eva?
- eva: Fine. Here is (lit. you have) the suitcase. Where is (do you have) the car? Don't you have a car?
- ADAM: No. I don't have a car. And you do (lit. you have)?
- eva: No. I don't either (lit. also don't have). Unfortunately.
- ADAM: But the suitcase is big! And also heavy.
- Eva: But you are a strong guy. Aren't you? (lit. no?)
- ADAM: No. I am not very strong. But we are lucky (lit. we have luck)! A taxi is waiting outside.

## Vocabulary

**ahoj** hi, hello (informal), also = bye.

**Servus** alternative to **ahoj** (lit. servant); also: čau! hi!

**ale** but

**taxík** taxi

**chlap** bloke, guy, man

**ťažký** heavy

**silný** strong

**tiež** also (= likewise)

**šťastie** luck, happiness

**tiež ne-** also not, not . . . either

# 2 Čo robíte?

What are you doing?

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- use more verbs in the present
- say 'my', 'your', etc.
- express liking
- say must
- use the verbs 'to know' and 'to understand'
- talk about languages, countries and nationalities
- recognize some plurals

## Dialogue 1

*Little Evička talks to Mr Kováč*

EVIČKA: Dobrý deň, pán Kováč, Ako sa máte?

KOVÁČ: Ďakujem, dobre. Čo robíš, Evička?

EVIČKA: Hrám sa. A vy čo robíte, pán Kováč?

KOVÁČ: Fajčím a čakám na obed. Je tu pekne, však?

EVIČKA: *Good day, Mr Kováč. How are you?*

KOVÁČ: *Thank you. Fine. What are you doing, Evička?*

EVIČKA: *I'm playing. And what are you doing, Mr Kováč?*

KOVÁČ: *I'm smoking and waiting for lunch. It's nice here, isn't it?*

## Vocabulary

|                  |                     |           |                       |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| a                | and                 | Evička    | familiar name for Eva |
| čakám na         | I'm waiting for     | fajčím    | I'm smoking           |
| čakať            | to wait             | fajčiť    | to smoke              |
| čo robíš/robíte? | What are you doing? | hrám (sa) | I'm playing           |
| robiť            | to do/make          | hrať (sa) | to play               |

|                    |                     |                  |  |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------|--|
| <b>je tu pekne</b> | it is nice here     | <b>pán Kováč</b> | Mr Kováč   |
| <b>obed</b>        | lunch (midday meal) | <b>však</b>      | however; <i>here</i> = isn't it?<br><i>(invites agreement)</i> |

## Dialogue 2

*They ask about their families' activities*

EVIČKA: Kde je pani Kováčová?

KOVAČ: Je doma. Varí obed, vieš. A čo robí tvoja sestra?

EVIČKA: Viera? Učí sa.

KOVAČ: A čo robí brat? Ako sa volá?

EVIČKA: Igor. Neviem, čo robí. Asi sedí doma, číta alebo počúva rádio. Alebo hádam spí.

EVIČKA: *Where is Mrs Kováčová?*

KOVAČ: *She's at home. She's cooking lunch, you know. And what is your sister doing?*

EVIČKA: *Viera? She's studying.*

KOVAČ: *And what's (your) brother doing? What's his name?*

EVIČKA: *Igor. I don't know what he's doing. He's probably sitting at home, reading or listening to the radio. Or maybe sleeping.*

## Vocabulary

|                      |                          |                |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| <b>alebo</b>         | or                       | <b>sedí</b>    | s/he's sitting           |
| <b>asi</b>           | probably                 | <b>sedieť</b>  | to sit                   |
| <b>brat</b>          | brother                  | <b>sestra</b>  | sister                   |
| <b>číta</b>          | s/he's reading           | <b>spí</b>     | he's sleeping            |
| <b>čítať</b>         | to read                  | <b>spat'</b>   | to sleep                 |
| <b>doma</b>          | at home                  | <b>tvoja</b>   | f. of <b>tvoj</b> , your |
| <b>hádam</b>         | probably, I guess        | <b>učí sa</b>  | s/he's studying          |
| <b>pani Kováčová</b> | Mrs Kováčová             | <b>učiť sa</b> | to study, lit. teach     |
| <b>počúva</b>        | he's listening to        | <b>varí</b>    | s/he's cooking           |
| <b>počúvať</b>       | to listen to             | <b>varíť</b>   | to cook                  |
| <b>rádio</b>         | radio                    | <b>vies</b>    | you know                 |
| <b>robí</b>          | s/he is doing,<br>making | <b>vedieť</b>  | to know                  |
| <b>robiť</b>         | to do, make              |                |                          |

## Language points

### More verbs in the present

The dialogues used some more á-type verbs in **-ať**: **hrať/hrám** ‘to play’, **čítať/cítam** ‘to read’, **počúvať/počúvam** ‘to listen to’.

Another common type, the í-type, has infinitives ending in **-iť** or sometimes **-ieť**. Compare **hrať** ‘to play’ with **robiť** ‘to do/make’, and **sedieť** ‘to sit’. The vowel in the endings is **í**, instead of **á**, and the ‘they’ form is **-ia**, instead of **-ajú**:

|              |               |               |                        |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|------------------------|
| <b>hrám</b>  | <b>robím</b>  | <b>sedím</b>  | I play, do, sit        |
| <b>hráš</b>  | <b>robíš</b>  | <b>sedíš</b>  | you play, do, sit      |
| <b>hrá</b>   | <b>robí</b>   | <b>sedí</b>   | s/he plays, does, sits |
| <b>hráme</b> | <b>robíme</b> | <b>sedíme</b> | we play, do, sit       |
| <b>hráte</b> | <b>robíte</b> | <b>sedíte</b> | you play, do, sit      |
| <b>hrajú</b> | <b>robia</b>  | <b>sedia</b>  | they play, do, sit     |

Other í-type verbs are **variť** ‘to cook’, **učiť** ‘to teach’ and **učiť sa** ‘to study’ (lit. ‘teach oneself’), also **fajčiť** ‘to smoke’, and **vidieť** ‘to see’.

A few have the infinitive ending **-ať**, e.g. **spať/spím ... spia** ‘to sleep’.

After a long vowel í shortens to i (the rhythmic law), e.g. **krátiť/krátim** ‘to shorten’.

The ending **-ia** loses its i after j, e.g. **stáť/stojím** ‘to stand’ – **stoja** ‘they stand’.

### Reflexive verbs

Sometimes a simple English verb can be reflexive in Slovak. When **hrať** ‘to play’ lacks an object, it adds **sa**. You say:

**Hrám futbal.**

I’m playing football.

**but: Hrám sa.**

I’m playing (cf. ‘amusing myself’).

Note also the common reflexive verbs: **učiť sa** ‘to learn, study’ (lit. ‘to teach oneself’) and **pýtať sa** ‘to ask (a question)’.

**Učím sa slovenčinu.**

I’m learning/studying Slovak.

**Pýtam sa, kde je Peter.**

I’m asking where Peter is.

## 'My', 'your', etc.

Note the way **môj** 'my' and **tvoj** 'your' change for feminine and neuter nouns:

**To je môj brat, moja sestra a moje auto.**

That's my brother, my sister and my car.

**To je tvoj otec, tvoja matka a tvoje auto.**

That's your father, your mother and your car.

**Tvoj** means possession by someone you address as **ty**. However, if the 'you' word used is **vy** (plural, or formal) 'your' is **váš**. Compare **náš** for 'our'.

**To je váš brat, vaša sestra, vaše auto.**

That's your brother, your sister and your car.

**To je náš brat, naša sestra, naše auto.**

That's our brother, our sister and our car.

**Jeho** 'his/its', **jej** 'her' and **ich** 'their' never alter:

**To je jej brat, jeho sestra a ich auto.**

That is her brother, his sister and their car.

The possessive can often be omitted for family members, when it is clear who is meant:

**To je (môj) brat.**

This is (my) brother.

**To je (moja) matka.**

This is (my) mother.

### **Exercise 1**

Answer these questions about Dialogues 1 and 2:

- 1 Čo robí Evička?
- 2 Čo robí pán Kováč? (*Two verbs!*)
- 3 Kde je pani Kováčová?
- 4 Čo robí pani Kováčová?
- 5 Čo robí Viera?
- 6 A čo asi robí Igor? (*Four verbs!*)

### **Exercise 2**

Ask simple questions to which these are sensible answers:

- 1 Fajčím.
- 2 Igor je doma.
- 3 Nie, ja nespím.
- 4 Nie, nepočúvam rádio.
- 5 Volám sa Eva.

### **Exercise 3**

Use the right form for 'my', 'your', 'our' with the nouns which follow:

- 1 môj: \_\_\_\_\_ kufor, \_\_\_\_\_ auto, \_\_\_\_\_ sestra
- 2 tvoj: \_\_\_\_\_ rieka, \_\_\_\_\_ obed, \_\_\_\_\_ rádio
- 3 náš: \_\_\_\_\_ mesto, \_\_\_\_\_ rieka, \_\_\_\_\_ hrad
- 4 váš: \_\_\_\_\_ matka, \_\_\_\_\_ učiteľ, \_\_\_\_\_ taxík

## **Dialogue 3**

*Mr Kováč asks more about Evička's brother*

KOVÁČ: Je Igor chorý?

EVIČKA: Nie. Je lenivý, viete.

KOVÁČ: Má rád nejaký šport?

EVIČKA: Áno. Hrá futbal. Niekoľko aj volejbal. Ale len keď musí.

KOVÁČ: A aký šport máš rada ty?

EVIČKA: Ja hrám tenis. A plávam.

KOVÁČ: *Is he ill?*

EVIČKA: *No. He's lazy, you know.*

KOVÁČ: *Does he like any (some) sport?*

EVIČKA: *Yes. He plays football. Sometimes also volleyball. But only when he has to.*

KOVÁČ: *And what sport do you like?*

EVIČKA: *I play tennis. And I swim.*

## **Vocabulary**

|        |               |
|--------|---------------|
| aký    | what kind of? |
| futbal | football      |
| chorý  | ill, sick     |
| ked'   | when          |

|              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| len          | only       |
| lenivý       | lazy       |
| má rád/rada  | s/he likes |
| máš rád/rada | you like   |

|                |                   |                 |            |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------|
| <b>musí</b>    | s/he has to, must | <b>šport</b>    | sport      |
| <b>musieť</b>  | to have to        | <b>tenis</b>    | tennis     |
| <b>nejaký</b>  | some              | <b>viete</b>    | you know   |
| <b>niekedy</b> | sometimes         | <b>vedieť</b>   | to know    |
| <b>plávam</b>  | I swim            | <b>volejbal</b> | volleyball |
| <b>plávať</b>  | to swim           |                 |            |

## Language points

### 'To like'

In the phrase **mať rád** 'to like' (*lit.* 'to have glad') **rád** becomes **rada** if the subject is female:

**Igor má rád vodu.**

Igor likes water.

**Viera má rada vodu.**

Viera likes water.

**Viera má Igora rada.**

Viera likes/loves Igor.

*Negative:* **Viera nemá Igora rada.** Viera doesn't like Igor.

To say you like doing something just use **rád** alone with the activity verb:

**Rád/rada plávam.**

I like swimming.

**Rada číta.**

She likes reading.

*Negative:* **Nerada číta.**

She doesn't like reading.

**Dievča** 'girl' and **dieťa** 'child' both count as neuter! So now **rád** becomes **rado**:

**Dieťa/dievča má vodu rado.**

The child/girl loves water.

The plural of **rád** is **radi**, but **radý** if the persons are non-male!

**Radi spia.**

They like sleeping.

**Rady spia.**

They (women) like sleeping.

## Expressing necessity or obligation

**Musieť** 'to have to, must' is another í-type verb, used to express necessity or obligation:

**Musím variť obed.**

I have to cook lunch. I must cook lunch.

**Nemusíte hrať futbal.**  
You don't have to play football.

## Knowing facts

The verb **vedieť** 'to know' is a little irregular, although most of the present simply has **-ie** instead of **-á** or **-í** in the endings:

|             |            |                   |           |
|-------------|------------|-------------------|-----------|
| <b>viem</b> | I know     | <b>vieme</b>      | we know   |
| <b>vieš</b> | you know   | <b>viete</b>      | you know  |
| <b>vie</b>  | s/he knows | <b>vedia</b> [NB] | they know |

**Neviete, kde je pán Kováč?** Do(n't) you know where Mr Kováč is?

**Nevedia, kto je pán Kováč.** They don't know who Mr Kováč is.  
**Vieme, čo robíme.** We know what we are doing.

**Vedieť** also means 'to know how to':

|                               |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Pán Kováč nevie variť.</b> | Mr Kováč doesn't know how to cook. |
| <b>Viera vie hrať hokej.</b>  | Viera knows how to play hockey.    |

## Languages

To say 'know a language' you use **vedieť** 'to know' and **po** followed by language word forms ending in **-sky** or **-cky**, e.g. **po slovensky** '(in) Slovak', **anglicky** 'English', **nemecky** 'German', **česky** 'Czech', **madarsky** 'Hungarian', **polsky** 'Polish', **rusky** 'Russian', **francúzsky** 'French'.

**Pán Kováč vie len po slovensky.**  
Mr Kováč only knows Slovak.

**Ale Viera vie po anglicky.**  
But Viera knows English.

Similarly, with **hovoriť** 'to speak' and **čítať** 'to read':

**Ján hovorí a číta (po) nemecky.**  
Ján speaks and reads German.

Corresponding adjectives end in **-ský**, **-cký**, e.g. **slovenský list** 'a Slovak letter', **anglická kniha** 'an English book', **ruský román** 'a Russian novel'.

Nouns for languages end in **-ina**: **slovenčina** ‘Slovak’, **angličtina** ‘English’, **nemčina** ‘German’, **čeština** ‘Czech’, **maďarčina** ‘Hungarian’, **poľština** ‘Polish’, **ruština** ‘Russian’, **francúzština** ‘French’.

Or **jazyk** ‘language/tongue’ may be used with the adjectives, e.g. **slovenský jazyk** ‘the Slovak language’.

## Countries and nationalities

Country names end typically in **-sko** or **-cko**: **Slovensko** ‘Slovakia’, **Anglicko** ‘England’, **Nemecko** ‘Germany’, **Rakúsko** ‘Austria’, **Maďarsko** ‘Hungary’, **Poľsko** ‘Poland’, **Rusko** ‘Russia’, **Francúzsko** ‘France’. Also one-time ‘Czechoslovakia’, **Československo** (sometimes spelt **Česko-Slovensko**).

Add: **Veľká Británia** ‘Great Britain’, **Amerika** ‘America’, **Spojené štáty** ‘the United States’, **Česká republika** ‘the Czech Republic’.

Nouns for members of nationalities have female forms in **-ka**: **Slovák**, **Slovenka** ‘a Slovak’, **Angličan**, **Angličanka** ‘Englishman, -woman’, **Američan**, **Američanka** ‘an American’, **Nemec**, **Nemka** ‘a German’, **Rakúšan**, **Rakúšanka** ‘an Austrian’, **Čech**, **Česka** ‘a Czech’, **Maďar**, **Maďarka** ‘a Hungarian’, **Poliak**, **Poľka** ‘a Pole’, **Rus**, **Ruska** ‘a Russian’, **Francúz**, **Francúžka** ‘a Frenchman, -woman’.

## Understanding

The present of **rozumieť** ‘to understand’ is like verbs in **-ať**, but with **-ie** in the ending instead of **-á**. Note the ‘they’ form in **-ejú**.

**rozumiem**, **rozumieš**, **rozumie**  
**rozumieme**, **rozumiete**, **rozumejú**

**Rozumiete (po) slovensky?** Do you understand Slovak?  
**Nerozumejú (po) anglicky.** They don’t understand English.

## Some plurals

Many nouns have plurals in **-y**. **Dva** ‘two’ becomes **dve** with feminine (and neuter) nouns:

|  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| <b>hrad – dva</b> , <b>tri</b> , <b>štyri hrady</b>  | two, three, four castles |
| <b>karta – dve</b> , <b>tri</b> , <b>štyri karty</b> | two, three, four cards   |

Numbers **päť** ‘five’ and above are followed by ‘of’ forms – we’ll come to this later!

### **Exercise 4**

Answer ‘no’ to these questions, making complete sentences:

- 1 Máš rád/rada vodu? – Nie, . . .
- 2 Hráš futbal?
- 3 Máte rád/rada šport?
- 4 Plávaš?
- 5 Si lenivý/lenivá?
- 6 Ste chory/chorá?
- 7 Musíte fajčiť?

### **Exercise 5**

Answer ‘yes’ to these questions, in the same way:

1. Musíte sa učiť – Áno, . . .
- 2 Vieš po anglicky?
- 3 Rozumiete po nemecky?
- 4 Vie Evička variť?
- 5 Hovoríte dobre po nemecky?
- 6 Viete hrať tenis?
- 7 Musíme hrať nejaký šport?

### **Exercise 6**

Make these nouns plural, and add the right word for ‘two’:

sestra, obed, auto, list, taxík, matka

## **Dialogue 4**

*Peter asks Magda about her languages and other interests*

PETER: Magda, vieš po anglicky?

MAGDA: Nie. Ale hovorím trochu po nemecky a rozumiem po maďarsky.

PETER: Čo robíš, keď máš voľný čas?

MAGDA: Mám rada umenie. Rada čítam alebo pozérám televíziu.

PETER: Máš rada nejaký šport?

MAGDA: Niekedy hrám karty. Nemáš rád karty?

PETER: Nie.

PETER: *Magda, do you know English?*

MAGDA: *No. But I speak German a little and understand Hungarian.*

PETER: *What do you do when you have (some) free time?*

MAGDA: *I like art. I like reading or watching television.*

PETER: *Do you like any sport?*

MAGDA: *Sometimes I play cards. Don't you like cards?*

PETER: No.

## Vocabulary

|                     |                   |                       |                |
|---------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| <b>čas</b>          | time              | <b>rád/rada čítam</b> | I like reading |
| <b>hovoríť</b>      | to speak          | <b>rozumieť</b>       | to understand  |
| <b>karty</b>        | cards             | <b>televízia, -u</b>  | television     |
| <b>mám rád/rada</b> | I like/love       | <b>trochu</b>         | a little       |
| <b>po maďarsky</b>  | (in) Hungarian    | <b>umenie</b>         | art            |
| <b>pozerať</b>      | to watch, look at | <b>voľný</b>          | free           |
| <b>pozerám</b>      | I watch TV        |                       |                |
| <b>televíziu</b>    |                   |                       |                |

# 3 Si lenivá

Are you lazy?

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- talk about family
- talk about objects of actions
- say 'onto', 'for', 'through'
- add adjectives to object nouns
- say 'who', 'which' and 'someone'

## Dialogue 1

*Peter and Magda continue their conversation from the last lesson*

PETER: Si lenivá?

MAGDA: Nie! Rada chodím na prechádzky. A behám. A plávam.  
Mám vodu rada.

PETER: Ty si teda športovkyňa!

MAGDA: Ale nie! Brat je veľký športovec. Hrá futbal, volejbal a  
hokej. Poznáš Igora?

PETER: Nie, nepoznám. A máš aj sestru?

MAGDA: Nie, nemám. Prečo sa pýtaš?

PETER: Pretože to chcem vedieť.

MAGDA: A ty máš brata?

PETER: Áno, mám.

PETER: *Are you lazy?*

MAGDA: *No. I like going for walks. And I run. And I swim. I love water.*

PETER: *You're a sportswoman then!*

MAGDA: *I am not! (My) brother is a great sportsman. He plays*

*football, volleyball and (ice-) hockey. Do you know Igor?*

- PETER: *No, I don't* (lit. *don't know*). *Do you have a sister also?*
- MAGDA: *No, I don't* (lit. *don't have*). *Why do you ask?*
- PETER: *Because I want to know.*
- MAGDA: *And do you have a brother?*
- PETER: *Yes, I have.*

## Vocabulary

|                   |                              |                    |                       |
|-------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>behať</b>      | to run                       | <b>pretože</b>     | because               |
| <b>hokej</b>      | ice-hockey                   | <b>pýtať sa</b>    | to ask                |
| <b>chcem</b>      | I want                       | <b>športovec</b>   | sportsman             |
| <b>chodiť na</b>  | to go for walks              | <b>športovkyňa</b> | a sportswoman         |
| <b>prechádzky</b> |                              | <b>teda</b>        | then (= in that case) |
| <b>poznať</b>     | to know (e.g. person, place) | <b>vedieť</b>      | to know (facts)       |
| <b>prečo</b>      | why?                         | <b>voda, -u</b>    | water                 |

## Language points

### Rodina 'family'

We have begun to meet some of the commonest words for family members. Here are some very basic terms to learn now:

|                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>žena, muž</b>                 | woman, man (+ wife, husband) |
| <b>dievča, chlapec</b>           | girl, boy                    |
| <b>matka, otec</b>               | mother, father               |
| <b>sestra, brat</b>              | sister, brother              |
| <b>dcéra, syn</b>                | daughter, son                |
| <b>teta, strýko</b>              | aunt, uncle                  |
| <b>stará matka, starý otec</b>   | grandmother, grandfather     |
| <b>vnučka, vnuk</b>              | granddaughter, grandson      |
| <b>manželka/manžel, manželia</b> | wife/husband, spouses/couple |
| <b>rodič(ia), starí rodičia</b>  | parent(s), grandparents      |

|                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| <b>dieťa, deti</b>  | child, children |
| <b>príbuzný, -á</b> | a relative      |

To these we may add the more intimate terms:

|                          |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| <b>mama/mami, mamka</b>  | mum, mummy       |
| <b>otecko, ocko</b>      | dad, daddy       |
| <b>stará mama, babka</b> | gran, granny     |
| <b>dedo, dedko</b>       | grandad, grandpa |

NB **dievča** ‘girl’ and **dieťa** ‘child’ both count as neuter! Thus you say: **mal-é dievča/dietľa** ‘a little girl/child’.

**Strýko** is, strictly speaking, ‘father’s brother’. **Ujo (ujko)** is ‘mother’s brother’. Children often call grown-ups **ujo** ‘uncle’ or **teta** ‘aunty’.

## Objects of verbs: the accusative

The basic, dictionary form of a Slovak noun is the subject form, called the *nominative* case. This is used for naming, and for the subject (agent, doer) of a verb:

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>Otec varí.</b>       | Father is cooking.  |
| <b>Večera je dobrá.</b> | The supper is good. |

A noun directly affected by a verb is called its object. In Slovak you often have to put such nouns into a special object form, called the *accusative*. For example **večera** ‘dinner’ becomes **večeru**:

|                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Otec varí večeru.</b> | Father is cooking supper. |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|

The simple rule is:

- nouns in **-a**: acc. **-u**
- nouns for males: acc. **-a**
- all others: *unchanged*

## Nouns in **-a**

Nouns ending in **-a** have accusative **-u**. Most are feminine:

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>To je voda.</b>      | That is water.             |
| <b>Nemáme vodu.</b>     | We don’t have (any) water. |
| <b>Jana vidí Vieru.</b> | Jana sees Viera.           |

**Viera nevidí Janu.**

Viera doesn't see Jana.

Nouns for male persons ending in **-a** behave the same way:

**To je kolega.**

That is a colleague.

**Vidíme kolegu.**

We see a colleague.

## Nouns for males

Other nouns for males have an accusative that ends in **-a:**

**Janko vidí Juraja.**

Janko sees Juraj.

**Juraj nevidí Janka.**

Juraj doesn't see Janko.

**Čo robí brat?**

What is (your) brother doing?

**Nemám brata.**

I don't have a brother.

Some nouns drop an **-e-** or **-o-** when any endings are attached:

**To je Peter a Pavol.**

That's Peter and Pavol

**Poznáte Petra a Pavla?**

Do you know Peter and Pavol?

**To je môj otec.**

That is my father.

**Máte otca?**

Do you have a father?

Note that **byť** 'to be' is *not* followed by the accusative!!

**Juraj je muž.**

Juraj is a man.

**Viera je žena.**

Viera is a woman.

## Prepositions

Prepositions are words like 'onto', 'for', or 'through', which link up with following nouns to define place, time, purpose, etc.

They are followed by nouns in particular cases. For example, **na** meaning 'onto', or 'for a purpose' is followed by the accusative:

**Čakám na Vieru.**

I'm waiting for Viera.

Of course, very often the noun is *unchanged* in the accusative:

**Dávam obed na stôl.**

I give/put lunch onto the table.

**Pre** 'for the benefit of' and **cez** 'through/across' also require the accusative:

**To je kniha pre Vieru.**

That is a book for Viera.

**To je kniha pre Igora.**

That is a book for Igor.

**Most cez rieku.**

A bridge across the river.

**Pozerám cez okno.**  
**Cez deň čítam.**

I look through the window.  
 Through (during) the day I read.

## Knowing people and places

To say you know a person or place, use **poznať**, *not vedieť*. (**Vedieť** is for facts, information and skills.)

|                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Poznáte Bratislavu?</b> | Do you know Bratislava? |
| <b>Štefana nepoznáte.</b>  | You don't know Štefan.  |

Note the rather flexible word order of Slovak. You put the word you want to emphasize more at the end. (In the second example Štefan had clearly already been mentioned, and it was the matter of whether you knew him that was important.)

### Exercise 1

Complete the following as suggested and translate:

- 1 Vidím \_\_\_\_\_. (*the river*)
- 2 Varím \_\_\_\_\_. (*lunch, supper*)
- 3 Nemáme \_\_\_\_\_. (*water*)
- 4 Nemajú \_\_\_\_\_. (*a teacher*)
- 5 Nepoznajú \_\_\_\_\_. (*Igor*)
- 6 Vidíte \_\_\_\_\_? (*brother*)

### Exercise 2

Say or write the following in Slovak:

- 1 I have a brother.
- 2 I don't have a sister.
- 3 Eva doesn't have a father.
- 4 They don't have a mother.
- 5 Do you know Eva?
- 6 Do you know Jozef?
- 7 Does Eva know Pavol?

### Exercise 3

Translate and answer these questions (honestly!), in complete sentences:

- 1 Beháte?
- 2 Plávate?
- 3 Máte rada/rád vodu?
- 4 Ste športovec/športovkyňa?
- 5 Chodíte na prechádzky?
- 6 Hráte futbal?
- 7 Ste lenivý/lenivá?
- 8 Poznáte dobre Bratislavu?

## Dialogue 2



*Andrew Brown is looking for his friend Ivan Šabík. He's unsure of the address and his Slovak. Pani Šabíková comes to the door*

**ANDREW:** Dobrý deň. Prepáčte, hľadám tu niekoho, ale neviem, či mám správnu adresu.

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** Koho hľadáte?

**ANDREW:** Nebýva tu Ivan Šabík?

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** Áno, ja som Šabíková. Ivan je môj syn. A vy ste kto?

**ANDREW:** Ja som Andrew Brown, anglický študent. Neviete náhodou po anglicky?

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** Nie, bohužiaľ. Hovorím len po slovensky.

**ANDREW:** Moja slovenčina je veľmi zlá, viete. Učím sa len krátko.

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** Ale hovoríte pekne. Máte peknú výslovnosť.

**ANDREW:** *Hello. Excuse me, I'm looking for somebody here, but I don't know if I have the right address.*

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** *Who are you looking for?*

**ANDREW:** *Does (lit. doesn't) Ivan Šabík live here?*

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** *Yes, I'm (Mrs) Šabíková. Ivan's my son. And you are who?*

**ANDREW:** *I'm Andrew Brown, an English student. You don't know English by any chance?*

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** *No, unfortunately. I only speak Slovak.*

**ANDREW:** *My Slovak is very bad, you know. I've been learning (lit. I'm learning) only for a short time.*

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** *But you speak nicely. You have nice pronunciation.*

## Vocabulary

|                     |  |                   |                |
|---------------------|--|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>adresa</b>       | address                                | <b>prepáčte</b>   | excuse me      |
| <b>či</b>           | if, whether                            | <b>správny</b>    | correct, right |
| <b>hľadať</b>       | to look for                            | <b>študent</b>    | student        |
| <b>koho</b>         | <i>acc.</i> of <b>kto</b> , who?       | <b>syn</b>        | son            |
| <b>môj, f. moja</b> | my                                     | <b>výslovnosť</b> | pronunciation  |
| <b>náhodou</b>      | by chance, maybe                       | <b>zlý</b>        | bad            |
| <b>niekoho</b>      | <i>acc.</i> of <b>niekto</b> , someone |                   |                |

## Language points

### Adjectives

Like nouns, adjectives have only two distinct accusatives. Feminine **-á** becomes accusative **-ú**:

**To je dobrá voda.**

That is good water.

**Máme dobrú vodu.**

We have good water.

Male animate **-ý** becomes accusative **-ého**:

**To je dobrý otec.**

That is a good father.

**Máme dobrého otca.**

We have a good father.

Remember, endings shorten after long vowels (the rhythmic law):

**To je správna adresa.**

That is the correct address.

**Máme správnu adresu.**

We have the right address.

### Female surnames

Female surnames ending in **-ová** behave like adjectives. Surnames in **-ý** have female **-á**. **Pani** 'Mrs' is invariable with surnames:

**To je pani Vilikovská.**

This is Mrs Vilikovská.

**Poznáte pani Vilikovskú?**

Do you know Mrs Vilikovská?

**Pán Kováč a pani Kováčová  
nie sú doma.**

Mr Kováč and Mrs Kováčová  
aren't at home.

### 'Who' and 'someone'

To ask 'who?' you use **kto**:

**Kto je to?**

Who is it?

But if ‘who?’ is the object it becomes **koho**:

**Koho hľadáš?**

Who are you looking for?

Similarly, **niekto** ‘someone’ changes to **niekoho**:

**Je tam niekto?**

Is somebody there?

**Hľadám niekoho.**

I'm looking for someone.

## ‘Who’ and ‘which’

If ‘who’ has nothing to do with a question, but refers to a preceding noun, you use **ktorý**, **-á**, **-é**. Its gender form matches the noun it refers to:

**Mám brata, ktorý sa učí po slovensky.**

I have a brother who is learning Slovak.

**Mám sestru, ktorá sa učí po anglicky.**

I have a sister who is learning English.

If the noun is a thing, **ktorý** is ‘which’ (often omitted in English):

**Auto, ktoré má tvoj otec, je veľmi dobré.**

The car (which) your father has is very good.

In a question **ktorý?** also corresponds to ‘which?’, while **aký?** means ‘what kind of?’:

**Ktoré je to auto?**

Which car is it?

**Aké je to auto?**

What kind of car is it?

## Exercise 4

Complete the following as suggested and translate:

- 1 To je \_\_\_\_\_ voda. (*good*)
- 2 Ivan má \_\_\_\_\_ učiteľa. (*good*)
- 3 Eva nemá \_\_\_\_\_ adresu. (*correct*)
- 4 Poznáte pána \_\_\_\_\_ ? (*Vilikovský*)
- 5 Máte \_\_\_\_\_ výslovnosť. (*nice*)
- 6 Viera má \_\_\_\_\_ otca. (*English*)
- 7 Ondrej má \_\_\_\_\_ matku. (*Slovak*)
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ hľadáš? (*whom*)
- 9 Janko hľadá \_\_\_\_\_. (*someone*)

## **Exercise 5**

Which of these statements are true (**áno/nie?**) about Dialogue 2?

- 1 Andrew hľadá Ivana Šabíka.
- 2 Ivan hľadá matku.
- 3 Andrew je americký študent.
- 4 Pani Šabíková hľadá niekoho.
- 5 Pani Šabíková vie len po anglicky.

## **Dialogue 3**

*Pani Šabíková asks about Andrew's Slovak connections*

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** Nemáte slovenskú manželku?

**ANDREW:** Nie. Nie som ženatý, ale mám sestru, ktorá má slovenského manžela, a brata, ktorý sa tiež učí po slovensky. Máme dobrého priateľa, Slováka, ktorý nás učí. Je inžinier a on sa chce učiť po anglicky. Volá sa Peter Botto. Nepoznáte ho?

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** Ale áno, Petra poznám dobre. Aj Ivan má angličtinu veľmi rád. Učí sa už dlho, rád číta anglickú a americkú literatúru. Podte ďalej. Ivan je doma. Pozerá televíziu. Práve dávajú americký film.

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** *Do (lit. don't) you have a Slovak wife?*

**ANDREW:** *No. I'm not married, but I have a sister who has a Slovak husband, and a brother who is also learning Slovak. We have a good friend, a Slovak, who's teaching us. He's an engineer and he wants to learn English. His name's Peter Botto. Don't you know him?*

**ŠABÍKOVÁ:** *But yes, I know Peter well. Ivan also likes English very much. He's been learning (lit. he is learning) for a long time now, he likes reading English and American literature. Come in. Ivan's at home. He's watching television. They're just showing (lit. giving) an American film.*

## Vocabulary

|                 |            |              |                |
|-----------------|------------|--------------|----------------|
| americký        | American   | nás          | us             |
| dávať           | to give    | podľať dalej | come in        |
| chce            | s/he wants | dalej        | further        |
| inžinier        | engineer   | práve        | just, just now |
| ktorý <i>m.</i> | who, which | priateľ      | friend         |
| ktorá <i>f.</i> | who, which | učiť         | to teach       |
| literatúra      | literature | už           | now, already   |
| manžel          | husband    | ženatý       | married        |
| manželka        | wife       |              |                |

# 4 Idem do mesta

## I'm going to town

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- use more verbs
- know the present tense of 'to go'
- talk about place with basic case forms
- say 'please may I have', etc.
- use the verb 'to write' in the present
- say 'of', 'into' and 'out of', 'from'

### Dialogue 1

*Peter asks Jana where she's going, and what Viera and Eva are doing*

PETER: Ahoj, Jana. Ako sa máš?!

JANA: Dobre. Kam ideš?

PETER: Idem do mesta. Nevieš, kde je Viera?

JANA: Viera je v Bratislave. Kupuje darček. Potom ide na večeru k Zuzke.

PETER: A Eva?

JANA: Eva je v Trnave. Je na návštěve u kamaráta.

PETER: Škoda.

PETER: *Hello, Jana. How are you?!*

JANA: *Fine. Where are you going?*

PETER: *I'm going to town. Do(n't) you know where Viera is?*

JANA: *Viera is in Bratislava. She's buying a present. Then she's going for dinner/supper at (lit. to) Zuzka's.*

PETER: *And Eva?*

JANA: *Eva is in Trnava. She is visiting (lit. on a visit) at a friend's.*

PETER: *Pity.*

## Vocabulary

|                        |                |                      |                 |
|------------------------|----------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| <b>darček</b>          | present, gift  | <b>na (návšteve)</b> | on (a visit)    |
| <b>do (mesta)</b>      | into/to (town) | <b>na večeru</b>     | for dinner      |
| <b>ísť/idem</b>        | to go/I go     | <b>návšteva</b>      | a visit         |
| <b>k (Zuzke)</b>       | to (Zuzka's)   | <b>potom</b>         | then            |
| <b>kam</b>             | where to?      | <b>škoda</b>         | a pity          |
| <b>kamarát</b>         | friend         | <b>u (kamaráta)</b>  | at (a friend's) |
| <b>kupovať/kupujem</b> | to buy/I buy   | <b>v (Trnave)</b>    | in (Trnava)     |

## Dialogue 2

*Then Peter asks what Jana is doing at the moment*

PETER: Čo robíš? Máš chvíľu čas?

JANA: Upratujem byt, medzitým varím obed, pozerám televíziu.  
Potom idem do samoobsluhy. A tak d'alej.

PETER: Ty nejdeš do roboty? Pracuješ, nie?

JANA: Nie. Už mesiac nepracujem. Som ešte stále študentka.  
Študujem v Prahe medicínu. Teraz máme prázdniny, vieš.

PETER: Aj ja študujem. Študujem v Bratislave ekonómiu.

PETER: *What are you doing? Do you have time for a moment?*

JANA: *I'm tidying the flat, and meanwhile I'm cooking lunch, and watching television. Then I'm going to the supermarket. And so on.*

PETER: *You're not going to work? You work, don't you (lit. no)?*

JANA: *No. For a month already I haven't been working (lit. I'm not working). I'm still a student. I'm studying medicine in Prague. Now we're on holiday (lit. have holidays), you know.*

PETER: *I'm studying too. I'm studying economics in Bratislava.*

## Vocabulary

|                     |                 |                          |                |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| <b>byt</b>          | flat, apartment | <b>medicína</b>          | medicine       |
| <b>a tak d'alej</b> | and so on       | <b>medzitým</b>          | meanwhile      |
| <b>ekonómia</b>     | economics       | <b>mesiac</b>            | month, moon    |
| <b>ešte stále</b>   | still           | <b>nejdeš</b>            | you don't go   |
| <b>chvíľu</b>       | (for) a moment  | <b>pracovať/pracujem</b> | to work/I work |

|                    |                  |                   |                |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>Praha</b>       | Prague           | <b>teraz</b>      | now            |
| <b>prázdniny</b>   | holidays         | <b>upratovať/</b> | to tidy/I tidy |
| <b>robota</b>      | work             | <b>upratujem</b>  |                |
| <b>samoobsluha</b> | supermarket      |                   |                |
| <b>študovať/</b>   | to study/I study |                   |                |
| <b>študujem</b>    |                  |                   |                |

## Language points

### Verbs

Many verbs have an e-type present, with endings **-em**, **-eš**, **-e**, etc. A particularly regular type has infinitives in **-ovať**, which change to **-ujem**, **-uješ**, etc., e.g. **pracovať** 'to work':

|                 |             |                  |           |
|-----------------|-------------|------------------|-----------|
| <b>pracujem</b> | I work      | <b>pracujeme</b> | we work   |
| <b>pracuješ</b> | you work    | <b>pracujete</b> | you work  |
| <b>pracuje</b>  | (s)he works | <b>pracujú</b>   | they work |

Other common **-ovať** verbs include **študovať/študujem** 'to study', **kupovať/kupujem** 'to buy' and **opakovať/opakujem** 'to repeat'.

### Verbs: revision

Usually the present tense form of a verb can be predicted from its infinitive. Regular patterns are:

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| verbs in <b>-at'</b> :   | <b>čakám, čakáš, čaká<br/>čakáme, čakáte čakajú</b>                  |
| verbs in <b>-it'</b> :   | <b>robím, robíš, robí<br/>robíme, robíte, robia</b>                  |
| verbs in <b>-ovat'</b> : | <b>pracujem, pracuješ, pracuje<br/>pracujeme, pracujete, pracujú</b> |

## 'To go'

Various unpredictable verbs belong to the **e**-type. One is **íst** 'to go':

|             |           |              |         |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|---------|
| <b>idem</b> | I go      | <b>ideme</b> | we go   |
| <b>ideš</b> | you go    | <b>idete</b> | you go  |
| <b>ide</b>  | s/he goes | <b>ídú</b>   | they go |

The negative 'not to go' replaces **i** by **j**:

**nejſt:** **nejdem,** **nejdeš,** **nejde** ...

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| <b>Idem domov.</b>  | He is going home.    |
| <b>Nejde domov.</b> | He isn't going home. |

**Íst** can also mean 'to come' – the movement can be in either direction:

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Idem tam.</b> | He is going there. |
| <b>Idem sem.</b> | He is coming here. |

## Talking about place

Slovak nouns have to be put into different forms or cases for various purposes, as we have already seen. Cases are vital, but hard for learners to master. We'll try to make it as simple as we can!

The *genitive* case on its own means 'of'. It also follows preposition words like **do** 'into'. The *dative* means 'to/for'. It also follows **k** 'towards'. Both cases often denote a change of place.

The *locative* follows words like **v** 'in'. The *instrumental* follows words like **za** 'behind, beyond'. Both cases often denote a location.

## Case forms

There are *two* main sets of very basic case forms, one for feminine nouns (e.g. **Bratislava, rieka**), another for masculine/neuter nouns (e.g. **Trenčín, mesto**).

Here are the main basic forms (the locative ending is the same for both forms):

|                     |   |                              |
|---------------------|---|------------------------------|
| <i>genitive</i>     | <b>-y:</b> <b>do Bratislavы/do rieky</b>    | into Bratislava/the river    |
|                     | <b>-a:</b> <b>do Trenčína/do mesta</b>      | into Trenčín/the town        |
| <i>dative</i>       | <b>-e:</b> <b>k Bratislavе/k rieke</b>      | towards Bratislava/the river |
|                     | <b>-u:</b> <b>k Trenčínu/k mestu</b>        | towards Trenčín/the town     |
| <i>locative</i>     | <b>e:</b> <b>v Bratislavе/v rieke</b>       | in Bratislava/the river      |
|                     | <b>v Trenčíne/v meste</b>                   | in Trenčín/the town          |
| <i>instrumental</i> |   |                              |
|                     | <b>-ou:</b> <b>za Bratislavou/za riekou</b> | beyond Bratislava/the river  |
|                     | <b>-om:</b> <b>za Trenčínom/za mestom</b>   | beyond Trenčín/the town      |

If you can learn this table, it will help a lot later on.

### **Exercise 1**

True or false about Dialogue 1? (**Áno/nie?**)

- 1 Eva je v Bratislave.
- 2 Viera ide k Eve na večeru.
- 3 Peter kupuje darček.
- 4 Peter ide do mesta.
- 5 Viera je na návšteve u kamaráta.

### **Exercise 2**

True or false about Dialogue 2? Correct those which are wrong:

- 1 Peter varí obed.
- 2 Jana upratuje byt.
- 3 Peter ide do samobsluhy.
- 4 Peter študuje v Bratislave medicínu.
- 5 Jana študuje v Trnave ekonómiu.

### **Exercise 3**

Translate these verb forms into Slovak:

I work, you (sg) smoke, they search, we give, they play, you (pl.) swim, we cook, they sleep, I go, they tidy, we study

## Dialogue 3



Ondrej asks for some drinks and ice cream in a snack bar (**bufet**). Note the accusative forms of items requested!

PREDAVAČKA: Čo si želáte?

ONDREJ: Prosím si pohár mlieka, zmrzlinu, šálku kávy a jednu pepsikolu. A pohárik vína.

PREDAVAČKA: Biele alebo červené víno?

ONDREJ: Červené.

PREDAVAČKA: *What do you want?*

ONDREJ: *Please may I have a glass of milk, an ice-cream, a cup of coffee and one Pepsi Cola. And a (little) glass of wine.*

PREDAVAČKA: *White or red wine?*

ONDREJ: *Red.*

## Vocabulary

|                        |               |                      |                      |
|------------------------|---------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <b>biely</b>           | white         | <b>prosím si</b>     | please may I         |
| <b>červený</b>         | red           |                      | have                 |
| <b>jedna, jednu f.</b> | one           | <b>šálka</b>         | cup                  |
| <b>káva</b>            | coffee        | <b>víno</b>          | wine                 |
| <b>mlieko</b>          | milk          | <b>zmrzlina</b>      | ice cream            |
| <b>pepsikola</b>       | Pepsi Cola    | <b>želať</b>         | to wish              |
| <b>pohár</b>           | glass         | <b>čo si želáte?</b> | what do you<br>wish? |
| <b>pohárik</b>         | (small) glass |                      |                      |

## Dialogue 4



A young man (**mladý pán**) comes into the snack bar to look for someone:

MLADÝ PÁN: Prepáčte, neviete, či tu nie je pani Horáková? Myslím, že tu pracuje. Mám tu odkaz od jej sestry.

PREDAVAČKA: Áno, mladý pán, pracuje tu. Aha, práve ide. Máte šťastie. Dobrý deň, pani Horáková, máte návštěvu. Ja už idem domov. Do viděnia.

- MĽADÝ PÁN:** *Excuse me, do you know (lit. don't you know) if Mrs Horáková is (lit. isn't) here? I think that she works here. I have here a message from her sister.*
- PREDAVAČKA:** *Yes, young man, she works here. Ah, here she comes just now. You're lucky. Good day, Mrs Horáková, you've got a visitor (lit. a visit). I'm going home now. Goodbye.*

## Vocabulary

|              |           |                       |                  |
|--------------|-----------|-----------------------|------------------|
| <b>aha</b>   | ah!       | <b>mysliet/myslím</b> | to think/I think |
| <b>domov</b> | (to) home | <b>od</b>             | from             |
| <b>jej</b>   | her       | <b>odkaz</b>          | message          |

## Dialogue 5



*Jana tells pán Botto about a friend she's writing to*

- JANA:** Kam idete, pán Botto?
- BOTTO:** Idem do parku, ked' je tak pekne. A vy, čo robíte? Píšete niečo? Vidím, že máte papier a pero.
- JANA:** Idem do záhrady. Píšem list. Moja priateľka píše, že je smutná, súrne potrebuje odo mňa pár slov.
- BOTTO:** Ako sa volá vaša priateľka?
- JANA:** Volá sa Eva. Je to milé dievča. Mám ju veľmi rada.
- BOTTO:** Kde býva?
- JANA:** Teraz býva v Oxforde. Študuje tam ekonómiu.
- BOTTO:** Vie po anglicky? Píše a hovorí dobre?
- JANA:** Áno, samozrejme. Eva je totiž Angličanka.
- JANA:** *Where are you going, Mr Botto?*
- BOTTO:** *I'm going to the park, since it's so nice. And (what about) you, what are you doing? Are you writing something? I see you have paper and a pen.*
- JANA:** *I'm going to the garden. I'm writing a letter. My (girl)friend writes that she is sad, she urgently needs a couple of words from me.*
- BOTTO:** *What is your friend's name?*
- JANA:** *Her name's Eva. She's a sweet girl. I like her very much.*
- BOTTO:** *Where does she live?*
- JANA:** *Now she lives in Oxford. She's studying economics there.*

BOTTO: *Does she know English? Does she write and speak (it) well?*  
 JANA: *Yes, of course. Eva's English, you see.*

## Vocabulary

|             |                   |              |                        |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------|------------------------|
| dievča      | girl              | písat'/píšem | to write/I write       |
| ju          | her               | priateľka    | female friend          |
| milý        | dear              | smutný       | sad                    |
| niečo       | something         | súrne        | urgently               |
| odo mňa     | from me           | totiž        | that's to say, you see |
| papier      | paper             | váš, vaša    | your                   |
| pár slov    | a couple of words | vidieť/vidím | to see/I see           |
| park        | park              | záhrada      | garden                 |
| pero        | pen               | že           | that ...               |
| potrebovať/ | to need/I need    |              |                        |
| potrebujem  |                   |              |                        |

## Language points

### What would you like? Please may I have?

Remember the common phrases **čo si želáte?** (*lit.* ‘What do you wish?’) and **prosím si ...** ‘Please may I have ...’ (*lit.* ‘I ask for self ...’). Both verbs attach the word **si**, related to **sa**, which means ‘for/to oneself’. Various other verbs also commonly appear with **si**:

|                           |                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>Kupuje si knihu.</b>   | S/he buys (for him/herself) a book. |
| <b>Kupujem si sveter.</b> | I buy (for myself) a sweater.       |

Try not to confuse this word with **si** meaning ‘you are’:

**Si doma?** Are you at home?

### ‘To write’

Another e-type verb is **písat** ‘to write’:

|              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| <b>píšem</b> | I write     |
| <b>píšeš</b> | you write   |
| <b>píše</b>  | s/he writes |

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <b>píšeme</b> | we write                                 |
| <b>písete</b> | you write                                |
| <b>píšu</b>   | they write<br>(-u: <i>rhythmic law</i> ) |

## 'Of'

To say 'of' you use the genitive case on its own, typically feminine **-y**, masculine/neuter **-a**. We could call it the '*of* form':

|                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>káva – šálka kávy</b>     | coffee – a cup of coffee |
| <b>voda – pohár vody</b>     | water – a glass of water |
| <b>chlieb – kus chleba</b>   | bread – a piece of bread |
| <b>mlieko – pohár mlieka</b> | milk – a glass of milk   |

Notice the vowel shortening in **chlieb – chleba**. This happens with a few nouns before any case endings.

## 'Into' and 'out of'

The genitive case follows **do** 'into' and its opposite **z** 'out of':

|                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>rieka – do rieky, z rieky</b>   | into the river, out of the river |
| <b>hotel – do hotela, z hotela</b> | into the hotel, out of the hotel |
| <b>auto – do auta, z auta</b>      | into the car, out of the car     |

**Z** becomes **zo** before words beginning with **z/s, ž/š:** **záhrada – zo záhrady** 'out of the garden', **škola – zo školy** 'out of school'.

## 'From'

The genitive also follows **od** 'from/away from' (a person or place):

**List od učiteľky, od učiteľa.**  
A letter from a female/male teacher.

**Idú od rieky.**  
They are coming from the river.

## Genitive -u

Many masculine inanimate nouns (for places, things and ideas) have a genitive ending in **-u**, the same as the dative:

**dom, hrad, park, byt – Ide do domu, do hradu, do parku, do bytu.**  
S/he goes into the house, the castle, the park, the flat.

This is pretty unpredictable, though abstract nouns usually have the **-u** ending. (If you want to get this right, consult the Slovak–English glossary.)

## Male accusative/genitive

Accusative (object) and genitive forms of male nouns are identical!

**Poznáte Igora/kolegu.**

You know Igor/(my) colleague.

**List od Igora/kolegu.**

A letter from Igor/(my) colleague.

### Exercise 4

Add correct forms of the place names/nouns suggested and translate

- 1 **Prešov:** Jozef ide do \_\_\_\_\_. Jozef je v \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 **Trnava:** Eva ide do \_\_\_\_\_. Eva je v \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 **mesto:** Ivan ide do \_\_\_\_\_. Ivan je v \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 **samoobsluha:** Viera ide do \_\_\_\_\_. Viera je v \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 **Nitra:** Igor ide do \_\_\_\_\_. Igor je v \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 **Martin:** Zuzana je v \_\_\_\_\_. Zuzana ide do \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 **Komárno:** Juraj je v \_\_\_\_\_. Juraj ide do \_\_\_\_\_.

### Exercise 5

Čo si želáte? What do you want? Reply, saying Prosím si . . . :

- 1 an ice cream
- 2 a Pepsi Cola
- 3 a glass of milk
- 4 a cup of coffee
- 5 a piece of bread
- 6 a glass of water

### Exercise 6

Complete as suggested:

- 1 Idem do \_\_\_\_\_. (*hotel*)
- 2 Idú do \_\_\_\_\_. (*garden*)
- 3 Jana ide do \_\_\_\_\_. (*park*)
- 4 Eva býva v \_\_\_\_\_. (*Oxford*)
- 5 Pavol nemá \_\_\_\_\_. (*ice cream*)
- 6 Želáte si \_\_\_\_? (*coffee*)
- 7 Eva \_\_\_\_\_. (*is writing a letter*)
- 8 Pavol \_\_\_\_\_. (*is buying himself a book*)

## Dialogue 6

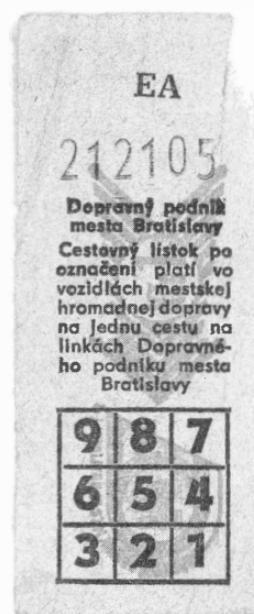


*Dušan Novák meets pani Bottová at the tram stop. He's moved to Petržalka, a large suburb of Bratislava across the Danube*

- DUŠAN: Dobrý deň, pani Bottová. Ako sa máte?
- BOTTOVÁ: Dobre. Kam idete?
- DUŠAN: Idem do mesta. Práve čakám na električku. A poobede idem k tete do Trenčína. Ona má dcéru, ktorá študuje angličtinu. Práve píše diplomovú prácu a potrebuje pomoc. Nerada píše, ale teraz musí.
- BOTTOVÁ: A vy, čo teraz robíte? Pracujete alebo študujete?
- DUŠAN: Som študent. Študujem angličtinu a nemčinu.
- BOTTOVÁ: Bývate tu niekde blízko?
- DUŠAN: Nie, teraz máme nový byt. Starý je hneď za rohom. Moja sestra tam ešte stále býva. Nový byt je dosť daleko, za Dunajom, v Petržalke. A vy, čo robíte?
- BOTTOVÁ: Som predavačka. Predávam v samoobsluhe.
- DUŠAN: Kde?
- BOTTOVÁ: V meste. Práve teraz tam idem. Čakám na autobus. Škoda, že nemáme spoločnú cestu.
- DUŠAN: *Hello, Mrs Bottová. How are you?*
- BOTTOVÁ: *Fine. Where are you going?*
- DUŠAN: *I'm going to town. I'm just waiting for the tram. And in the afternoon/after lunch I'm going to my aunt's in (lit. to) Trenčín. She has a daughter who is studying English. She's just writing her thesis (diploma work) and needs help. She doesn't like writing, but now she has to.*
- BOTTOVÁ: *And (what about) you, what are you doing now? Are you working or studying?*
- DUŠAN: *I'm a student. I'm studying English and German.*
- BOTTOVÁ: *Do you live somewhere near here?*
- DUŠAN: *No, we have a new flat now. The old (one) is just around the corner. My sister still lives there. The new flat is rather far, over the Danube, in Petržalka. And (what about) you, what do you do?*
- BOTTOVÁ: *I'm a shop assistant. I sell in a supermarket.*
- DUŠAN: *Where?*
- BOTTOVÁ: *In town. I'm just going there now. I'm waiting for the bus. Pity we aren't going the same way (lit. we don't have a common journey).*

## Vocabulary

|                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>autobus</b>         | bus                           |
| <b>blízko</b>          | near, nearby                  |
| <b>cesta</b>           | road, journey                 |
| <b>dcéra</b>           | daughter                      |
| <b>diplomová práca</b> | diploma work, thesis          |
| <b>dosť</b>            | enough, rather                |
| <b>d'aleko</b>         | far, far away                 |
| <b>električka</b>      | tram                          |
| <b>hned'</b>           | at once, immediately          |
| <b>nerád, nerada</b>   | (s/he) doesn't like           |
| <b>niekde</b>          | somewhere                     |
| <b>nový</b>            | new                           |
| <b>pomoc</b>           | help                          |
| <b>poobede</b>         | in the afternoon, after lunch |
| <b>predavačka</b>      | female sales assistant        |
| <b>predávať</b>        | to sell                       |
| <b>roh</b>             | corner                        |
| <b>za rohom</b>        | round the corner              |
| <b>spoločný</b>        | common, shared                |
| <b>teta</b>            | aunt                          |



# 5 Chcem íst' do kina

I want to go to the cinema

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- Express wanting and being able to
- say 'in', 'on', 'about'
- say 'give to' or 'do for'
- distinguish 'on/onto', 'in/into'
- talk about rooms and furniture

## Dialogue 1

*Janko invites Viera out, but she has other ideas*

JANKO: Ahoj, Viera, ako sa máš?

VIERA: Dobre, Janko. Kam ideš?

JANKO: Idem do mesta k bratovi. Varí obed. Nechceš íst so mnou? Práve čakám na autobus. Poobede ideme do parku. Potom chceme íst plávať.

VIERA: Ale ja chcem íst do kina. Dávajú nový americký film, ktorý chcem vidieť. Je vraj skvelý a veľmi napínavý.

JANKO: O čom je ten film?

VIERA: O politike a o prezidentovi. Vystupuje tam môj obľúbený herec a tiež jedna veľmi krásna herečka.

JANKO: Ktorá?

VIERA: Nepamätam si jej meno. Večer idem na koncert. Hrá Slovenská filharmonia. Hrajú Beethovena a Schuberta.

JANKO: *Hello, Viera, how are you?*

VIERA: *Fine, Janko. Where are you going?*

JANKO: *I'm going to town to (my) brother's. He's cooking lunch. Don't you want to come with me? I'm just waiting for the bus. In the afternoon we're going to the park. Then we want to go swimming.*

VIERA: *But I want to go to the cinema. They are showing (lit. giving) a new American film, which I want to see. It is apparently excellent and very exciting.*

JANKO: *What is this film about?*

VIERA: *About politics and also about the president. My favourite actor is performing there and also a (lit. one) very beautiful actress.*

JANKO: *Which (one)?*

VIERA: *I don't remember her name. In the evening we're going to a concert. The Slovak Philharmonic is playing. They are playing Beethoven and Schubert.*

## Vocabulary

|                        |                |                   |                      |
|------------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| <b>o čom</b>           | about what?    | <b>napínavý</b>   | exciting             |
| <b>filharmónia</b>     | Philharmonic   | <b>o</b>          | about                |
| <b>herec</b>           | actor          | <b>obl'úbený</b>  | favourite            |
| <b>herečka</b>         | actress        | <b>pamätať</b>    | to remember          |
| <b>chcieť/chcem</b>    | to want/I want | <b>politika</b>   | politics             |
| <b>Janko</b>           | = Johnny       | <b>prezident</b>  | president            |
| <b>jeden, f. jedna</b> | one            | <b>skvelý</b>     | splendid, excellent  |
| <b>jej</b>             | her            | <b>ten</b>        | that                 |
| <b>kino</b>            | cinema         | <b>večer</b>      | (in the) evening     |
| <b>koncert</b>         | concert        | <b>vraj</b>       | apparently, they say |
| <b>krásny</b>          | beautiful      | <b>vystupovať</b> | to perform           |
| <b>meno</b>            | name           |                   |                      |
| <b>so mnou</b>         | with me        |                   |                      |

## Dialogue 2

*Pani Bottová offers Peter Novák some food. Peter turns out to have special requirements. Note they are on vy terms*

BOTTOVÁ: Čo si prajete na večeru, rybu alebo mäso?

PETER: Prepáčte, nejem ani rybu ani mäso. Som vegetarián. Nemáte vajíčko alebo nejaký syr?

BOTTOVÁ: Istežé máme. Nie je to problém. Čo si dáte na pitie? Kávu alebo čaj?

PETER: Nemáte pivo alebo víno? Ja som totiž aj veľký alkoholik!



- BOTTOVÁ:** No dobre! Dáte si teda omeletu, syr a víno? Červené alebo biele?
- PETER:** Červené. Ďakujem veľmi pekne.
- BOTTOVÁ:** Nech sa páči. Dobrú chut!
- BOTTOVÁ:** *What do you want for supper, fish or meat?*
- PETER:** *Sorry, I don't eat either fish or meat. I'm a vegetarian. Don't you have an egg or some cheese?*
- BOTTOVÁ:** *Certainly we have. It's not a problem. What will you have to drink? Coffee or tea?*
- PETER:** *Don't you have beer or wine? I'm also a great alcoholic you see!*
- BOTTOVÁ:** *Well fine! Will you have an omelette, cheese and wine then? Red or white?*
- PETER:** *Red. Thank you very much.*
- BOTTOVÁ:** *You're welcome. Enjoy your meal! (lit. Good appetite!)*

## Vocabulary

|                    |   |                       |                            |
|--------------------|---|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>alkoholik</b>   | an alcoholic  | <b>omeleta</b>        | omelette                   |
| <b>ani ... ani</b> | neither ... nor                                     | <b>na pitie</b>       | for drink/to drink         |
| <b>čaj</b>         | tea   | <b>pivo</b>           | beer                       |
| <b>čo si dáte?</b> | what will you have?<br><i>(lit. give yourself?)</i> | <b>čo si prajete?</b> | what do you want/<br>wish? |
| <b>dobrú chut!</b> | enjoy your meal!<br><i>(lit. good appetite!)</i>    | <b>problém</b>        | problem                    |
| <b>isteže</b>      | certainly   | <b>ryba</b>           | fish                       |
| <b>mäso</b>        | meat  | <b>syr</b>            | cheese                     |
| <b>no dobre!</b>   | well, fine!   | <b>vajíčko</b>        | egg                        |
|                    |   | <b>vegetarián</b>     | a vegetarian               |

## Language points

### Wanting

**Chcieť** ‘to want’ is another e-type verb:

|              |               |               |           |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| <b>chcem</b> | I want        | <b>chceme</b> | we want   |
| <b>chceš</b> | you want      | <b>chcete</b> | you want  |
| <b>chce</b>  | he, she wants | <b>chcú</b>   | they want |

It is followed by verb infinitives or nouns:

- |                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>Ak chceš, môžeš čítať.</b>      | If you want, you can read.        |
| <b>Chceme ísť do kina.</b>         | We want to go to the cinema.      |
| <b>Nechcú ísť domov.</b>           | They don't want to go home.       |
| <b>Nechcem mlieko, chcem kávu.</b> | I don't want milk, I want coffee. |
| <b>Čo chcete?</b>                  | What do you want?                 |
| <b>Chcem nový bicykel.</b>         | I want a new bike.                |

Often it is more polite to use **želat si** or **priat si/prajem si** ‘to wish’:

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>Čo si prajete na obed?</b> | What would you like for lunch?   |
| <b>Čo si želáte na pitie?</b> | What would you like for a drink? |

### Saying ‘in’, ‘on’, ‘about’, etc.

The locative case (basic ending **-e**) is used after several prepositions, mostly for location, but also for time or topic:

|            |                       |
|------------|-----------------------|
| <b>v</b>   | in                    |
| <b>na</b>  | on                    |
| <b>pri</b> | beside/near           |
| <b>po</b>  | along <i>or</i> after |
| <b>o</b>   | about (a topic)       |

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <b>Igor býva v Prahe.</b>  | Igor lives in Prague.                   |
| <b>Kniha je na stole.</b>  | The book is on the table.               |
| <b>Anna sedí pri okne.</b> | Anna is sitting beside/near the window. |
| <b>Po obede spí.</b>       | After lunch s/he sleeps.                |
| <b>Hovoríme o matke.</b>   | We are talking about mother.            |

**V** becomes **vo** before **v/f**, e.g. **vo vode** ‘in the water’.

## 'To/towards'

**K**, meaning ‘motion to, towards’ (often to a person’s house) is followed by the dative. Basic endings are feminine **-e** (= locative), masculine/neuter **-u**:

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>Idé k Viere.</b> | S/he is going towards Viera/to Viera’s. |
| <b>Idé k stolu.</b> | He goes to/towards the table.           |

**K** becomes **ku** (pronounced /gu/) before **k/g**: **ku Katke** ‘to/towards Katka’.

## Male dative/locative **-ovi**

Note that nouns for males have a special male dative ending **-ovi**.

- |                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Ideme k Petrovi.</b> | We are going to Peter’s.        |
| <b>Ideme k bratovi.</b> | We are going to (my) brother’s. |

This is also the locative:

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Hovoríme o Petrovi.</b> | We’re talking about Peter. |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|

## Giving to, doing for

On its own the dative case means ‘to/for’, e.g. ‘giving to’ or ‘doing for’:

- |                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Dávam Viere knihu.</b>  | I’m giving a book to Viera. |
| <b>Varím Igorovi obed.</b> | I’m cooking lunch for Igor. |

Note that in English instead of saying ‘to Viera’ and ‘for Igor’ you can say ‘I give Viera the book’ and ‘I cook Igor lunch.’

Some Slovak verbs are followed by a dative even though ‘to/for’ is never used in English, e.g. **pomáhat** ‘to help’:

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Pomáhamo otcovi.</b> | We’re helping father. |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|

## Exercise 1

**Čo si dáte?** What will you have? Complete the following as suggested:

- 1 Máte . . . ? (*cheese, tea, coffee*)
- 2 Nemáte . . . ? (*beer, wine, an egg, fish*)
- 3 Prosím si . . . (*an omelette, white wine*)

### **Exercise 2**

Correct the following statements about Dialogues 1 and 2:

- 1 Janko ide do záhrady.
- 2 Janko ide k sestre.
- 3 Viera nechce ísť do kina.
- 4 Film je o koncerte a o Beethovenovi.
- 5 Peter chce mäso.
- 6 Peter nechce červené víno.

### **Exercise 3**

Complete as indicated and translate into English:

- 1 Varím \_\_\_\_ obed. (*mother*)
- 2 Pomáham \_\_\_\_\_. (*Pavol*)
- 3 Ideme k \_\_\_\_\_ na večeru. (*Jozef*)
- 4 Hovoríme o \_\_\_\_\_. (*politics*)
- 5 Jana hovorí o \_\_\_\_\_. (*Juraj*)

## **Dialogue 3**

*Zora Bednárová asks Peter Novák about the Rybár couple*

**ZORA:** Kde je pán Rybár?

**PETER:** Je v parku.

**ZORA:** Poznáte ho dobre?

**PETER:** Áno, pracuje v múzeu. Vidím ho dosť často v meste. Niekedy sa stretávame v hoteli Carlton a obedujeme spolu. Alebo sedíme na námestí a hovoríme o politike, o literatúre, o umení. Je to veľmi mûdry, zaujímavý človek.

**ZORA:** A pani Rybárová čo robí?

**PETER:** Pani Rybárová je doma. Nemôže pracovať, lebo je chorá. Je veľmi inteligentná a milá. Nemôže chodiť, ale hrá veľmi pekne na klavíri. Ak chcete, môžeme tam niekedy ísť na návštevu.

**ZORA:** Dnes nemôžem, ale niekedy áno, veľmi rada.

**PETER:** Aj vy viete hrať na klavíri?

**ZORA:** Nie, ale hrám na gitare a rada spievam.

**PETER:** Máte rada vážnu hudbu?

**ZORA:** Nie. Mám radšej ľudovú a rockovú hudbu.

ZORA: *Where is Mr Rybár?*

PETER: *He's in the park.*

ZORA: *Do you know him well?*

PETER: *Yes, he works in the museum. I see him quite often in town. Sometimes we meet in the Carlton Hotel, and we lunch together. Or we sit on the square and we talk about politics, about literature, about art. He is (lit. It is) a very wise, interesting person.*

ZORA: *And Mrs Rybárová, what is she doing?*

PETER: *Mrs Rybárová is at home. She can't work, because she is ill. She is very intelligent and sweet/nice. She can't walk, but she plays the piano (lit. on the piano) very nicely. If you want, we can go there sometime on a visit.*

ZORA: *I can't today, but sometime yes, very gladly.*

PETER: *Do you also know how to play the piano?*

ZORA: *No, but I play the guitar and I like singing.*

PETER: *Do you like classical (lit. serious) music?*

ZORA: *No. I prefer (lit. like better) folk and rock music.*

## Vocabulary

|                     |                  |                     |                         |
|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>ak</b>           | if               | <b>múdry</b>        | wise                    |
| <b>často</b>        | often            | <b>múzeum</b>       | museum                  |
| <b>človek</b>       | person           | <b>námestie</b>     | square                  |
| <b>dnes</b>         | today            | <b>obedovať</b>     | to have lunch           |
| <b>gitara</b>       | guitar           | <b>mám radšej</b>   | I like better, I prefer |
| <b>hotel</b>        | hotel            | <b>rockový</b>      | rock (music)            |
| <b>hudba</b>        | music            |                     | <i>adj.</i>             |
| <b>chodíť</b>       | to walk          | <b>spievať</b>      | to sing                 |
| <b>inteligentný</b> | intelligent      | <b>spolu</b>        | together                |
| <b>klavír</b>       | piano            | <b>stretávať sa</b> | to meet                 |
| <b>lebo</b>         | because          | <b>vážny</b>        | serious                 |
| <b>ľudový</b>       | folk <i>adj.</i> | <b>zaujímavý</b>    | interesting             |
| <b>môcť/môžem</b>   | to be able/I can |                     |                         |

## Language points

### Shared dative/locative -u

After consonants **k**, **h**, **ch** and **g** (habitually called *velars*) masculine/neuter nouns extend the dative ending **-u** to the locative also:

|                            |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>park – v parku</b>      | in the park        |
| <b>trh – na trhu</b>       | ‘on’/at the market |
| <b>Nemecko – v Nemecku</b> | in Germany         |
| <b>Rusko – v Rusku</b>     | in Russia          |

Neuters ending in **-io**, **-eum/-ium** do the same: **rádio – v rádiu** ‘in/on the radio’, **múzeum – v múzeu** ‘in the museum’. (Note how the **-um** is dropped!)

### Soft locative -i

Some nouns have a final ‘soft’ consonant, i.e. all those with a soft sign (**č**, **ň**, **š**, **ž**, **d'**, **t'**, **l'**), plus **c**, **dz**, **j**. Often nouns in **-r**, **-l** also count as soft.

These so-called soft nouns have a soft locative ending in **-i** (except for male animate nouns which, as usual, have the ending **-ovi**, e.g. **Ondrej – o Ondrejovi** ‘about Ondrej’):

|                             |                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>gauč – na gauči</b>      | on the couch    |
| <b>koberec – na koberci</b> | on the carpet   |
| <b>kufor – v kufri</b>      | in the suitcase |
| <b>bicykel – na bicykli</b> | on a bicycle    |

Neuters ending in **-e** also count as soft: **pole – v poli** ‘in the field’.

Neuters ending **-ie** have a long **-í**: **námestie – na námestí** ‘on the square’.

### ‘On’ and ‘onto’, ‘in’ and ‘into’

Sometimes the case taken by a preposition changes its precise meaning. The most obvious example is **na** ‘on’ or ‘onto’.

When **na** means ‘on’ it takes the locative, but when it means ‘onto’ (with motion towards) it takes the accusative:

|                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>Kniha leží na stole.</b> | The book is lying on the table.     |
| <b>Dávam knihu na stôl.</b> | I give/put the book onto the table. |

However, for ‘in’ and ‘into’ you use different words. **V + locative** means ‘in’, while **do + genitive** means ‘into’:

**Marta je v Prešove.** Marta is in Prešov.

**Marta ide do Prešova.** Marta goes to/into Prešov.

Notice how with some places you say **na** ‘on, onto’:

**Slovensko – Sme na Slovensku.**

We are in (*lit. on*) Slovakia.

**Ideme na Slovensko.**

We are going to (*lit. onto*) Slovakia.

**Morava – Sú na Morave.**

They are in (*lit. on*) Moravia.

**Idú na Moravu.**

They are going to (*lit. onto*) Moravia.

**pošta – Sú na pošte.** They’re at the post office.

**Idú na poštu.** They’re going to the post office.

## Can

**Môcť** meaning ‘to be able’, ‘can’ is an **e-type verb**:

|              |             |               |          |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|----------|
| <b>môžem</b> | I can       | <b>môžeme</b> | we can   |
| <b>môžeš</b> | you can     | <b>môžete</b> | you can  |
| <b>môže</b>  | he, she can | <b>môžu</b>   | they can |

(-u: *rhythmic law*)

It is followed by infinitives:

**Môžeš ísiť.** You can go.

**Nemôžem pracovať.** I can’t work. I’m not able to work.

**Môžeme čakať.** We can wait.

Distinguish ‘physical ability’ from ‘know how’:

**Vieš čítať.** You can read (i.e. know how to).

**Môžeš čítať.** You can read (i.e. have the possibility).

## Rooms and furniture

If you're going to make real progress with Slovak I'm afraid eventually you're going to have to pick up rather a lot of common domestic vocabulary. Hard work!

You may be living in a **dom** 'house', **byt** 'flat' in a **panelák** 'prefabricated block of flats', a **hotel** 'hotel', or maybe **internát** 'hall of residence'. We hope it has **strecha** 'roof', **dvere** 'door(s)', and at least one **okno** or **oblok** 'window', and maybe **ústredné kúrenie** 'central heating'.

Common **izby** 'rooms' are: **kuchyňa** 'kitchen', **obývačka** 'living-room', **jedáleň** 'dining-room', **spálňa** 'bedroom', **kúpeľňa** 'bathroom', and **predsiem** 'hallway'. To which we may add **schody** 'stairs', and **garáž** 'garage'.

In the **kuchyňa** you might like to have a **sporák** 'cooker', **chladnička** 'fridge', and **drez** 'sink', with **voda** 'water' from the **kohútik** 'tap', and there might be a **práčka** 'washing machine' for washing your **šaty** 'clothes'.

In the **kúpeľňa** you might hope for an **umývadlo** 'washbasin', **vaňa** 'bath' and/or **sprcha** 'shower', and **záchod** 'toilet/lavatory' or **WC** /vétsé/. Over the **umývadlo** you might like a **zrkadlo** 'mirror'.

In your **obývačka**, or **jedáleň** if you have one, you might expect a **stôl** 'table', more than one **stolička** 'chair', a **kreslo** 'armchair', and a **gauč** 'couch' or 'bed-settee'. On the **podlaha** (or **dlážka**) 'floor' it could be nice to have a **koberec** 'carpet', and maybe a **pekný obraz** 'pretty picture' on the **stena** 'wall' (**múr** is a structural wall). Also a **telefón** 'telephone', **rádio** 'radio' and **televízor** 'TV'.

Very tired, **veľmi unavený**, or **unavená**, you lie in the **spálňa** on your **postel** 'bed', gazing up at the **strop** 'ceiling', with the **kniha** 'book' under the **lámpa** 'lamp' on your **nočný stolík** 'night/bedside table'. Stick it in the **knižnica** 'bookcase', or hide it in the **skriňa** 'cupboard', 'closet', and give up **slovenčina** for good. **Dobrú noc!** Good night!

### **Exercise 4**

Write or say the following in Slovak:

- 1 I don't want tea, I want coffee.
- 2 Evička doesn't want fish.
- 3 We want to go to the cinema.
- 4 What would you like to drink?
- 5 The coffee is on the table.

- 6 Father is talking about Igor.
- 7 Sometimes we help mother.
- 8 We are going to Katarína's.
- 9 Do you remember her name?

### **Exercise 5**

Answer these questions about Dialogue 3:

- 1 Kde je pán Rybár?
- 2 Kde pracuje?
- 3 O čom hovoria Peter a pán Rybár?
- 4 Čo robí pani Rybárová?
- 5 Vie Zora hrať na klavíri?

### **Exercise 6**

Complete as indicated and translate into English:

- 1 Zora hrá na \_\_\_\_\_. (*the guitar*)
- 2 Bývam v \_\_\_\_\_. (*a hotel*)
- 3 Eva sedí na \_\_\_\_\_. (*the couch*)
- 4 Múzeum je na \_\_\_\_\_. (*the square*)
- 5 Pavol dáva šálku na \_\_\_\_\_ (*the carpet*)
- 6 Šálka je na \_\_\_\_\_ (*the carpet*)
- 7 Ak chceš, \_\_\_\_\_ plávať. (*you can*)
- 8 Viem, že Viera \_\_\_\_\_ písala. (*can*)
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ ísť na koncert. (*we can't*)
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ ísť do kina. (*we want*)

## **Dialogue 4**



*Evička is talking to her brother Janko*

**EVIČKA:** Kde je moja kniha?

**JANKO:** Na stole, nevidíš ju? Mama keď vidí niečo ležať na podlahe, vždy to dáva na stôl. Ved' ju poznáš. Strašne rada upratuje.

**EVIČKA:** Ja tak rada čítam na podlahe alebo na koberci.

**JANKO:** A ja radšej čítam na gauči alebo v kresle. Keď potom hodím knihu alebo časopis na gauč alebo do kresla, tak mi ich tam mama necháva!

EVIČKA: Čo robí otec?

JANKO: Je v obývačke. Pozerá televíziu.

EVIČKA: A mama?

JANKO: Mama je v robote. To znamená, že dnes varíme my.

EVIČKA: *Where is my book?*

JANKO: *On the table, don't you see it? Mother, when she sees something lying (lit. to lie) on the floor, she always puts it on the table. I mean, you know her. She just (lit. terribly) loves tidying up.*

EVIČKA: *I so much like reading on the floor or on the carpet.*

JANKO: *And I prefer reading on the settee or in the armchair. When I then throw a book or magazine on the settee or into the armchair, mum leaves them for me there!*

EVIČKA: *What's father doing?*

JANKO: *He's in the living room. He's watching television.*

EVIČKA: *And mum?*

JANKO: *Mum's at work. That means that today we are cooking.*

## Vocabulary

|                        |               |                 |                  |
|------------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|
| <b>časopis</b>         | magazine      | <b>mi</b>       | to/for me        |
| <b>gauč</b>            | settee, couch | <b>nechávať</b> | to let, to leave |
| <b>ho</b>              | him/it        | <b>obývačka</b> | living room      |
| <b>hodiť</b>           | to throw      | <b>otec</b>     | father           |
| <b>ich</b>             | them          | <b>podlaha</b>  | floor            |
| <b>ju</b>              | her/it        | <b>stôl</b>     | table            |
| <b>kniha</b>           | book          | <b>strašne</b>  | terribly         |
| <b>koberec</b>         | carpet        | <b>vedť</b>     | after all        |
| <b>kreslo</b>          | armchair      | <b>vždy</b>     | always           |
| <b>ležať/ležím (!)</b> | to lie        | <b>znamenať</b> | to mean          |
| <b>mama</b>            | mum           |                 |                  |

# 6 To je krásna dedina!

That's a lovely village!

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- express pleasing and liking
- say 'by', 'with' and 'without'
- say 'in front of', 'behind', etc.
- form the past tense of a verb
- talk about travel
- talk about seasons and the weather

## Dialogue 1

Mária asks Jozef Bednár about his country cottage

- MÁRIA: To je veľmi pekná fotografia. Ste naozaj skvelý fotograf.  
To je ale krásna dedina! Vy tam bývate?
- JOZEF: Hej, máme tam chalupu.
- MÁRIA: To je vynikajúce, to sa mi páči, bývať na vidieku.
- JOZEF: Chodíme tam na víkend a cez leto tam bývame.
- MÁRIA: Je váš domček na fotografii?
- JOZEF: Tuná pod kopcom, medzi školou a námestím, pred kostolom. Vidíte?
- MÁRIA: Je to ďaleko?
- JOZEF: Nie. Tá dedina nie je ďaleko od Bratislavы. Chodíme tam autom alebo vlakom. Cesta vlakom trvá len hodinu a pol.

## Vocabulary

|                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| <b>to je ale</b>   | that's truly a ...  |
| <b>dedina</b>      | village             |
| <b>dom, domček</b> | house, little house |

|                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| <b>fotograf</b>   | photographer     |
| <b>fotografia</b> | photograph       |
| <b>hej</b>        | yes (colloquial) |

|                |                        |                         |                                 |
|----------------|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>hodina</b>  | hour                   | <b>ten, f. tá</b>       | that                            |
| <b>chalupa</b> | cottage                | <b>trvať</b>            | to last                         |
| <b>kopec</b>   | hill                   | <b>tuná</b>             | over here                       |
| <b>kostol</b>  | church                 | <b>vás</b>              | your                            |
| <b>leto</b>    | summer                 | <b>vidiek</b>           | the country                     |
| <b>medzi</b>   | between, among         | <b>víkend</b>           | weekend                         |
| <b>naozaj</b>  | really                 | <b>vlak</b>             | train                           |
| <b>pod</b>     | under, beneath         | <b>to je vynikajúce</b> | that's                          |
| <b>pol</b>     | half                   |                         | marvellous                      |
| <b>pred</b>    | in front of,<br>before | <b>to sa mi páči</b>    | that pleases me,<br>I like that |
| <b>škola</b>   | school                 |                         |                                 |

## Dialogue 2

Pani Miková offers pán Kráľ something to drink

MIKOVÁ: Čo si dáte na pitie, pán Kráľ? Kávu alebo čaj?

KRÁL: Prosím si kávu.

MIKOVÁ: S mliekom alebo bez mlieka?

KRÁL: S mliekom.

MIKOVÁ: Sladíte?

KRÁL: Nie. Kávu pijem bez cukru a s mliekom. No čaj pijem s cukrom a bez mlieka.

MIKOVÁ: A ja naopak kávu sladím a čaj pijem bez cukru!

## Vocabulary

|                    |                 |                  |                  |
|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>bez</b>         | without         | <b>pít/pijem</b> | to drink/I drink |
| <b>cukor, -kru</b> | sugar           | <b>s</b>         | with             |
| <b>Kráľ'</b>       | = King, surname | <b>sladiť</b>    | to sweeten, take |
| <b>naopak</b>      | on the contrary |                  | sugar            |
| <b>no</b>          | (mild) but      |                  |                  |

## Dialogue 3

Pani Miková asks Peter Jones from London about his travel plans

MIKOVÁ: Ste tu na Slovensku sám alebo cestujete s kamarátom?

PETER: Cestujem s bratom a so sestrou.

- MIKOVÁ: Kde sú teraz?
- PETER: Cestujú po Slovensku. Včera boli v Žiline a dnes idú do Prešova.
- MIKOVÁ: Poznáte aj Českú republiku a Maďarsko?
- PETER: Nie. Zatiaľ sme boli len v Rakúsku, v Nemecku a teraz na Slovensku.
- MIKOVÁ: Ako sa vám tu páči?
- PETER: Veľmi sa mi tu páči.

## Vocabulary

|          |           |           |                   |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-------------------|
| boli     | they were | Rakúsko   | Austria           |
| sme boli | we were   | republika | republic          |
| cestovať | to travel | sám       | by oneself, alone |
| Maďarsko | Hungary   | Slovensko | Slovakia          |
| Nemecko  | Germany   | včera     | yesterday         |
| páčiť sa | to please | zatial'   | so far, meanwhile |
| Prešov   | Prešov    | Žilina    | Žilina            |

**Ako sa vám tu páči?**

how do you like it here? (*lit. how to you here does it please?*)

**Veľmi sa mi tu páči.**

I like it here very much (*lit. very much to me here it pleases*)

## Language points

### Pleasing and liking

By using **páčiť sa** ‘to please/be pleasing’ you can express a more immediate response of liking or not liking than the more fixed, habitual quality of **mať rád** ‘to like/love’:

**Bratislava sa mi (ne)páči.**

Bratislava pleases/doesn’t please me.

**Mám/nemám Bratislavu rád/rada.**

I like/don’t like Bratislava.

Remember the common phrase we learned earlier (*lit. ‘let it please’*):

**Nech sa páči.** Please (help yourself, come in). You’re welcome.

## The instrumental

On its own the instrumental case denotes the means or instrument by or with which something is done. Its usual endings are feminine **-ou**, masculine/neuter **-om**:

|   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| <b>vlak, auto:</b> Cestujeme vlakom,      | We travel by train, by car. |
| <b>autom.</b>                             |                             |
| <b>nôž:</b> Krájame chlieb nožom.         | We cut bread with a knife.  |
| <b>pero :</b> Pišeme perom.               | We write with a pen.        |
| <b>ceruzka :</b> Pišeme ceruzkou.         | We write with a pencil.     |
| <b>električka:</b> Cestujeme električkou. | We travel by tram.          |

## 'With' and 'without'

The preposition **s** 'with' also takes the instrumental, but this 'with' refers to accompanying something or someone:

|                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>brat :</b> Cestujem s bratom.  | I'm travelling with (my) brother. |
| <b>matka :</b> Cestujem s matkou. | I'm travelling with (my) mother.  |

(Brother/sister is obviously not the means of travel!)

**S** 'with' is also the opposite of **bez** 'without' (which takes the genitive):

|  |
|--|
| <b>mlieko:</b> káva s mliekom – bez mlieka |
| coffee with milk – without milk            |

|  |
|--|
| <b>cukor:</b> čaj s cukrom – bez cukru |
| tea with sugar – without sugar         |

**S** becomes **so** (pronounced /zo/) before **s/z, š/ž:** **so sestrou** 'with sister'.

## 'Behind', 'in front', etc.

One pair of prepositions with the instrumental denotes location behind or in front of an object:

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>za</b>              | behind (or beyond)      |
| <b>pred</b>            | in front of (or before) |
| <b>vlak:</b> za vlakom | behind the train        |
| <b>dom:</b> pred domom | in front of the house   |

Another pair denotes location below or above:

|            |       |
|------------|-------|
| <b>pod</b> | below |
| <b>nad</b> | above |

|                                  |                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>strom:</b> <b>pod stromom</b> | below the tree  |
| <b>rieka:</b> <b>nad riekou</b>  | above the river |

Another related preposition is **medzi** ‘between’ (or ‘among’):

|   |
|---|
| <b>auto a vlak:</b> <b>medzi autom a vlakom</b> |
| between the car and the train                   |

|  |
|--|
| <b>Jana a Pavla:</b> <b>medzi Janou a Pavlom</b> |
| between Jana and Pavol                           |

## Nouns in -ie

Neuter nouns ending in **-ie** have an instrumental ending **-ím**:

|                                      |                    |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>námestie:</b> <b>pod námestím</b> | beneath the square |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|

## The seasons

Season is **ročné obdobie** (*lit.* ‘year period’) or **sezóna** as a time for some activity, e.g. **divadelná sezóna** ‘theatrical season’.

The four seasons are:

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>zima, leto; jar, jesień</b> | winter, summer; spring, autumn |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|

Notice how you say ‘in . . .’

|                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>v zime, v lete</b>         | in winter, in spring |
| <b>BUT: na jar, na jesień</b> | in spring, in autumn |

**Leto** is neuter, the rest are feminine. With **od** ‘from’ and **do** ‘to’, ‘till’ you get:

|   |
|---|
| <b>od jari (!) do jesene, od zimy do leta</b> |
| from spring to autumn, from winter to summer  |

Note also the adjectives:

|                    |               |                     |              |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------------|--------------|
| <b>zimný kabát</b> | a winter coat | <b>letný deň</b>    | a summer day |
| <b>jarný dážď</b>  | spring rain   | <b>jesenná hmla</b> | autumn mist  |

## Buying tickets

For travel **vlakom** ‘by train’ or **autobusom** ‘by bus’ you’ll need a **lístok** ‘ticket’, stating second or first class, **druhá alebo prvá trieda**, and often a seat reservation, **miestenka**.

You could get your **lístok** like this:

|  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <b>Prosím si (spiatočný/<br/>jednosmerný) lístok ...</b> | I’d like a (return/one-way) ticket |
| <b>druhej/prvej triedy ...</b>                           | ... (of) second/first class ...    |
| <b>s miestenkou ...</b>                                  | with a seat reservation            |
| <b>do Bratislavu, do Prešova.</b>                        | to Bratislava, to Prešov.          |
| <b>Musím prestupovať?</b>                                | Do I have to change (trains)?      |

At the **železničná/autobusová stanica** ‘train/bus station’ look out for the **cestovný poriadok** ‘timetable’ or **PRÍCHODY** ‘arrivals’, **ODCHODY** ‘departures’, and of course try to find the right **nástupište** ‘platform’. **Úschovňa** is ‘left-luggage office’, **batožina** ‘luggage’. **Konečná stanica/zastávka** is ‘terminus/last stop’.

For travelling **lietadlom** ‘by plane’, **letenka** is ‘air ticket’, **letisko** ‘airport’. To go **taxíkom** ‘by taxi’: **Na letisko prosím!** ‘To the airport please!’

### Exercise 1

Translate these questions and reply as suggested:

- 1 Chodíte do roboty autom? – (*No, I go by bus.*)
- 2 Kde je váš byt? – (*Our flat is on the square behind the church.*)
- 3 Kde je kostol? – (*The church is in front of the school.*)
- 4 A kde je škola? – (*The school is between the cinema and the river.*)
- 5 Ako chodíte do Prahy? – (*We go to Prague by train.*)
- 6 Cestujete sám/sama? – (*No, I’m travelling with my father and mother.*)
- 7 Ako sa vám tu páči? – (*I like it very much here.*)
- 8 Čo si želáte? – (*Tea with milk, please, and with sugar.*)
- 9 Prosím? – (*A return ticket with a seat reservation to Prešov please.*)

### Exercise 2

Correct these statements about Dialogues 1 to 3:

- 1 Chalupa je medzi kostolom a riekom.
- 2 Dedina nie je daleko od Prešova.
- 3 Pán Kráľ piye kávu s cukrom a bez mlieka.
- 4 Peter cestuje s kamarátkou.
- 5 Brat a sestra boli včera v Poprade a dnes idú do Trnavy.

## Dialogue 4



*Zuzana has been looking for Igor*

**ZUZANA:** Kde ste boli včera poobede? Hľadala som vás, ale nikto neboli doma. Čo ste robili?

**IGOR:** Išli sme všetci do mesta. Ja som sedel v bufete a učil som sa na skúšku. Pavol išiel do kina. Jana šla s Vierou na koncert. Otec so strýcom boli v krčme a mama mala stretnutie s kamarátkou zo školy. Čakala si na nás dlho?

**ZUZANA:** *Where were you yesterday afternoon? I looked for you, but no one was at home. What were you doing?*

**IGOR:** *We all went to town. I sat in the snack bar and studied for an exam. Pavol went to the cinema. Jana went with Viera to a concert. Father and (lit. with) uncle were in the pub and mum had a meeting with a friend from school. Did you wait for us long?*

## Vocabulary

|                          |                   |                       |                                |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>bol, pl. boli</b>     | was, were         | <b>skúška</b>         | exam                           |
| <b>bufet</b>             | snack bar, buffet | <b>na skúšku</b>      | for an exam                    |
| <b>čakal(a)</b>          | waited            | <b>som/si</b>         | = I/you (+ past form of verb)  |
| <b>hľadal(a)</b>         | looked for        | <b>sme/ste</b>        | = we/you (+ past form of verb) |
| <b>išiel, išla, išli</b> | went              | <b>stretnutie</b>     | meeting                        |
| <b>kamarátka</b>         | female friend     | <b>strýc</b>          | uncle                          |
| <b>krčma</b>             | pub, bar, tavern  | <b>šiel, šla, šli</b> | went                           |
| <b>mal, mala</b>         | had               | <b>učil(a) sa</b>     | studied                        |
| <b>nás</b>               | us (acc.)         | <b>vás</b>            | you (accusative)               |
| <b>nikto neboli</b>      | nobody was        | <b>všetci</b>         | all, everyone                  |
| <b>robil, robili</b>     | was, were doing   |                       |                                |
| <b>sedel(a)</b>          | sat               |                       |                                |

## Dialogue 5



*But Zuzana didn't wait very long*

ZUZANA: Nie, len krátko. Čakala som pred domom chvíľu, ale keď nikto neprišiel, odišla som domov. Pozerala som televíziu a potom som hrala so sestrou šach.

IGOR: A ako sa máš? Dobre?

ZUZANA: Dnes som trochu unavená, lebo som včera išla neskoro spať a cez týždeň musím zavčasu vstávať.

ZUZANA: *No, only a short time. I waited in front of the house for a while, but when nobody came, I went off home. I watched television and then I played chess with my sister.*

IGOR: *And how are you? Well?*

ZUZANA: *Today I'm a little tired, because yesterday I went to sleep late and through the week I have to get up early.*

## Vocabulary

|                        |             |                    |                              |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>čakal(a)</b>        | waited      | <b>som</b>         | = I (+ past form<br>of verb) |
| <b>dom</b>             | house       | <b>šach, šachy</b> | chess                        |
| <b>hral(a)</b>         | played      | <b>týždeň</b>      | week                         |
| <b>išiel, išla</b>     | went        | <b>unavený</b>     | tired                        |
| <b>neskoro</b>         | late        | <b>vstávať</b>     | to get up                    |
| <b>nikto neprišiel</b> | nobody came | <b>zavčasu</b>     | early                        |
| <b>odíšiel, odíšla</b> | went away   |                    |                              |
| <b>pozeral(a)</b>      | watched     |                    |                              |

## The past tense

Slovak has only one basic way of forming the past tense of a verb. To obtain the 'he' past tense form of a verb, you replace the **-t** of the infinitive by **-l**:

|                  |             |                 |                                       |
|------------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>čakat'</b>    | to wait     | <b>čakal</b>    | he waited, he was waiting, etc.       |
| <b>robit'</b>    | to do, work | <b>robil</b>    | he did, worked, was doing,<br>working |
| <b>študovať'</b> | to study    | <b>študoval</b> | he studied, was studying, etc.        |

This **-I** form agrees with its subject in gender as well as number. For ‘she waited’ you add **-a**, for ‘it waited’ you add **-o**, and for ‘they waited’ you add **-i**:

|                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (Igor, autobus) čakal.     | (Igor, the bus) he waited.    |
| (Jana, električka) čakala. | (Jana, the tram) she waited.  |
| (Auto) čakalo.             | (The car) it waited.          |
| (Pavol a Jana) čakali.     | (Pavol and Jana) they waited. |

When the infinitive is **-ieť** the past form shortens the vowel to **-e-**:

|                |        |                      |                         |
|----------------|--------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>sediet'</b> | to sit | <b>sedel, sedela</b> | he, she sat/was sitting |
|----------------|--------|----------------------|-------------------------|

**Som, si** and **sme, ste** are added for ‘I’, ‘you’ and ‘we’:

|               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| Čakal(a) som. | I waited.                            |
| Čakal(a) si.  | You ( <i>familiar sg</i> ) waited.   |
| Čakali sme.   | We waited.                           |
| Čakali ste.   | You ( <i>pl./formal sg</i> ) waited. |

## Word order

When **som/si** and **sme/ste** are used in past forms they normally come in the second possible position in a sentence. So, if the subject pronoun is added for emphasis, you say:

|                         |           |
|-------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Ja som čakal(a).</b> | I waited. |
|-------------------------|-----------|

If there is a question word or phrase:

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Ako dlho ste tam čakali?</b> | How long did you wait there? |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|

If the reflexive pronoun **sa/si** ‘self’ is also used, it comes after **som/si** and **sme/ste**:

|                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>My sme sa učili.</b> | We studied/were studying. |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|

## ‘Went’

Only a few verbs have any irregularities in the past. The most glaringly irregular is **(i)šiel** ‘went’, the past of **íst** ‘to go’:

|                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Pavol išiel domov.</b> | Pavol went/has gone home. |
| <b>Jana (i)šla domov.</b> | Jana went/has gone home.  |
| <b>(I)šli domov.</b>      | They went home.           |

'Didn't go' is **nešiel**:

**Nešli domov.**

They didn't go home.

## 'Was' and 'had'

The past of **byť** 'to be' is **bol**, etc.

**Bol/bola doma.**

She/he was at home.

**Neboli doma.**

They weren't at home.

**Kde boli?**

Where were they?

The past of **mať** 'to have' is **mal**, etc.

**Mal/mala sestru.**

He/she had a sister.

**Mali auto.**

They had a car.

**Nemali čas.**

They didn't have time.

## The weather

Statements about the weather, **počasie**, often begin **je/bolo** ... 'It is/it was ...':

**Je pekne. Je krásne.**

It's lovely. It's beautiful.

**Je ošklivo. Je pluhavo.**

It's horrible.

**Je teplo, horúco.**

It's warm, hot.

**Bolo chladno. Bolo zima.**

It was cool. It was cold.

**Vonku je tma.**

Outside it's dark.

**Bolo svetlo.**

It was light.

**Dnes bolo slnečno.**

Today it was sunny.

**Je oblačno, zatiahnuto.**

It's cloudy, overcast.

**Je hmla. Je hmlisto.**

There's a mist. It's misty/foggy.

**Je veterno.**

It's windy.

**Je sucho. Je mokro.**

It's dry. It's damp.

**Bola búrka.**

There was a thunderstorm.

Other expressions use various verbs:

**Prší.**

It's raining.

**Sneží.**

It's snowing.

**Mrzne.**

It's freezing.

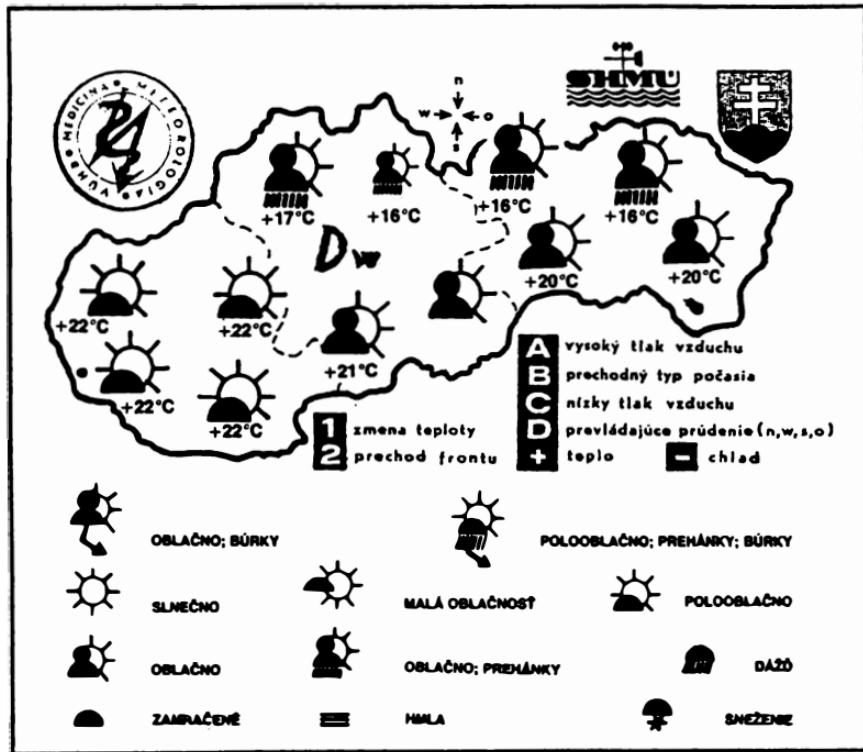
**Slnko svieti.**

The sun is shining.

**Vietor fúka.**

A wind is blowing.

Note also: **dážd** 'rain', **mráz** 'frost', **sneh** 'snow', **predpoved** **počasia** 'weather forecast' (**na dnes** 'for today', **na zajtra** 'for tomorrow').



## PREDPOVEĎ POČASIA

To some phrases above with **Je ...** you can add **mi** 'to me', etc. This produces phrases like:

**Je mi pekne/krásne.**

I feel fine/great (*lit. It is to me fine/great*).

**Je ti (vám) teplo/zima?**

Do you feel warm/cold?

### Exercise 3

Put these sentences into the past tense, and translate into English:

- 1 Hľadám sestru.
- 2 V lete neštuduješ.
- 3 Čo robíte na jar?
- 4 Pavol ide do kina.
- 5 Otec je v krčme.
- 6 Pozerám televíziu.

- 7 V zime hrajú šach.
- 8 Študujem medicínu.
- 9 Matka nemá byt.
- 10 Na jeseň cestujeme.

### **Exercise 4**

Translate these sentences, then put them into the present:

- 1 Pil(a) som kávu.
- 2 Eva čakala na vlak.
- 3 Pavol neboli doma.
- 4 Sestra bola unavená.
- 5 Škola bola na námestí.
- 6 Juraj sa učil.
- 7 Išli spáť.
- 8 Otec nemal sestru.

### **Exercise 5**

Complete to make sense, using forms of **rieka**, **škola**, **vlak**, **dom**, **sestra**, **otec**, **námestie**. Now put the sentences into the past and translate them into English:

Náš \_\_\_\_\_ je na \_\_\_\_\_ medzi \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Môj \_\_\_\_\_ tam chodí autom, ale \_\_\_\_\_ chodí niekedy aj \_\_\_\_\_.

### **Exercise 6**

Talk about the weather, saying in Slovak:

- 1 It's raining. I feel cold.
- 2 It's nice. The sun's shining.
- 3 It's cold. It's snowing.
- 4 It's cloudy, but it's hot.
- 5 It's windy, but I feel warm.
- 6 It's misty and it's freezing.

## Reading 1

*Zuzka gets up and goes to work . . .*

Každý deň Zuzka vstáva skoro ráno a ide do roboty. V zime, keď sa vracia, je už tma. Včera, keď šla do mesta, pršalo, bolo ešte takmer tma. Pred domom neboli nikto. Zastávka autobusu je dosť ďaleko, pod mostom ako v tuneli. Vietor tam strašne fúka. Na autobus čakala veľmi dlho. Niekoľko pozerala, ako cez most prechádzal dlhý vlak. Nudila sa. Rozprávala sa so susedou, ktorá čakala na električku. Za susedou stál ešte jeden starý pán vo svetri, bol to ďalší sused. Vyzeral celkom veselo. Zuzke sa nechcelo ísť do práce.

*Every day Zuzka gets up early in the morning and goes to work. In the winter, when she returns, it is already dark. Yesterday, when she went to town, it was raining, it was still almost dark. In front of the house there was no one. The bus stop is quite far, under a bridge like in a tunnel. The wind blows dreadfully there. She waited for the bus a very long time. Sometimes she watched a long train going over the bridge (lit. how a long train crosses over the bridge). She was bored. She chatted with a (woman) neighbour who was waiting for the tram. Behind the neighbour also stood an old man in a sweater, this was another neighbour. He looked quite happy (lit. merrily). Zuzka didn't feel like going to work (lit. to Zuzka it didn't want itself to go to work).*

## Vocabulary

|                   |                                 |                      |                            |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>ako</b>        | like (as if)                    | <b>pršať, pršalo</b> | to rain, it was<br>raining |
| <b>celkom</b>     | quite, entirely                 | <b>ráno</b>          | morning                    |
| <b>ďalší</b>      | another, a further              | <b>rozprávať sa</b>  | to talk, chat              |
| <b>dlhý</b>       | long                            | <b>skoro</b>         | early                      |
| <b>ešte</b>       | still                           | <b>stáť, stál</b>    | to stand, stood            |
| <b>ešte jeden</b> | still one, another              | <b>sused, f.</b>     | neighbour                  |
| <b>fúkať</b>      | to blow                         | <b>suseda</b>        |                            |
| <b>každý</b>      | each, every                     | <b>sveter, -tra</b>  | sweater                    |
| <b>most</b>       | bridge                          | <b>takmer</b>        | almost                     |
| <b>nudiať sa</b>  | to be bored                     | <b>tma</b>           | darkness, dark             |
| <b>prechádzať</b> | to cross, go across/<br>through | <b>tunel</b>         | tunnel                     |

|                       |                    |                 |                           |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| <b>veselo</b>         | happy, merry       | <b>vyzerať</b>  | to look                   |
| <b>vietor – vatra</b> | wind               |                 | (appearance)              |
| <b>vo</b>             | (= v in)           | <b>zastávka</b> | bus/tram stop             |
| <b>vracat' sa/</b>    | to return/I return | <b>zima</b>     | winter, <i>also:</i> cold |
| <b>vraciam sa</b>     |                    |                 |                           |

### **Zuzke sa nechcelo ísť do práce**

Zuzka did not feel like going to work (*lit.* to Zuzka it did not want itself to go to work).

## **Reading 2**

*It was a long wait for the bus . . .*

Suseda vravela, že doma dnes neraňajkovali, cez týždeň sa rodina vždy ponáhľa do roboty, na raňajky nemajú nikdy čas. Strašne nerada takto ráno čaká, ale nemá inú možnosť. Sama nevie viesť auto a ani si ho nemôžu dovoliť, lebo vôbec nemajú peniaze. Autobus stále nešiel. O štvrt hodinu suseda nasadla na električku a odišla. Jana čakala ďalej. Už nebola tma, ale bola zima. Napokon aj autobus prišiel. Jana mala naozaj radosť, lebo sa už začínala báť, že do roboty príde neskoro.

Nasadla na autobus. Autobus sa ponáhľal do mesta. Bol preplnený ako vždy, takže Zuzka nemohla čítať noviny. Vonku bola hustá hmla.

*The neighbour said that at home today they didn't have breakfast, through the week the family always hurry to work, they never have time for breakfast. She awfully dislikes waiting like this in the morning, but she hasn't (any) other possibility. She herself doesn't know how to drive a car and they can't even afford one, because they don't have (any) money at all. The bus still didn't come. In a quarter of an hour the neighbour boarded the tram and left. Jana waited further. It wasn't dark now, but it was cold. Finally the bus came as well. Jana was really glad (*lit.* really had joy), because she was now beginning to be afraid that she would come (*lit.* will come) to work late.*

*She got on the bus. The bus hurried into town. It was over-full as always, so Zuzka couldn't read the newspaper. Outside there was a thick fog.*

## Vocabulary

|                        |                         |                       |                                    |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>ani</b>             | even                    | <b>príde</b>          | (s/he) will                        |
| <b>báť sa/bojím sa</b> | to be afraid/I'm afraid | <b>raňajkovat'</b>    | arrive, come                       |
| <b>dovolit' si</b>     | to afford (for oneself) | <b>raňajky</b>        | to breakfast                       |
| <b>hmla</b>            | mist, fog               | <b>rodina</b>         | breakfast                          |
| <b>ho</b>              | him/it                  | <b>sám, f. sama</b>   | family                             |
| <b>hustý</b>           | thick                   | <b>stále nešiel</b>   | self (as subject), alone           |
| <b>iný</b>             | other                   | <b>o štvrt'hodinu</b> | he still didn't come               |
| <b>možnosť</b>         | possibility             | <b>takto</b>          | in a quarter of an hour            |
| <b>napokon</b>         | finally                 | <b>takže</b>          | this way, like this                |
| <b>nasadla</b>         | boarded                 | <b>viesť auto</b>     | so that                            |
| <b>nemohla</b>         | (she) couldn't          | <b>vôbec</b>          | to drive ( <i>lit.</i> lead) a car |
| <b>nikdy</b>           | never                   | <b>vráviet'</b>       | at all                             |
| <b>noviny</b>          | newspaper               | <b>začínať</b>        | to say                             |
| <b>peniaze</b>         | money                   |                       | to begin                           |
| <b>ponáhľať sa</b>     | to hurry                |                       |                                    |
| <b>preplnený</b>       | over-full, crowded      |                       |                                    |
| <b>prišiel</b>         | arrived, came           |                       |                                    |

# 7 Raňajky, obed, večera

**Breakfast, lunch, supper**

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- talk about eating and drinking
- use more soft nouns
- talk more about place and motion
- say 'take' and 'carry'
- talk about clothes, dressing, washing and the body

## Dialogue 1

*Eva and Juraj discuss breakfast and eating habits*

EVA: Juraj, čo jedávaš na raňajky?

JURAJ: Na raňajky jem chlieb so salámou alebo so syrom. A ty?

EVA: Bud' neraňajkujem vôbec, alebo si dám len rožok s maslom  
a s džemom. A na obed?

JURAJ: Cez týždeň obedujem v menze.

## Vocabulary

|                       |                             |                  |                              |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>bud' ... alebo</b> | either ... or               | <b>jest'/jem</b> | to eat/I eat                 |
| <b>dám si</b>         | I'll give myself/<br>have   | <b>Juraj</b>     | = George                     |
| <b>džem</b>           | jam                         | <b>maslo</b>     | butter                       |
| <b>chlieb</b>         | bread                       | <b>menza</b>     | refectory                    |
| <b>jedávať</b>        | to eat (repeated<br>action) | <b>rožok</b>     | crescent-shape<br>bread roll |
|                       |                             | <b>saláma</b>    | salami                       |

## Dialogue 2

*What did Juraj's refectory have for lunch yesterday?*

EVA: Čo si jedol včera?

JURAJ: Včera sme mali zeleninovú polievku a kurča s ryžou. Mali aj bravčový rezeň a zemiakový šalát.

EVA: To máte teda skvelú menzu! Takmer ako v reštaurácii.

JURAJ: Naša menza je naozaj dobrá, hoci je aj pomerne drahá.

## Vocabulary

|                       |                 |                        |                    |
|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>bravčový rezeň</b> | pork schnitzel  | <b>pomerne</b>         | fairly, relatively |
| <b>drahý</b>          | dear, expensive | <b>reštaurácia</b>     | restaurant         |
| <b>hoci</b>           | although        | <b>ryža</b>            | rice               |
| <b>jedol</b>          | ate             | <b>zemiacový šalát</b> | potato salad       |
| <b>kurča</b>          | chicken         |                        |                    |
| <b>zeleninová</b>     | vegetable soup  |                        |                    |
| <b>polievka</b>       |                 |                        |                    |

## Dialogue 3

*And what does he do for food in the evenings?*

EVA: A večeriaš doma?

JURAJ: Áno, ale len málo, fazuľku s vajíčkom, chlieb so salámom a tak. Alebo cestou domov si kupujem na ulici klobásu či párok v rožku s horčicou. Potom pozérám chvíľu televíziu a hneď idem spať. Cez týždeň vstávam skoro ráno.

EVA: Máte ťažký život! Málo jedla, veľa práce!

## Vocabulary

|                |             |                         |                |
|----------------|-------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| <b>fazuľka</b> | beans       | <b>párok v rožku</b>    | hot dog        |
| <b>horčica</b> | mustard     | <b>ulica</b>            | street         |
| <b>klobása</b> | sausage     | <b>večerať/večeriam</b> | to have supper |
| <b>málo</b>    | little, few | <b>veľa</b>             | a lot of       |
| <b>párok</b>   | frankfurter | <b>život</b>            | life           |

# KULTÚRNY ŽIVOT

11

Ročník XXXV.

27. júna 1990

Cena 4 Kčs

## Language points

### Meals, eating and drinking

The standard words for meals are:

**raňajky** (*pl.!*)

breakfast

**obed**

lunch, midday meal

**večera**

supper, evening meal

Note also the meal verbs **raňajkovať/raňajkujem** ‘to have breakfast’, **obedovať/obedujem** ‘to have lunch’, and **večerať/večeriam** ‘to have supper’.

**Večerať** has **-ia-** instead of **-á-** in the present: **večeriam**, **večeriaš** ... **večerajú**. Compare also **vracat' (sa)** ‘to return’: **vraciam (sa)** ... **vracajú (sa)**.

The verb **jest'** ‘to eat’ is a slightly irregular **e-type**:

**jem** I eat

**jeme** we eat

**ješ** you eat

**jete** you eat

**je** s/he eats

**jedia** they eat (!)

(*don't confuse with **je** = *is*!*)

The past forms are: **jedol**, **jedla**, **jedli**.

For regular eating you can also say **jedávať/jedávam**, as in Dialogue 1.

The verb **pit'** ‘to drink’ is a simple **e-type**:

**pijem** I drink

**pijeme** we drink

**piješ** you drink

**pijete** you drink

**pije** s/he drinks

**pijú** they drink

The past forms are: **pil**, **pila**, **pili**.

## Soft feminine nouns

Soft feminine nouns, e.g. **ulica** ‘street’, have a soft consonant before their final **-a**. They have a special genitive ending **-e**. Here are the various forms:

|                           |                   |                    |
|---------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>genitive -e</i>        | <b>do ulice</b>   | into the street    |
| <i>dative/locative -i</i> | <b>k ulici</b>    | towards the street |
|                           | <b>na ulici</b>   | on the street      |
| <i>instrumental -ou</i>   | <b>pod ulicou</b> | under the street   |

Nouns ending **-ia** (pronounce /ija/) also count as soft, e.g. **reštaurácia** ‘restaurant’:

**do reštaurácie** /-ije/, **v reštaurácii** into, in the restaurant.

Some soft feminines end in a consonant, e.g. **postel** ‘bed’, **kaviareň** ‘café’, **vináreň** ‘wine bar’ and other such nouns ending in **-eň**:

**Idem do kaviarne.** I'm going to the café.

**Sedím v kaviarni, pred kaviarňou.** I'm sitting in, in front of the café.

Those ending in **-osť** (and a few others) have an **-i** ending in the genitive, as well as in the dative/locative, e.g. **radost** ‘joy, happiness’:

**vel'a radosti** lots of joy

### Exercise 1

**Čo ste jedli?** What did you eat? Reply as suggested:

- 1 pork schnitzel and potato salad
- 2 a frankfurter in a roll with mustard
- 3 fish and bread with butter
- 4 vegetable soup, fish, and bread with cheese
- 5 chicken with rice and ice cream
- 6 beans with an egg and a roll with jam

### Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with words for *refectory*, *street*, *coffee*, *wine*, *mustard*, *restaurant* and *café*:

- 1 Cez týždeň obedujem v \_\_\_\_\_, ktorá je veľmi dobrá, takmer ako v \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Niekedy chodím do \_\_\_\_\_ a pijem čaj, \_\_\_\_\_ alebo pohárik \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Cestou domov si kupujem na \_\_\_\_\_ klobásu či párok s \_\_\_\_\_.

### **Exercise 3**

Translate into Slovak and then put into the past:

- 1 They eat in the hotel or in a restaurant.
- 2 We have lunch in a café.
- 3 Then we have supper at home.
- 4 For breakfast I eat bread with cheese or with jam.
- 5 I drink coffee and tea with sugar and with milk.
- 6 The restaurant is good, although it is also fairly expensive.

### **Dialogue 4**

*Pavol asks Eva about her brother Janko*

PAVOL: Kde je Janko? Nevidel som ho hádam celý mesiac.

EVÁ: Je vonku. Včera cez deň pršalo. Janko sedel doma, čítal si noviny a počúval rádio. Dnes chcel ísť von. Teraz je v meste. Otec ho tam viezol asi pred hodinou autom. Šiel do Carltonu. Má tam v kaviarni schôdzku s kamarátkou.

PAVOL: Kto je to?

EVÁ: Američanka, volá sa Katka. Janko ju učí slovenčinu.

### **Vocabulary**

|                          |  |                 |                  |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------|------------------|
| <b>celý</b>              | (a) whole                                    | <b>schôdzka</b> | meeting          |
| <b>Katka</b>             | = Katy                                       | <b>von</b>      | out (motion out) |
| <b>kaviareň, -rne f.</b> | café   | <b>viezol</b>   | drove, took      |
| <b>pred hodinou</b>      | an hour ago ( <i>lit.</i><br>before an hour) |                 |                  |

## Dialogue 5

*And what about Eva's sister Ol'ga?*

PAVOL: A Ol'ga? Nie je chorá? Volala mi včera a povedala, že sa necíti dobre. Učila sa na skúšku a sedela v knižnici veľmi dlho.

EVA: V noci ju bolela hlava. Celú noc nespala. Teraz je zasa hore v spálni. Niekedy, keď je chorá, berie si knihu do posteley, ale teraz asi nečíta. Práve počúva rádio, lebo spieva jej obľúbený spevák. Nepoznáš túto slovenskú pieseň?

## Vocabulary

|             |                 |                    |              |
|-------------|-----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| asi         | probably, about | pieseň             | song         |
| brať/beriem | to take         | posteľ             | bed          |
| boliť       | to hurt         | povedať            | to say, tell |
| cítiť       | to feel         | spálňa             | bedroom      |
| hlava       | head            | spevák             | singer       |
| hore        | up, upstairs    | táto f., acc. túto | this         |
| knižnica    | library         | zasa, zase         | again        |
| noc         | night           |                    |              |

## Dialogue 6

*And Eva's mother?*

PAVOL: Kde je twoja mama? Hádam v kuchyni?

EVA: Nie. Sedí v jedálni. Pozerá televíziu, píše tete list, alebo číta časopis. Aha. Teraz ide sem do izby.

PAVOL: Idem hore, dobre? Potrebujem sa s Ol'gou porozprávať. Nesiem jej darček, len takú maličkosť.

EVA: Odkiaľ vieš, že má dnes narodeniny?

PAVOL: Sama mi to povedala. Neberie ma sice vážne, ale vie, že ju mám predsa len veľmi rád.

## Vocabulary

|         |             |           |          |
|---------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| izba    | room        | kuchyňa   | kitchen  |
| jedáleň | dining room | maličkosť | a trifle |

|                       |                       |                             |                                |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>narodeniny</b>     | birthday              | <b>síce . . . ale . . .</b> | (albeit) . . . , however . . . |
| <b>niesť/nesiem</b>   | to carry, bring       |                             |                                |
| <b>odkiaľ</b>         | where from?           | <b>taký</b>                 | such a, this kind of           |
| <b>porozprávať sa</b> | to have a talk        |                             |                                |
| <b>predsa len</b>     | anyway, after all     | <b>vážne</b>                | seriously                      |
| <b>sem</b>            | here (motion towards) |                             |                                |

## Language points

### Talking about place and motion

A distinction in meaning between *place* and *motion towards a place* is found in pairs of closely related words. Note:

**Kde je Janko?**  
but: **Kam ide?**

Where is Janko?  
Where is he going?

**Je tu.**  
but: **Ide sem.**

S/he is here.  
S/he is coming here.

**Sedí doma.**  
but: **Ide domov.**

S/he is sitting at home.  
S/he is going home.

**Je vonku.**  
but: **Ide von.**

S/he is outside.  
S/he is going out(side).

Some speakers use **kde** instead of **kam**. Other words regularly make no distinction:

**Je dnu.**  
**Ide dnu.**

He is in/inside.  
He goes in/inside.

**Je preč.**  
**Ide preč.**

He is away.  
He goes away.

**Je hore.**  
**Ide hore.**

He is upstairs/up.  
He goes upstairs/up.

**Je dolu/dole.**  
**Ide dolu/dole.**

He is downstairs, down below.  
He goes downstairs, down.

**Je tam.**  
**Ide tam (or: ta).**

He is there.  
He goes there.

## Taking and carrying

Some verbs have **-ie-** instead of **-e-** in forms of the present. We'll call them **ie-types**. Here are two essential ones:

|                       |          |
|-----------------------|----------|
| <b>brat'</b> /beriem  | to take  |
| <b>niesť'</b> /nesiem | to carry |

Another two are easy to confuse, but also vital:

|                       |                               |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>viezť'</b> /veziem | to convey (= take by vehicle) |
| <b>viesť'</b> /vediem | to lead                       |

Their present forms are all similar:

| <i>brat'</i> | <i>niesť'</i> | <i>viezť'</i> | <i>viesť'</i> |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| beriem       | nesiem        | veziem        | vediem        |
| berieš       | nesieš        | vezieš        | vedieš        |
| berie        | nesie         | vezie         | vedie         |
| berieme      | nesieme       | vezieme       | vedieme       |
| beriete      | nesiete       | veziete       | vediete       |
| berú         | nesú          | vezú          | vedú          |

Where infinitive **-ť** follows a consonant, as in **niesť'**, **viezť'** and **viesť'**, the past form for 'he' has the ending **-ol**:

**Niesol (viezol) kufor.** He carried (conveyed) the suitcase.

**Viedol Ivana do izby.** He led Ivan into the room.

Other past forms lose the **-o-**:

**Niesla kufor.** She carried the suitcase.

**Viedli Ivana do izby.** They led Ivan into the room.

All of the above verbs may be translated as 'take' in English (the meaning of which is very broad!):

**Beriem knihu zo stola.** I take/pick up the book from the table.

**Nesiem obed do izby.** I take/carry the lunch into the room.

**Veziem Ivana do mesta.** I take/convey Ivan into town.

**Viediem Ivana do izby.** I take/lead Ivan into the room.

**Viest'** 'to lead' can also mean 'to drive (a car)':

**Eva vedie auto.** Eva leads/drives the car.

## Washing and getting dressed

Verbs often have **sa** ‘self’ added when the action is devoted to the subject/self, e.g. with **umývať** ‘to wash’:

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| <b>Umývam sa.</b> | I wash. I wash myself.<br>but: <b>Umývam riad.</b> |
|                   | I wash the dishes.                                 |

When the action is devoted to the subject/self, but there is also an object, **sa** is replaced by **si** ‘to/for self’:

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>Umývam si ruky.</b> | I wash my hands ( <i>lit.</i> I wash to self the hands). |
|------------------------|--|

The same happens with **obliekať** ‘to dress, put on’, and **vyzliekať** ‘to undress, take off’:

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <b>Obliekam sa.</b>              | I dress myself, get dressed, put on my clothes.              |
| <b>Obliekam si kabát.</b>        | I put on my coat ( <i>lit.</i> I put on ‘to self’ the coat). |
| <b>Pavol sa vyzlieka.</b>        | Pavol gets undressed, takes off his clothes.                 |
| <b>Pavol si vyzlieka sveter.</b> | Pavol takes off his sweater.                                 |

Following the same pattern are **obúvať** ‘to put on shoes’, and **zobúvať** ‘to take off shoes’:

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| <b>Obúvam sa. Obúvam si topánky.</b>   | I put on my shoes.   |
| <b>Zobúvam sa. Zobúvam si topánky.</b> | I take off my shoes. |

## Clothes and parts of the body

The text below is partly about **šaty** ‘clothes’, and as you wear **oblečenie** ‘clothing’ over your **telo** ‘body’, let’s put together some basic words for both topics. You may not be able to learn all this list now, but you can use it for revision later.

Out of doors, you might wear a **kabát** ‘coat’, **sako** ‘jacket’ or **bunda** ‘anorak’. You might have a **dáždnik** ‘umbrella’ in your **ruka** ‘hand’, and **rukavice** ‘gloves’ on both **rukы**, to keep your **prsty** ‘fingers’ warm. On your **hlava** ‘head’ you might have a **klobúk** ‘hat’ or a **čiapka** ‘cap’ to cover your **vlasys** ‘hair’ and **uši** ‘ears’ (**ucho** ‘ear’). You might also be wearing **okuliare** ‘glasses’ on your **nos** ‘nose’, for the sake of your **oči** ‘eyes’ (**oko** ‘eye’). Round your **krk** ‘neck’ you might have a **šál** ‘scarf’.

You could have **make-up** on your **tvár** ‘face’, and **rúž** ‘lipstick’ on your **pery** ‘lips’, around your **ústa** ‘mouth’, with its **biele zuby** ‘white teeth’ and **ružový jazyk** ‘pink tongue’.

You might have an **oblek** ‘suit’ over your **plecia** ‘shoulders’ (or **ramená**, correctly ‘upper arms’). Alternatively you could have a **sveter** ‘sweater’ or **pulóver** ‘pullover’ round your **chróbát** ‘back’ and **hrud’** or **prsia** ‘chest’. Below the **pás** ‘waist’ or ‘belt’ you might have **nohavice** ‘trousers’ on your **nohy** ‘legs’, or a **sukňa** ‘skirt’. On your **nohy**, which have **prsty** ‘toes’, the same as ‘fingers’, you might be wearing **ponožky** ‘socks’ (**podkolienky** if up to your **kolená** ‘knees’) and **topánky** ‘shoes’, maybe **sandále** ‘sandals’ or **čízmy** ‘boots’. You are perhaps also in a **košeľa** ‘shirt’ or **blúzka** ‘blouse’, unless you are wearing **šaty** ‘a dress’ (also ‘clothes’ in general). Alternatively you could be wearing some kind of **džínsy** ‘jeans’ and **tričko** ‘t-shirt’.

A woman may have a **podprsenka** ‘bra’ to support her **prsníky** ‘breasts’. We should also mention **tielko** ‘vest’ or US ‘undershirt’, **pančuchy** ‘stockings’ and **pančuchové nohavice** or **pančucháče** ‘tights’, and **spodná bielizeň** (‘underwear’ in general). On their **zadok** ‘backside’ men wear **spodky** ‘underpants’ (**trenírky** ‘boxer shorts’ or **slipy** ‘briefs’), women **nohavičky** ‘knickers’. Babies wear, amongst other things, **plienky** ‘nappies’, ‘diapers’.

**Bielizeň**, incorrectly also **prádlo**, is likewise ‘bedlinen’, which takes us back to **posteľ** ‘bed’, **pyžama** ‘pyjamas’ and **nočná košeľa** ‘night shirt’. Maybe it’s time to rest your **unavené kosti** ‘tired bones’, restore your **krv** ‘blood’, and refresh your **unavený mozog** ‘tired brain’. It’s all too much for the poor old **srdce** ‘heart’.

### **Exercise 4**

Translate into Slovak:

Jozef is out. Yesterday it rained. He sat at home, read the paper and listened to the radio. Today he wanted to go out. Now he’s in town. He went to the Carlton. He has a meeting in the café with a female friend. She’s an Englishwoman. Her name’s Andrea. Jozef is teaching her Slovak.

### **Exercise 5**

Complete with the words suggested and translate into English:

- 1 Sedela v \_\_\_\_\_. (*the library*)

- 2 Je hore v \_\_\_\_\_. (*the bedroom*)
- 3 Janko je v \_\_\_\_\_. (*bed*)
- 4 Otec bol v \_\_\_\_\_. (*the kitchen*)
- 5 Pozeral \_\_\_\_\_. (*television*)
- 6 Janko si \_\_\_\_\_ sveter. (*puts on*)
- 7 Jozef si \_\_\_\_\_ ruky. (*washes*)
- 8 Eva si \_\_\_\_\_ kabát. (*takes off*)
- 9 Viera si \_\_\_\_\_ topánky. (*takes off*)
- 10 Igor si \_\_\_\_\_ topánky. (*puts on*)

## Reading 1

*Getting up in the morning and going to work ...*

V spálni je tma. Práve zvoní budík. Je ráno. Pavol Petrík vstáva a ide do kúpeľne. Berie mydlo a umýva sa. Potom berie žiletku (alebo holiaci strojček) a holí sa. Vracia sa do spálne, vyzlieka si pyžamu, oblieka si spodky, košeľu, nohavice a ponožky. Potom ide dolu do kuchyne. V kuchyni si pripravuje čaj (alebo kávu), berie chlieb a šunku (alebo syr) a ide do jedálne (alebo do obývačky). Je krajec chleba so šunkou (alebo so syrom, niekedy aj rožok s džemom). Upratuje v obývačke. Umýva v kuchyni riad. Napokon ide do predsiene, obúva si topánky, oblieka si pulóver, sako, kabát alebo bundu a beží von. Musí bežať, lebo je neskoro, ponáhľa sa do práce.

## Vocabulary

|                         |                         |                 |                        |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| <b>bežať</b>            | to run                  | <b>nohavice</b> | trousers               |
| <b>budík</b>            | alarm-clock             | <b>obliekať</b> | to put on<br>(clothes) |
| <b>bunda</b>            | anorak, wind<br>cheater | <b>obúvať</b>   | to put on (shoes)      |
| <b>dolu</b>             | down, downstairs        | <b>ponožky</b>  | socks                  |
| <b>holiaci strojček</b> | shaver                  | <b>predsieň</b> | hallway                |
| <b>holiť sa</b>         | to shave (oneself)      | <b>pulóver</b>  | pullover               |
| <b>kabát</b>            | coat                    | <b>pyžama</b>   | pyjamas                |
| <b>košeľa</b>           | shirt                   | <b>riad</b>     | dishes                 |
| <b>krajec</b>           | slice                   | <b>sako</b>     | jacket                 |
| <b>kúpeľňa</b>          | bathroom                | <b>spodky</b>   | underpants             |
| <b>mydlo</b>            | soap                    | <b>šunka</b>    | ham                    |

|                  |                          |                |             |
|------------------|--------------------------|----------------|-------------|
| <b>topánky</b>   | shoes                    | <b>zvoníť</b>  | to ring     |
| <b>umývať</b>    | to wash                  | <b>žiletka</b> | razor blade |
| <b>vyzliekať</b> | to take off<br>(clothes) |                |             |

## Reading 2

*Working and coming home ...*

V práci sa veľmi nudí. Často telefonuje. Obeduje s kolegom v reštaurácii. Píše dlhú správu o ceste do Prešova.

Večer ide domov, je unavený, vyzerá zle. Otvára dvere, ide dnu, zatvára, vyzlieka si sako, kabát alebo bundu, nalieva si pohárik slivovice. Sadne si do kresla. (Niekedy, najmä keď je trocha nahnevaný, namiesto slivovice berie pivo a pije priamo z fľaše. Dnes je len unavený, preto pije slivovicu.) O chvíľu počuje tichú hudbu. Irena je hore v spálni, čaká. Nevie, čo má robiť. Ide hore. Je už takmer tma.

## Vocabulary

|                    |                   |                      |                    |
|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <b>čo má robiť</b> | what he should do | <b>počuť, počuje</b> | to hear            |
| <b>dnu</b>         | inside, in        | <b>preto</b>         | so, therefore      |
| <b>dvere</b>       | door              | <b>priamo</b>        | straight, directly |
| <b>fľaša</b>       | bottle            | <b>sadne si</b>      | (s/he) sits down   |
| <b>kolega</b>      | colleague         | <b>slivovica</b>     | plum brandy        |
| <b>nahnevaný</b>   | angry, cross      | <b>správa</b>        | report, news       |
| <b>nalievať</b>    | to pour out       | <b>telefonovať</b>   | to telephone       |
| <b>namiesto</b>    | instead of        | <b>tichý</b>         | quiet              |
| <b>otvárať</b>     | to open           | <b>zatvárať</b>      | to close           |

# 8 Chcela napísat' list

**She wanted to write a letter**

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- understand verb pairs
- talk about the future
- learn some telephone phrases
- name the days of the week
- say 'would like' and 'could'

## Dialogue 1

*Elena doesn't know what to put in a letter to Martin*

ŠTEFAN: Čo si dnes robila? Čítala si?

ELENA: Nie. Chcela som, ale nemala som čas.

ŠTEFAN: Ved' si povedala, že si chceš čítať ten nový americký román, ktorý ti dal Martin.

ELENA: Čítala som ho včera. Už som ho aj prečítala. Písala som Martinovi list. Chcela som mu pod'akovať za tú knihu.

ŠTEFAN: Ty si ten list už napísala? Chcel som s tebou ísť do kina. Dávajú výborný taliansky film.

ELENA: Neviem, čo mám Martinovi písť. Prečítam ti jeho posledný list. Asi je do mňa záľubený. Chcela som mu niečo písť o politike, o situácii na Slovensku, ale potom som si povedala, že Martin o politiku vôbec nemá záujem.

## Vocabulary

|                                      |                     |                             |              |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|
| <b>dať</b> <i>pf</i> of <b>dávať</b> | to give/put         | <b>pod'akovať</b> <i>za</i> | to thank for |
| <b>napísat'/napíšem</b> <i>pf</i>    | to write/I'll write | + acc.(!) <i>pf</i>         |              |

|                    |                   |                     |               |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| <b>posledný</b>    | last              | <b>s tebou</b>      | with you      |
| <b>povedať/</b>    | to tell           | <b>ti</b>           | to you        |
| <b>poviem pf</b>   |                   | <b>za tú knihu</b>  | for that book |
| <b>prečítať/</b>   | to read/I'll read | <b>výborný</b>      | excellent     |
| <b>prečítam pf</b> |                   | <b>zaľúbený</b>     | in love       |
| <b>román</b>       | novel             | <b>záujem</b>       | interest in   |
| <b>situácia</b>    | situation         | <b>o + acc. (!)</b> |               |
| <b>taliansky</b>   | Italian           |                     |               |

## Dialogue 2

*Štefan recalls a funny incident when they cooked for their friend Mišo (= Mick; **Michal** = Michael)*

ŠTEFAN: Mohla by si mu napísala o Mišovi, ako sme ho nedávno pozvali na večeru. Varili sme spolu, aj sme kúpili niečo dobré, chceli sme urobiť naozaj chutnú večeru, ale napokon sme uvarili niečo, čo sa vôbec nedalo jest.

ELENA: Urobili sme totiž jednu malú chybu.

ŠTEFAN: Áno. Dali sme do vody priveľa soli. Mišo bol súčasť veľmi hladný, ale zjedol iba malý kúsok a hned' musel ísť na záchod.

ELENA: Hej, bolo to veľmi smiešne! Potom sme šli do reštaurácie. Mišo zjedol strašne veľa a vypil celú fľašu vína. Bol opitý.

ŠTEFAN: Napokon všetko musel zaplatiť sám, lebo my sme nemali peniaze!

ELENA: A Mišo tak nerád platí! Štefan, to je skvelý nápad. Vďaka. List napišem zajtra, lebo teraz radšej idem s tebou do kina.

## Vocabulary

|                    |           |                  |                    |
|--------------------|-----------|------------------|--------------------|
| <b>hladný</b>      | hungry    | <b>nápad</b>     | idea               |
| <b>chutný</b>      | tasty     | <b>nedalo sa</b> | it wasn't possible |
| <b>chyba</b>       | mistake   | <b>nedávno</b>   | recently           |
| <b>iba</b>         | only      | <b>opitý</b>     | drunk              |
| <b>kúpiť pf</b>    | to buy    | <b>platiť</b>    | to pay             |
| <b>kúsok</b>       | piece     | <b>pozvať pf</b> | to invite          |
| <b>mohla by si</b> | you could | <b>privela</b>   | too much           |

|                    |             |                         |                  |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| <b>smiešny</b>     | funny       | <b>vypíť pf</b>         | to drink         |
| <b>soli – soli</b> | salt        | <b>zajtra</b>           | tomorrow         |
| <b>urobiť pf</b>   | to do, make | <b>zaplatiť pf</b>      | to pay           |
| <b>uvariť pf</b>   | to cook     | <b>záchod</b>           | WC, toilet       |
| <b>vďaka</b>       | thanks      | <b>zjest'/zjedol pf</b> | to eat up/ate up |
| <b>všetko</b>      | everything  |                         |                  |

## Language points

### Verb pairs

Slovak verbs mostly come in pairs: one *imperfective*, the other *perfective*. Both verbs mean basically the same, but differ in *aspect* – whether their sense is seen as being completed or not.

An imperfective verb denotes ongoing or general activity. (The verbs in previous lessons were nearly all imperfective.)

A perfective verb denotes a complete act (or complete set of acts).

To make **písat'** ‘to write’ perfective you add the prefix **na-** (meaning ‘on, onto’). Compare:

**Chcem písat' list.** I want to write a letter (*activity*)

**Chcem napísat' list.** I want to write a letter (*complete act*).

There are two main types of pair: prefix and suffix pairs.

In prefix pairs the perfectives add a prefix to the simple imperfectives, as in **písat'** – **napísat'** ‘to write’. The prefix used is not exactly predictable. For example, in Dialogues 1 and 2 you will find: **pre-čítať** ‘to read (through)’, **u-variť** ‘to cook’, **po-d'akovat'** ‘to thank’, **za-platiť** ‘to pay’, **u-robiť** ‘to do’, **vy-piť** ‘to drink (up)’, **z-jest'** ‘to eat (up)’.

In suffix pairs the two forms end differently, with different suffixes, as in **dávať** – **dat'** ‘to give, put’, **kupovať** – **kúpiť** ‘to buy’, **pozývať** – **pozvať** ‘to invite’. Generally, as in these examples, the imperfective is the longer form.

### The past with verb pairs

Perfective and imperfective verbs form past tenses in the same way, but differ in their precise meaning.

**Písal som list.** I wrote/was writing a letter (*process*).

**Napísal som list.**

I wrote/have written a letter (*complete act*).

English has a wide range of past forms with different distinctions. ‘Was writing’ can be treated as clearly imperfective, but ‘wrote’ can correspond to either aspect.

**Včera písala list.**

Yesterday she was writing/wrote a letter.

**Písala ho celý deň.**

She was writing/wrote it all day.

**Už ho napísala.**

Now she has written it.

**Dnes napísala ďalší.**

Today she has written/wrote another one.

## Present versus future

Only imperfectives have a sense in the present of something going on now.

**Píšem list.**

I am writing a letter (*process*).

**Kupujem knihu.**

I am buying a book.

Present forms of perfectives are regularly future in meaning!

**Zajtra napišem list.**

Tomorrow I will write a letter (*complete act*).

**Zajtra kúpim knihu.**

Tomorrow I will buy a book.

However, a present perfective can sometimes correspond to an English present, if referring to a complete action:

**Niekedy prečíta celú knihu!**

Sometimes s/he reads a whole book!

## ‘Would like’ and ‘could’

To say a polite ‘would like’ (instead of just ‘want’) you add **by** to the past forms of **chcieť** ‘to want’:

**Chcel by som hovoriť s pánom Kováčom.**

I would like to talk to Mr Kováč.

For a polite ‘could’ (instead of ‘can’) you add **by** to the past forms of **môcť** ‘to be able, can’:

**Mohol/Mohla by som hovoriť s pánom Kováčom?**

Could I speak with Mr Kováč?

**Mohli by sme hovoriť s pani Vizárovou?**  
Could we speak with Mrs Vizárová?

### **Exercise 1**

Give perfective infinitives of these verbs:

variť, piť, platiť, jestť, robíť, písat'

### **Exercise 2**

Give both infinitives of the verbs suggested:

to buy, to give, to invite, to read, to thank

### **Exercise 3**

Complete as suggested and translate:

- 1 Igor \_\_\_\_\_ román. (*was reading*)
- 2 Zuzka \_\_\_\_\_ list. (*has read*)
- 3 Mišo \_\_\_\_\_ strašne veľa. (*has eaten*)
- 4 Eva \_\_\_\_\_ fľašu vína. (*has drunk*)
- 5 Mišo a Eva \_\_\_\_\_ celý deň. (*were drinking*)
- 6 Brat \_\_\_\_\_ naozaj chutnú večeru. (*has cooked*)
- 7 Sestra \_\_\_\_\_ jednu veľkú chybú. (*has made*)
- 8 Otec mu \_\_\_\_\_ pekný list. (*will write*)
- 9 Zajtra mu \_\_\_\_\_ za tú knihu. (*I will thank*)
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ hovoriť s pani Vilikovskou? (*could I*)
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ hovoriť s pani Bednárovou. (*I would like to*)

## **Dialogue 3**

*Peter Miko speaks to pani Nováková on the phone*

NOVÁKOVÁ: Haló?

PETER: Pani Nováková?

NOVÁKOVÁ: Áno, pri telefóne. Kto volá?

PETER: Miko. Peter Miko. Mohol by som hovoriť s pánom Petríkom? Napísal som mu pred viac ako týždňom. Dúfam, že dostal môj list.

NOVÁKOVÁ: Žiaľbohu, nie je doma.

PETER: A neskôr?

- Nováková: Nebude doma celý deň. Je na konferencii vo Viedni.
- PETER: Aha, rozumiem. Kedy sa vráti, pani Nováková?
- Nováková: Povedal, že sa vráti v pondelok večer, myslím, že dosť neskoro v noci.
- PETER: Dobre.
- Nováková: Mám mu niečo odkázať?
- PETER: Ehm ... nie. Nie je to veľmi dôležité. Zavolám mu niekedy cez týždeň.
- Nováková: Určite? Poviem mu, že ste zavolali.
- PETER: Veľmi pekne vám d'akujem. Prepáčte, že som vás obťažoval.
- Nováková: Nič sa nestalo. Do videnia.

## Vocabulary

|                       |                                       |                        |                                |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>dôležitý</b>       | important                             | <b>odkázať pf</b>      | to give a message              |
| <b>dostať pf</b>      | to get                                | <b>pondelok, v ...</b> | Monday, on                     |
| <b>dúfať</b>          | to hope                               |                        | Monday                         |
| <b>ehm</b>            | uhm                                   | <b>povedať/</b>        | to tell/I'll tell              |
| <b>haló</b>           | hello ( <i>on phone</i> )             | <b>poviem pf</b>       |                                |
| <b>kedy</b>           | when?                                 | <b>pri telefóne</b>    | on (at) the phone,<br>speaking |
| <b>konferencia</b>    | conference                            |                        |                                |
| <b>mu</b>             | to him                                | <b>určite</b>          | definitely                     |
| <b>nebude</b>         | (s/he) won't be                       | <b>viac ako</b>        | more than                      |
| <b>neskôr</b>         | later                                 | <b>Viedeň</b>          | Vienna                         |
| <b>nič sa nestalo</b> | nothing happened,<br>don't mention it | <b>vrátiť sa pf</b>    | to return                      |
| <b>obťažovať</b>      | to bother, disturb                    | <b>zavolať pf</b>      | to call, phone                 |
|                       |                                       | <b>žiaľbohu</b>        | unfortunately                  |

## Dialogue 4

*Peter rings up again a few days later*

- PETER: Haló? Pani Nováková?
- Nováková: Áno, kto volá?
- PETER: Peter Miko. Spomínate si, volal som vám ...
- Nováková: Áno, spomínam si.
- PETER: Vrátil sa už pán Petrik? Chcel by som sa s ním stretnúť. Ide o dosť dôležitú vec.

- Nováková: Bohužiaľ už zasa niekam odišiel. Je tuším na seminári v Prahe. Povedal mi, že vám napíše.
- PETER: Kedy sa vráti?
- Nováková: Neviem presne. Myslím, že zajtra alebo pozajtra.
- PETER: Neviete, či príde veľmi neskoro?
- Nováková: Dúfam, že nie, ale obávam sa, že áno. Vracia sa často neskoro v noci. Má priveľa práce.
- PETER: Dobre, zavolám pozajtra. Nebude vám to prekážať?
- Nováková: Nie, to je v poriadku. Poviem pánu Petrikovi, že ste mu opäť telefonovali.
- PETER: Ďakujem vám pekne. Do videnia.
- Nováková: Do videnia.

## Vocabulary

|                             |                           |                       |                              |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>ide o + acc. (!)</b>     | it concerns               | <b>prekážať</b>       | to obstruct/be a<br>nuisance |
| <b>niekam</b>               | (to) somewhere            | <b>presne</b>         | exactly                      |
| <b>s ním</b>                | with him                  | <b>seminár</b>        | seminar                      |
| <b>obávať sa</b>            | to fear                   | <b>spomínať si</b>    | to remember                  |
| <b>opäť</b>                 | again                     | <b>stretnúť sa pf</b> | to meet up                   |
| <b>poriadok, v poriadku</b> | order, in order           | <b>telefonovať</b>    | to telephone                 |
| <b>pozajtra</b>             | the day after<br>tomorrow | <b>vám</b>            | to you                       |



## Language points

### The days of the week



**Dnes je ...** ‘today it is ...’. It’s time to learn the days of the week. Note that they are spelt without capitals:

**Je pondelok, utorok.**

It’s Monday, Tuesday.

**Je streda.**

It’s Wednesday.

**Je štvrtok, piatok.**

It’s Thursday, Friday.

**Je sobota, nedel'a.**

It’s Saturday, Sunday.

To say ‘on’ a day, use **v** ‘in’ with (oddly!) the accusative:

**Prídem v pondelok, v utorok.** I’ll come on Monday, Tuesday.

**Prídu v stredu.** They’ll come on Wednesday.

**Odišli vo štvrtok, v piatok.** They left on Thursday, Friday.

**Odišiel v sobotu, v nedel'u.** He left on Saturday, Sunday.

‘From’ is **od**, ‘till’ is **do** (both with their usual genitive):

**Boli tam od pondelka do soboty.**

They were there from Monday till Saturday.

**Boli sme tam od stredy do nedele.**

We were there from Wednesday till Sunday.

Remember also:

**včera, dnes a zajtra**

yesterday, today and tomorrow

**predvčerom**

the day before yesterday

**pozajtra**

the day after tomorrow

**Deň** ‘day’ is masculine, like **týždeň** ‘week’, while **noc** ‘night’ is feminine. Note the phrases **v noci** ‘in the night’ and **vo dne** ‘in the day’.

**Prídem o týždeň.**

I’ll come in a week(’s time).

### Prefix pairs

Find the prefix pairs in the dialogues. As we have said, the prefix varies from verb to verb, and just has to be learnt! The commonest are **po-**, **u-**, **z-/s-**, **za-**. The symbolic arrow > points to the perfective:

**d'akovať > pod'akovať**

to thank

**robit' > urobit'**

to do, make

|                                  |         |
|----------------------------------|---------|
| <b>jest'</b> > <b>zjest'</b>     | to eat  |
| <b>platit'</b> > <b>zplatit'</b> | to pay  |
| <b>volat'</b> > <b>zavolať</b>   | to call |

## Suffix pairs

In suffix pairs the verb is typically a compound. A prefix is attached in both aspects, because it is needed as part of the general meaning.

For example, if **pod-** ‘under-’ is added to **písať** ‘to write’ you get **podpísat'**, a perfective verb meaning ‘to write under’, i.e. to sign. This has its own imperfective **podpisovať**, formed with the suffix **-ovat'**.

Compound imperfectives end in **-ať**, **-vať** or **-ovat'**.

Slovak dictionaries list such pairs under their more basic, shorter forms, the perfectives. So we make the perfective arrow < point backwards:

|                                      |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>podpísat'</b> < <b>podpisovať</b> | to sign   |
| <b>vrátiť sa</b> < <b>vracat'</b> sa | to return |

## Families of verbs

Note how related compound verbs form families with parallel forms. Look at the verbs for ‘to open’ and ‘to close’:

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| <b>otvoriť</b> < <b>otvárať</b>   | to open  |
| <b>zatvoriť</b> < <b>zatvárať</b> | to close |

Similarly, ‘put on’, ‘take off’ – we met the imperfectives in Lesson 7:

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| <b>obliečť, obliečiem, obliekol</b> < <b>obliekať</b>     | to put on (clothes) |
| <b>vyzliečť, vyvzlečiem, vyzliekol</b> < <b>vyzliekať</b> | to take off         |
| <b>obuť, obujem, obul</b> < <b>obúvať</b>                 | to put on (shoes)   |
| <b>zobuť, zobujem, zobil</b> < <b>zobúvať</b>             | to take off         |

Or ‘get’ and ‘get up/stand up’:

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>dostať, dostanem, dostať</b> < <b>dostávať</b> | to get    |
| <b>vstať, vstanem, vstal</b> < <b>vstávať</b>     | to get up |

Compounds of **íšť** ‘to go’ have imperfectives in **-chádzat'**.

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| <b>prísť, prídem, prišiel</b> < <b>prichádzat'</b> | to come/arrive |
| <b>odísť, odíde, odišiel</b> < <b>odchádzat'</b>   | to go away     |

Íst' itself has no separate perfective form:

**Ide domov. Išiel domov.** He goes home. He went home.

Sometimes the meanings of prefixes are similar to the corresponding prepositions, e.g. **pri** 'near', **od** 'away from'.

## Verbs without pairs

Various verbs lack, or usually lack, pairs. They include imperfectives for fixed states, such as **ležať/ležím** 'to lie', **sedieť/sedíم** 'to sit'.

Other such imperfectives are **byť** 'to be', **môcť** 'to be able', **musieť** 'to have to, must', **chcieť** 'to want'.

## 'Say' and 'tell'

The perfective verb **povedať** 'to say/tell' has a present/future form just like the present of **vedieť** 'to know':

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| <b>poviem</b>  | <b>povieme</b>     |
| <b>poviesť</b> | <b>poviete</b>     |
| <b>povie</b>   | <b>povedia</b> (!) |

**Ja mu to poviem.** I'll tell him it, say it to him.

**Povedal mi to včera.** He told me, said it to me yesterday.

For imperfective senses you use **hovoriť** or **vrváňať**.

**Čo hovoríš/vrváňať?** What are you saying?

Note the idiomatic:

**Ako sa to povie po slovensky?**

How do you say it in Slovak? (*lit. How does it say itself . . .?*)

**Po anglicky sa povie . . .**

In English you say 108

## The future again

The verb **byť** 'to be' has the following future:

**budem** I shall/will be

**budeš** you will be

**bude** s/he, it will be

**budeme** we shall/will be

**budete** you will be

**budú** they will be

**Budeš bohatá!**

You'll be rich!

**Nebudú doma.**

They won't be at home.

You can make an imperfective future of other verbs by adding infinitives (imperfective only!!) to **budem**, **budes**, etc.

**Budem písat list.**

I'll be writing a letter (*process*).

**Nebudeme otvárať okno.**

We won't be opening the window  
(*in general*).

### Exercise 4

You make a telephone call. Translate Mrs Bednárová's words for yourself and speak as suggested:

- *Hello? Mrs Bednárová?*
- *Áno, pri telefóne. Kto volá?*
- *Peter/Viera. Could I speak to Mr Bednár?*
- *Žiaľbohu, nie je doma. Je vo Viedni.*
- *Ah, I understand. When will he return, Mrs Bednárová?*
- *Vráti sa v pondelok. Mám mu niečo odkázať?*
- *Umm . . . no. It's not very important. I'd like to meet with him. I'll call him the day after tomorrow, on Monday evening. It won't be a nuisance for you?*
- *Nie, to je v poriadku. Poviem mu, že ste zavolali.*
- *Thank you very much. Excuse me for disturbing you.*
- *Nič sa nestalo. Do videnia.*
- *Goodbye.*

### Exercise 5

Translate into Slovak:

- 1 Viera opened the window.
- 2 Eva closed the window.
- 3 Pavol put on his trousers.
- 4 Eva is putting on her sweater.
- 5 Pavol has taken off his shirt.
- 6 Yesterday he got a nice letter.
- 7 He got up early and ate a roll with butter.
- 8 They arrived yesterday and left today.
- 9 They will not be at home all day.

## Reading 1

### *One early morning in Ol'ga's daily existence*

Ked' zazvonil budík, Ol'ga vstala a išla do kúpeľne. Vyzliekla si nočnú košeľu a rýchlo sa osprchovala. Potom sa vrátila do spálne. Obliekla si nohavičky, hodvábnu blúzku, pančucháče a krásnu úzku sukňu. Pred zrkadlom si učesala vlasy a urobila make-up. Potom zišla dolu do kuchyne a postavila vodu na čaj. Na stole v jedálni našla peceň chleba, kúsok masla a prázdný čajník. (Pavol je inžinier a odišiel do práce už pred hodinou. Ol'ga je lekárka, pracuje v nemocnici, a často má nočnú službu.)

## Vocabulary

|  |                        |  |                              |
|--|------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| <b>blúzka</b>                            | blouse                 | <b>postaviť vodu pf</b>                | to put on water<br>(to boil) |
| <b>čajník</b>                            | teapot                 | <b>prázdny</b>                         | empty                        |
| <b>hodvábny</b>                          | silk                   | <b>rýchlo</b>                          | quickly                      |
| <b>lekár, lekárka</b>                    | doctor                 | <b>stôl – stola</b>                    | table                        |
| <b>make-up</b>                           | make-up                | <b>sukňa</b>                           | skirt                        |
| <b>nájst'/našiel,</b><br><b>našla pf</b> | to find                | <b>učesať pf</b>                       | to comb                      |
| <b>nemocnica</b>                         | hospital               | <b>úzky</b>                            | narrow                       |
| <b>nočná služba</b>                      | night-duty             | <b>vlasy pl.</b>                       | hair                         |
| <b>nohavičky</b>                         | knickers               | <b>vstať/vstanem pf</b>                | to get up                    |
| <b>obliect'/</b><br><b>obliekol pf</b>   | to put on<br>(clothes) | <b>vyziect'/</b><br><b>vyziekol pf</b> | to take off<br>(clothes)     |
| <b>osprchovať sa pf</b>                  | to have a<br>shower    | <b>zazvoníť pf</b>                     | to ring                      |
| <b>pančucháče</b>                        | tights                 | <b>zišť/zíšiel, zišla pf</b>           | to go down                   |
| <b>peceň</b>                             | loaf                   | <b>zrkadlo</b>                         | mirror                       |

## Reading 2

### *The continuation of her day*

Dnes mala voľný deň. Naraňajkovala sa, upratala byt, umyla riad, sadla si do kresla a začala čítať román, ktorý dostala minulý týždeň od kamaráta, ktorý teraz býva v Kanade. Poobede išla plávať a stretla sa v kaviarni s kolegom z Anglicka. Hovorili spolu hodinu a pol po anglicky. Rozprávali o Európe (o politike a kultúre).

Potom ju kolega odviezol autom na sídlisko, pozval ju na kávu, odišla asi o hodinu. Nakúpila v samoobsluhe (kúpila chlieb, mlieko, bravčové mäso a kurča). Pred domom uvidela Pavla. Práve otváral dvere a vyzeral veľmi unavený ako vždy. Ahoj, Oľga, povedal. Ako sa máš? Mal som naozaj strašný deň. Vošli spolu do domu, Pavol zatvoril dvere, vyzliekol si sako, išiel do obývačky, nalial si ako zvyčajne pohárik slivovice a sadol si do kresla. Oľga išla hore do spálne. Vonku bola už takmer tma.

## Vocabulary

|                            |                          |                        |                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>ako vždy</b>            | as always                | <b>rozprávať</b>       | to talk, chat             |
| <b>ako zvyčajne</b>        | as usual                 | <b>sadnúť/sadol pf</b> | to sit down               |
| <b>Anglicko</b>            | England                  | <b>sídlisko</b>        | housing estate            |
| <b>Európa</b>              | Europe                   | <b>strašný</b>         | terrible, awful           |
| <b>Kanada</b>              | Canada                   | <b>stretiť sa/</b>     | to meet                   |
| <b>kultúra</b>             | culture                  | <b>stretol sa pf</b>   |                           |
| <b>minulý</b>              | last, past               | <b>upratovať pf</b>    | to tidy up                |
| <b>nakúpiť pf</b>          | to do shopping           | <b>uvidieť pf</b>      | to see, catch<br>sight of |
| <b>naliať/</b>             | to pour out              | <b>vošli</b>           | they went in              |
| <b>nalejem pf</b>          |                          | <b>začať/začnem pf</b> | to begin                  |
| <b>naraňajkovat' sa pf</b> | to have<br>breakfast     | <b>zatvoriť pf</b>     | to close                  |
| <b>odviezť pf</b>          | to drive, take<br>(away) | <b>zvyčajne</b>        | usually                   |

# 9 Stratila som cestovný pas

I've lost my passport

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- talk some more about directions
- talk about colours
- use more adjective forms, and 'this/that'
- use forms of 'who' and 'what'
- say 'somebody', 'nobody', etc.
- make adverbs

## Dialogue 1

*Anna has lost her passport and money; she approaches the waiter (čašník, alternatively head waiter, pán hlavný)*

ČAŠNÍK: Hľadáte niečo?

ANNA: Stratila som cestovný pas a peňaženku.

ČAŠNÍK: Aký pas a akú peňaženku?

ANNA: Britský pas a malú čiernu peňaženku. Boli tu v tejto taške.

ČAŠNÍK: Kde ste sedeli? V prednej miestnosti?

ANNA: Nie. Predná miestnosť bola plná. Išla som do zadnej miestnosti a sadla som si do kúta vľavo pri okne.

ČAŠNÍK: Boli ste tam sama?

ANNA: – Nie. Hovorila som s tamtým pánom v zelenom svetri. Teraz som mu povedala, čo sa mi stalo. Hľadali sme pod stolom, ale nič sme nenašli.

ČAŠNÍK: Bol tam ešte niekto?

ANNA: Keď som odchádzala, prišiel tam mladý chlapec v bielom tričku, ale teraz tu už nie je. V kúte vpravo sedela ešte jedna pani v koženej sukni.

**ČAŠNÍK:** Tá tiež pred chvíľou odišla. Žiaľbohu, nedá sa nič robiť.  
Budete to musieť ohlásiť na políciu.

## Vocabulary

|                     |                     |                      |                            |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>britský</b>      | British             | <b>polícia</b>       | the police                 |
| <b>cestovný pas</b> | passport            | <b>na políciu</b>    | at the police<br>(station) |
| <b>čierny</b>       | black               | <b>predný</b>        | front                      |
| <b>chlapec</b>      | boy, lad            | <b>stratíť pf</b>    | to lose                    |
| <b>kožený</b>       | leather <i>adj.</i> | <b>s tamtým</b>      | with that man              |
| <b>kút</b>          | corner              | <b>pánom</b>         |                            |
| <b>miestnosť</b>    | room                | <b>taška</b>         | bag                        |
| <b>odchádzať</b>    | to go away          | <b>v tejto taške</b> | in this bag                |
| <b>ohlásiť pf</b>   | to report           | <b>tričko</b>        | t-shirt                    |
| <b>okno</b>         | window              | <b>zadný</b>         | back                       |
| <b>peňaženka</b>    | purse               | <b>zelený</b>        | green                      |
| <b>plný</b>         | full                |                      |                            |

## Dialogue 2

*Anna asks about the nearest police station*

**ANNA:** Kde je tu policajná stanica?

**ČAŠNÍK:** Hned' za rohom. Nie je to ďaleko. Ked' vyjdete z kaviarne, pôjdete do ťava a prejdete cez hlavnú ulicu. Hned' naproti starému kostolu, za obchodným domom, pôjdete doprava. Policajná stanica je v modernej budove hned' vedľa starej pošty.

**ANNA:** Ďakujem vám pekne. Hned' tam idem. Do videnia.

**ČAŠNÍK:** Počkajte, čo to tu leží pod pultom? Čašníčka tam niekedy niečo dáva. Slečna, vy máte ale štastie! Cestovný pas – a čierna peňaženka!

**ANNA:** Museli mi vypadnúť z tašky, keď som platila! Veľmi pekne vám ďakujem!

**ČAŠNÍK:** Rado sa stalo. Vy ste Angličanka?

**ANNA:** Hej, Angličanka.

**ČAŠNÍK:** Ale viete dobre po slovensky!

**ANNA:** Mám matku Angličanku a otca Slováka.

**ČAŠNÍK:** Nemohli by sme sa niekedy stretnúť? ...

## Vocabulary

|                          |                  |                      |  |
|--------------------------|------------------|----------------------|--|
| <b>budova</b>            | building         | <b>pošta</b>         | post-office                                |
| <b>čašníčka</b>          | waitress         | <b>prejdete pf</b>   | you('ll) cross                             |
| <b>doleva</b>            | to the left      | <b>pult</b>          | counter, bar                               |
| <b>doprava</b>           | to the right     | <b>rado sa stalo</b> | happy to oblige<br>(lit. glad it happened) |
| <b>hlavný</b>            | main             | <b>slečna</b>        | Miss                                       |
| <b>ležať</b>             | to lie           | <b>stanica</b>       | station                                    |
| <b>moderný</b>           | modern           | <b>vedľa + gen.</b>  | next to                                    |
| <b>naproti + dat.</b>    | opposite         | <b>vyjdete pf</b>    | you('ll) go out                            |
| <b>obchodný dom</b>      | department store | <b>vypadnúť pf</b>   | to fall out                                |
| <b>počkajte!</b>         | wait!            |                      |  |
| <b>pôjdete</b>           | you('ll) go      |                      |  |
| <b>policajná stanica</b> | police-station   |                      |  |

## Language points

### Colours

'Colour' is **farba**. Colour adjectives are often needed for describing things.

**Hľadám košel'u. – Akú chcete farbu?**

I'm looking for a shirt. – What colour do you want?

**Nemáte to v inej farbe?**

Don't you have it in another colour?

**Akú to má farbu?**

What colour is it? (lit. What colour does it have?)

Here are some common colour adjectives:

|                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>čierny, biely</b>         | black, white           |
| <b>modrý/belasý</b>          | blue/light blue        |
| <b>červený, žltý, zelený</b> | red, yellow, green     |
| <b>hnedý, sivý/šedivý</b>    | brown, grey            |
| <b>ružový, oranžový</b>      | (rose-)pink, orange    |
| <b>fialový, béžový</b>       | (violet-)purple, beige |

**Aké máte auto? – Malý fiat.**

What kind of car do you have? – A little Fiat.

**Akú má farbu? – Je červený.** What colour is it? – It's red.

**Akú má košeľu? – Fialovú.**

What kind of shirt does he have/is he wearing? – A purple one.

**Tráva je zelená.**

The grass is green.

**Obloha je modrá/belasá.**

The sky is blue.

**Kvetina je žltá.**

The flower is yellow.

**Majú farebný televízor.**

They have a colour TV set.

**Kúpil čiernobiely film.**

He bought a black and white film.

## 'This' and 'that'

The basic shared adjective for 'that/this' is **ten**, **tá**, **to**. We have met the neuter form as a general word for 'that/this (thing)'. It often corresponds to English 'it':

**Čo je to?**

What is that/this?

**To je dom.**

That/This is a house. It's a house.

**Je to kniha?**

Is that/it a book?

**Áno, to je kniha.**

Yes, it is a book.

As an adjective **ten**, **tá**, **to** is an unemphatic 'that/this':

**Kto je ten študent?**

Who is that/this student?

**Kde je tá kniha?**

Where is that/this book?

**Kde je to mesto?**

Where is that/this town?

For an emphatic 'this (here)' you add **-to**, producing **tento**, **táto**, **toto**, etc.:

**Táto kniha je veľmi dobrá.** This (this here) book is very good.

For an emphatic 'that (there)' you add **tam-** on the front instead:

**Tamtá kniha nie je dobrá.** That (that there) book is not good.

The two accusatives are male **toho** and feminine **tú**. The emphatic male form **tento** takes the accusative form **tohto**:

**Vidíte toho (tohto, tamtoho) študenta?**

Do you see this/that student?

**Vidíte tú (túto, tamtú) knihu?**

Do you see this/that book?

## Adjectives in different cases

Masculine and neuter adjectives mostly share endings. The box shows forms of **(to) malé mesto** '(that) little town':

|                     |                               |             |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
| <i>genitive</i>     | <b>do (toho) malého mesta</b> | into ...    |
| <i>dative</i>       | <b>k (tomu) malému mestu</b>  | towards ... |
| <i>locative</i>     | <b>v (tom) malom meste</b>    | in          |
| <i>instrumental</i> | <b>za (tým) malým mestom</b>  | beyond ...  |

For males, as always, the accusative is the same as the genitive:

**Poznáte toho mladého človeka?**  
Do you know that young person?

Feminine adjectives have fewer different endings. The example shows **(tá) malá záhrada** '(that) little garden':

|                     |                                |              |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>genitive</i>     | <b>do (tej) malej záhrady</b>  | to, into ... |
| <i>dative</i>       | <b>k (tej) malej záhrade</b>   | towards ...  |
| <i>locative</i>     | <b>v (tej) malej záhrade</b>   | in ...       |
| <i>instrumental</i> | <b>za (tou) malou záhradou</b> | beyond ...   |

The 'rhythmic law' operates as before (é – e, ý – y):

**krásne mesto, do krásneho mesta, za krásnym mestom**

### Exercise 1

Correct these statements about Dialogues 1 and 2:

- 1 Anna stratila knihu.
- 2 Sadla si do kúta vpravo pri okne.
- 3 Prišiel tam starý pán v čiernom tričku.
- 4 Policajná stanica je v starej budove hneď vedľa kostola.
- 5 Anna má otca Angličana a matku Slovenku.

### Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the right forms of adjectives and translate into English:

- 1 Elena má \_\_\_\_\_ tašku. (*black*)

- 2 Juraj má \_\_\_\_\_ tričko. (*white*)
- 3 Vľavo sedí pani v \_\_\_\_\_ sukni. (*red*)
- 4 Vpravo stojí pán v \_\_\_\_\_ svetri. (*brown*)
- 5 Anna čaká v \_\_\_\_\_ aute. (*that blue*)
- 6 Jozef býva v \_\_\_\_\_ dome. (*that beautiful yellow*)

### **Exercise 3**

You are giving directions and need to say in Slovak:

- 1 To the left on the main street.
- 2 Opposite the big department store.
- 3 In the old building next to the post-office.
- 4 Just round the corner in front of the old church.
- 5 In the back room in the corner on the left.
- 6 In that little street opposite the police station.
- 7 You cross the street, then you go to the right.
- 8 The station? It's not far, you go to the left, then across the bridge.

### **Dialogue 3**

*Katka is writing to a French student, but they don't share the same interests*

- Ivan: Ako sa máš, Katka? Vyzeráš smutne! Píšeš list? Komu?
- Katka: Písem Francúzovi, tomu študentovi, vieš, ktorý bol u Martina vlani.
- Ivan: Myslíš Pierra?
- Katka: Áno. Neviem, čo mu mám písť. O kom a o čom. Nikoho tu vlastne nepozná. A ani nemá nejaký veľký záujem o Slovensko. Miluje šport, futbal a iné, čo ja nenávidím. Strašne rád počúva vážnu hudbu, hrá na klavíri, má rád aj súčasné maliarstvo, kým ja o modernom umení a váznej hudbe neviem takmer nič!

### **Vocabulary**

|                      |                                    |                   |                 |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| <b>a iné, čo ...</b> | and other (suchlike),<br>which ... | <b>Francúz</b>    | Frenchman       |
| <b>čo, o čom</b>     | what, about what                   | <b>kto, o kom</b> | who, about whom |

|                   |                 |                      |                     |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| <b>kým</b>        | while           | <b>nikto, nikoho</b> | nobody              |
| <b>maliarstvo</b> | painting        | <b>smutne</b>        | sad(ly)             |
| <b>mám</b>        | here = I should | <b>súčasný</b>       | contemporary        |
| <b>milovať</b>    | to love         | <b>u + gen.</b>      | at (person's house) |
| <b>nenávidieť</b> | to hate         | <b>vlani</b>         | last year           |
| <b>nejaký</b>     | some, any       | <b>vlastne</b>       | actually, in fact   |

## Dialogue 4

*Ivan just hates writing letters. Maybe he's a bit jealous ...*

- IVAN:** Osobne tiež nenávidím takéto písanie, ved' vieš. Preto nikomu nikdy nič nepíšem, dokonca aj keď mám niekoho skutočne rád, alebo máme aspoň niečo spoločné. Niekam napríklad ideš: musíš tej kamarátke niečo napísať, lebo na to čaká. Hľadáš peknú pohľadnicu, s nejakou peknou krajinkou, vyberáš dlho, nemajú takmer nič, celý autobus čaká, napokon si predsa len dáku rýchlo vyberieš, kúpiš si známku a zistíš, že si jednoducho stratil adresu!
- KATKA:** Ty si úplne nemožný! Ale keď mu nič nenaďšem, prestane sa so mnou stýkať!
- IVAN:** A je ten Francúz tak mimoriadne krásny a inteligentný? Aha, už viem, jeho otec je bohatý bankár, zatiaľ čo ja som len chudobný Slovák.

## Vocabulary

|                        |                 |                      |                                |
|------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>aspoň</b>           | at least        | <b>nikto, nikomu</b> | nobody, to nobody              |
| <b>bankár</b>          | banker          | <b>osobne</b>        | personally                     |
| <b>bohatý</b>          | rich            | <b>písanie</b>       | writing                        |
| <b>dáky</b>            | some or other   | <b>pohľadnica</b>    | postcard                       |
| <b>dokonca (aj)</b>    | even            | <b>prestať/</b>      | to stop (doing)                |
| <b>chudobný</b>        | poor            | <b>prestane pf</b>   |                                |
| <b>jednoducho</b>      | simply          | <b>preto</b>         | for that reason,<br>that's why |
| <b>krajinka</b>        | landscape       |                      |                                |
| <b>mimoriadne</b>      | extraordinarily | <b>skutočne</b>      | actually, really               |
| <b>napríklad</b>       | for example     | <b>so mnou</b>       | with me                        |
| <b>nemožný</b>         | impossible      | <b>stýkať sa</b>     | to be in touch                 |
| <b>niekto, niekoho</b> | somebody        | <b>takýto</b>        | this kind of, such             |

|                   |                      |                  |                           |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>úplne</b>      | entirely, completely | <b>zatiaľ čo</b> | while                     |
| <b>vyberať</b>    | to choose            | <b>zistíť</b>    | to find out,<br>ascertain |
| <b>vybrať/</b>    | to choose            | <b>známka</b>    | stamp                     |
| <b>vyberie pf</b> |                      |                  |                           |

## Language points

### 'What', 'who' and 'that/this'

We have met **čo?** 'what?' and **kto?** 'who?' already. They have other case forms very much like neuter **to** 'that/this (thing)'. Compare forms of **to**, **čo** and **kto**:

|                     |                            |                   |
|---------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>genitive</i>     | <b>toho, čoho, koho</b>    | of that/what/whom |
| <i>dative</i>       | <b>tomu, čomu, komu</b>    | to ...            |
| <i>locative</i>     | <b>o tom, o čom, o kom</b> | about ...         |
| <i>instrumental</i> | <b>(s) tým, čím, kým</b>   | by/with ...       |

Accusative **koho** 'whom' is the same as the genitive:

**Koho hľadáš?** Who are you looking for?

Note how English commonly puts words like 'about' and 'for' at the end of sentences like these:

**O čom hovoríš?**

What are you talking about? = About what ...?

**O kom hovoríš?**

Who are you talking about? = About whom ...?

**Komu varíš obed?**

Who are you cooking lunch for? = For whom ...?

### 'Somebody' and 'nobody'

The prefix **nie-** 'some-' (sometimes **da-**) contrasts with the negative prefix **ni-** 'no-' in words from **čo?** 'what?' and **kto?** 'who?'

|                      |                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>niekto, dakto</b> | somebody, somebody or other   |
| <b>niečo, dačo</b>   | something, something or other |
| <b>nikto/nik</b>     | nobody                        |
| <b>nič</b>           | nothing                       |

They have other forms just like **čo** and **kto**. Verbs with **nikto**, **nič** are always negative!

**Nikoho nemá rád.**

He likes nobody/doesn't like anybody (*lit.* He doesn't like nobody).

**Nehovorí o ničom.**

He talks about nothing/doesn't talk about anything (*lit.* he doesn't talk about nothing).

### 'Somewhere', 'nowhere', etc.

A whole series of terms for 'some-' and 'no-' are derived from other question words. **Kde?** 'Where?' (**Kde je Janko?** 'Where is Janko?'):

|                      |                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>niekde, dakde</b> | somewhere, somewhere or other |
| <b>nikde</b>         | nowhere                       |

**Kam?** 'Where to?' (**Kam ide?** 'Where is he going?'):

|               |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| <b>niekam</b> | somewhere |
| <b>nikam</b>  | nowhere   |

**Kedy?** 'When?' (**Kedy máš čas?** 'When do you have time?'):

|                        |           |
|------------------------|-----------|
| <b>niekedy, dakedy</b> | sometimes |
| <b>nikdy (!)</b>       | never     |

**Aký?** 'What kind of' (**Aký máš dom?** 'What kind of a house do you have?')

|                                |                    |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>nejaký (!), dajaký/dáky</b> | some, some kind of |
| <b>nijaký (or žiadny)</b>      | no, no kind of     |

### Adverbs

Adverbs often end in **-o** and can be formed from adjectives in this way:

|              |             |   |              |                 |
|--------------|-------------|---|--------------|-----------------|
| <b>lahký</b> | light, easy | → | <b>lahko</b> | lightly, easily |
| <b>dlhý</b>  | long        | → | <b>dlho</b>  | for a long time |

Others end in **-e**, especially if the adjective ending is **-ný** or **-itý**:

|                 |            |   |                 |                |
|-----------------|------------|---|-----------------|----------------|
| <b>výborný</b>  | excellent  | → | <b>výborne</b>  | excellently    |
| <b>pekný</b>    | fine, nice | → | <b>pekne</b>    | finely, nicely |
| <b>okamžitý</b> | immediate  | → | <b>okamžite</b> | immediately    |

Similarly: **dobre** 'well', **zle** 'badly'.

Some have competing forms:

**Idem rýchlo/rýchle.** I go quickly.

Adjective types **-ský** or **-cký** have adverbs ending **-y**. We have met these for languages:

**slovenský jazyk: Nehovorí po slovensky.**

He doesn't speak (in) Slovak.

Similarly, **letecký** 'air-' gives **letecky** 'by air' (e.g. used on a letter).

## Instrumental 'as'

Note a special use of the instrumental to mean something like 'as' after the verb 'to be'. It tends to be used for someone/something *functioning as*, or being *in the role of something* (rather than *being it in a permanent sense*):

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Čím je tvoj otec?</b>     | [As] what is your father?    |
| <b>Môj otec je učiteľom.</b> | My father is [as] a teacher. |

## Exercise 4

Translate the following into Slovak:

Who was Viera talking about? She was talking about Pavol. Who was she talking with? She was talking with the teacher. He knows nothing about Pavol. Nobody knows anything about that teacher. He lives somewhere in Petržalka, but he never talks about anything. Viera talks very quickly, sometimes she talks for a very long time:

- Are you going anywhere, Viera?
- No, today I'm not going anywhere.

**Exercise 5**

First study Dialogue 5, then come back and translate the following into Slovak:

- 1 I'm sorry, I didn't recognize you at first.
- 2 We haven't seen each other for ages!
- 3 You haven't even changed much.
- 4 I've put on weight a bit.
- 5 That's not true! You look fine.
- 6 I know your article about the Czech Republic.
- 7 Just now I'm very interested in the political situation in Central Europe, especially in Slovakia.

**Dialogue 5** 

*Ms Macdonald is trying to interview her old colleague Jozef Botto*

MACDONALDOVÁ: Dobrý deň. Chcela by som hovoriť s pánom Bottomom. Nechala som mu ráno odkaz. Tu je moja vizitka.

BOTTO: Ved' ja som Botto. Jozef Botto.

MACDONALDOVÁ: Prepáčte, ja som vás v prvej chvíli nespoznala. To sme sa dlho nevideli! Ani ste sa veľmi nezmenili.

BOTTO: Trocha som stučnel, pani Macdonaldová. Prestal som športovať. A vy ste naopak schudli.

MACDONALDOVÁ: To nie je pravda! Nie ste vôbec tučný! Vyzeráte dobre. A ja zasa nie som taká chudá! Ste autorkou knihy o dnešnom Nemecku, však? Budete sa čudovať, ale ja vás čítam. Poznám váš článok o politickej situácii v Českej republike.

MACDONALDOVÁ: Vy ste dôležitým politikom a ja som obyčajnou britskou novinárkou. Teraz ma veľmi zaujíma dnešná politická situácia v strednej Európe. Najmä na Slovensku.

BOTTO: Lutujem, pani Macdonaldová, ale nedávam interview nikomu. Ani peknej kolegyni z krásneho Škótska.

# PRAVDA

**NEZÁVISLÝ DENNÍK**

STREDA 1. SEPTEMBRA 1993

CENA 3 Sk

ROČNÍK 3 (74) ČÍSLO 203 \*\*\*

## Vocabulary

|                          |               |                          |                    |
|--------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>autor, autorka</b>    | author        | <b>politik</b>           | politician         |
| <b>článok</b>            | article       | <b>pravda, to je ...</b> | truth, that's true |
| <b>čudovať sa</b>        | to be amazed  | <b>schudnúť/</b>         | to get thin        |
| <b>dnešný</b>            | today's       | <b>schudol pf</b>        |                    |
| <b>chudý</b>             | thin          | <b>spoznať pf</b>        | to recognise       |
| <b>interview</b>         | interview     | <b>stredný</b>           | central            |
| <b>kolega, kolegynia</b> | colleague     | <b>stučniť pf</b>        | to grow fat        |
| <b>ľutovať</b>           | to be sorry   | <b>Škótsko</b>           | Scotland           |
| <b>nechať</b>            | to leave, let | <b>športovať</b>         | to play sport      |
| <b>novinár,</b>          | journalist    | <b>tučný</b>             | fat                |
| <b>novinárka</b>         |               | <b>vizitka</b>           | business card      |
| <b>obyčajný</b>          | ordinary      | <b>zaujímať</b>          | to interest        |
| <b>politický</b>         | political     | <b>zmeniť pf</b>         | to change          |

## Dialogue 6



*A bit later, things look a bit more promising*

MACDONALDOVÁ: Čo nového doma? Ako sa má Mária? Už ste sa zobrali? Máte deti?

BOTTO: Už sme sa aj rozviedli. Máme syna a dcéru.

MACDONALDOVÁ: To je smutná správa. To som nevedela. Viete čo? Začína mi byť trochu chladno. Budem už musieť ísť. Čo poviete, že by sme sa mohli zajtra stretnúť v nejakej tichej reštaurácii, vy to tu poznáte lepšie, a ...

- BOTTO: Dobre, môžeme si spolu zájsť na večeru, ale, prosím vás, žiadne interview! Na námestí Slobody, na druhom brehu rieky, je taká tichá vináreň U zlatého kríza. Môžeme sa tam stretnúť, povedzme o siedmej.
- MACDONALDOVÁ: Fajn. Tak zajtra o siedmej. Do videnia, Jozef. Už sa na to teším.

## Vocabulary

|                        |                       |                     |  |
|------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|--|
| <b>breh</b>            | shore, bank           | <b>tešiť sa na</b>  | to look forward                          |
| <b>čo nového?</b>      | what's new?           | + acc.              | to                                       |
| <b>deti</b>            | children              | <b>vináreň</b>      | winebar                                  |
| <b>fajn</b>            | fine                  | <b>zájsť</b>        | to go (call in somewhere)                |
| <b>je mi chladno</b>   | I'm cold              | <b>zlatý</b>        | golden                                   |
| <b>kríž</b>            | cross                 | <b>zobrať/</b>      | to take                                  |
| <b>lepšie</b>          | better                | <b>zoberiem pf</b>  |  |
| <b>povedzme</b>        | let's say             | <b>zobrať sa pf</b> | to get married<br>(lit. take each other) |
| <b>rozviesť sa/</b>    | to get divorced       | <b>žiadny</b>       | no                                       |
| <b>rozviedol sa pf</b> |                       |                     |  |
| <b>o siedmej</b>       | at seven<br>(o'clock) |                     |  |
| <b>sloboda</b>         | freedom               |                     |  |

# 10 Môžem ísť d'alej?

Can I come in?

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- give instructions
- say 'sit/lie', 'sit down/lie down'
- form the plural of nouns and adjectives
- use numbers 1–4 with nouns

## Dialogue 1

*Viera drops in on Bill Sykes one evening*

VIERA: Dobrý večer. Prepáčte, nevyrušujem?

BILL: Vôbec nie.

VIERA: Ja som Viera Krížová.

BILL: Teší ma. Som Bill. Bill Sykes.

VIERA: Ved' ja vás už poznám. Môžem ísť d'alej?

BILL: Samozrejme. Nech sa páči. Ale mám tu trochu neporiadok. Počkajte chvíľu. Trocha to upravím.

VIERA: Dobre, ja tu chvíľu počkám. Ved' viem, ako to chodí. Nemáte veľa času na upratovanie.

BILL: Pod'te d'alej a sadnite si.

VIERA: Ďakujem. Máte to tu pekné. Máte krásnu veľkú izbu.

BILL: Posad'te sa, ja zatial' niečo pripravím.

VIERA: Ale čo? Vy tu máte aj kuchyňu?

BILL: Nie, je to len kuchynský kút. Dáte si nejaké ovocie alebo čokoládu? Vypijete si?

VIERA: Čo máte?

BILL: Koňak a víno.

VIERA: Koňak ... Fíha. Napoleon. To si nemôže každý dovoliť! Kde robíte? Tuším ste novinár, že?

BILL: Na zdravie. (Štrngnú si.) Píšem pre televíziu.

## Vocabulary

|                      |                                |                    |                                    |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>čokoláda</b>      | chocolate                      | <b>štrngnúť pf</b> | to clink glasses                   |
| <b>fíha</b>          | goodness!                      | <b>tušiť</b>       | to guess, sense                    |
| <b>koňak</b>         | cognac, brandy                 | <b>upratovanie</b> | tidying-up                         |
| <b>kuchynský kút</b> | kitchen corner,<br>kitchenette | <b>upraviť pf</b>  | to put in order                    |
| <b>neporiadok</b>    | disorder                       | <b>vypiť si pf</b> | to have a drink                    |
| <b>ovocie</b>        | fruit                          | <b>vyrušovať</b>   | to disturb                         |
| <b>posaďte sa pf</b> | take a seat                    | <b>zdravie</b>     | health                             |
| <b>pripraviť pf</b>  | to prepare                     | <b>na zdravie!</b> | cheers!                            |
| <b>sadnite si pf</b> | sit down                       | <b>že?</b>         | isn't it so? (e.g.<br>aren't you?) |

## Dialogue 2



*The evening advances, they switch their 'you' form of address from **ty** to **vy**, but also become more intimate generally . . .*

BILL: Máte pravdu, nie.

VIERA: Hovoríte veľmi dobre po slovensky.

BILL: Myslíte?

VIERA: Kde ste sa tak dobre naučili?

BILL: Chodil som na hodiny slovenčiny. Mám veľmi rád aj slovenskú literatúru. Vy ste študentka? Vezmite si pomaranč!

VIERA: Vďaka. Hej, študujem ekonómiu, prvý ročník. Pozrite sa, Bill, prečo si vykáme? Nemohli by sme si začať tykať, čo poviete?

BILL: Fajn. Tak ja som Bill.

VIERA: Viera. (Štrngnú si.) Ako sa ti páčim? Nebudť taký nervózny! Neboj sa! Bozkaj ma! (O chvíľu) Už by som mala ísť domov. Čoskoro bude polnoc.

BILL: Nechod! Daj si so mnou ešte pohárik! A vezmi si jablko alebo kúsok čokolády!

VIERA: Nehnevaj sa! Nemysli si, ja nie som taká . . ., ved' vieš čo . . .

BILL: To si rozhodne nemyslím.

VIERA: Počkaj! Zapíš si aspoň telefónne číslo! A zavolaj mi! Slúb, že mi zajtra zavoláš! Povedzme, večer o šiestej, dobre?

## Vocabulary

|                 |                              |                   |   |
|-----------------|------------------------------|-------------------|---|
| báť sa/bojím sa | to be afraid                 | pozrieť sa/       | to look/look!                                 |
| neboj sa!       | don't be afraid!             | pozrite sa! pf    |   |
| bozkáť/bozkaj!  | to kiss/kiss!                | pravda            | truth   |
| telefónne číslo | phone number                 | mať pravdu        | to be right, ( <i>lit.</i><br>have the truth) |
| čoskoro         | soon                         | ročník            | year (of studies)                             |
| hnevať sa       | to be angry                  | rozhodne          | definitely                                    |
| nehnevaj sa!    | don't be angry!              | sľúbiť/sľúb! pf   | to promise/<br>promise!                       |
| hodiny          | hours, classes               | o šiestej         | at six (o'clock)                              |
| chod!           | go!                          | taký              | so (with an<br>adjective)                     |
| jablko          | apple                        | tykať si          | to say <b>ty</b>                              |
| mnou            | me                           | vezmi si!         | take! have!                                   |
| naučiť sa pf    | to learn                     | vezmíte si! pf    |   |
| nebud!          | don't be!                    | však              | here = are you?                               |
| nemysli si!     | don't think,<br>imagine!     | vykať si          | to say <b>vy</b>                              |
| nervózny        | nervous, tense               | zapísat/zapiš! pf | to note down/<br>note down!                   |
| o chvíľu        | in a while, a<br>while later | zavolaj mi! pf    | call me!                                      |
| počkaj! pf      | wait!                        |                   |   |
| polnoc          | midnight                     |                   |   |
| pomaranč        | an orange                    |                   |   |

## Language points

### Giving orders

The imperative issues commands or instructions: 'Read!' 'Work!'

The Slovak verb may be imperfective or perfective, depending on the meaning (e.g. activity or complete act).

Imperatives are basically the present form with no ending, or (more precisely) the 'they' form minus **-ú/-ia**. (Thus, **á**-type verbs take the ending **-aj!**, **-ovať** verbs take **-uj!**)

For a person or people addressed as **vy**, just add **-te** to the basic form:

|          |                   |             |        |
|----------|-------------------|-------------|--------|
| Čítajú.  | Čítaj! Čítajte!   | They read.  | Read!  |
| Píšu.    | Píš! Píšte!       | They write. | Write! |
| Pracujú. | Pracuj! Pracujte! | They work.  | Work!  |

Final **d**, **t**, **n**, **l** are always soft (**d'**, **t'**, **ň**, **l'**). Final **j** is lost after **i**, **y**:

**Chodia.**  
**Pijú.**

**Chod!** **Chod'te!**  
**Pi!** **Pite!**

They go.  
They drink.

Go!  
Drink!

To say 'let us, let's', replace **-te** by **-me**:

**Čítajme!**

Let's read!

Note these individually:

**Bud!** **Bud'te!** Be!

**Povedz!** **Povedzte!** Tell! and **Jedz!** **Jedzte!** Eat!

**Pod!** **Podte!** Come! – the opposite of **Chod!** **Chod'te** Go!

## Long imperatives

Without an ending, some imperatives would end unpronounceably or awkwardly, e.g. the verbs **spať** (*present: spím... spia*) 'to sleep', **sadnúť si** (*sadnem si... sadnú si*) *pf* 'to sit down', **vziať** (*vezmem... vezmú*) *pf* 'to take'.

For these you have to form long imperatives in **-i!** **-ite!** (and **-ime!**):

**Sadni si!** **Sadnite si!**

Sit down!

**Spi!** **Spite!**

Sleep!

**Vezmi!** **Vezmite si!**

Take!

## 'Sit' and 'lie' – 'sit down' and 'lie down'

**Sedieť/sedím** 'to sit' and **ležať/ležím** 'to lie' refer to fixed positions:

**Sedím na stoličke.**

I am sitting on a chair.

**Ležím na posteli.**

I am lying on the bed.

Two typical (perfective) **-núť** verbs express movement into those positions: **sadnúť si/sadnem si pf** 'to sit down' and **lahnúť si/lahnem si pf** 'to lie down'.

For verbs where **-núť** follows a consonant, past forms regularly end in **-ol**, but the feminine ends in **-la**, neuter **-lo**, plural **-li**, dropping the **-o-**:

**Sadol/Sadla si na stoličku.**

He/She sat down onto the chair.

**Lahol/Lahli si na posteľ.**

He/They lay down onto the bed.

***Exercise 1***

Give these instructions in Slovak to a person you address as **vy**:

- 1 Wait a moment!
- 2 Come in and sit down!
- 3 Take a book!
- 4 Don't be afraid!
- 5 Don't be so nervous!
- 6 Don't go!
- 7 Don't be angry!
- 8 Note down the address!
- 9 Call me tomorrow!
- 10 Promise you'll call me!

***Exercise 2***

Translate the following in Slovak using the **ty** form of address:

- 1 Sorry, I'm not disturbing (you)? Can I come in?
- 2 Wait a moment!
- 3 Drink (it) up!
- 4 You ought to go home now.
- 5 Look, Viera, why do you call me **vy**?
- 6 Have another glass with me!
- 7 You were lying on the bed
- 8 You lay down on the bed.
- 9 Sorry!

***Exercise 3***

Make both **ty** and **vy** imperatives from these verbs and translate them into English:

čítať, piť, milovať, dať, nedávať, napísat, povedať, zjesť, prestať,  
vybrať, ľahnúť si

**Dialogue 3** 

*Igor is confused about whether Pavol and Michal are Slovaks or not*

IGOR: Kde sú Pavol a Michal?

ZORA: Išli von.

**IGOR:** Povedzte, sú títo dvaja Slováci alebo Česi? Vyzerajú ako bratia, ale Michal hovorí skôr ako Čech.

**ZORA:** Vôbec nie sú bratia. Ich otcovia sú priatelia a starí kolegovia. Pavol je Slovák, narodil sa v Nitre. Hovorí dobre aj po maďarsky, lebo jeho matka je Maďarka. Michal má sice slovenských rodičov, ale narodil sa v Prahe. Bývali tam dosť dlho, a potom jeho rodičia pracovali štyri roky na veľvyslanectve v Londýne. Vtedy pracovali ako diplomati a teraz sú z nich bohatí podnikatelia.

**IGOR:** Preto teda Michal dobre hovorí po anglicky.

**ZORA:** Pravdaže. Aj učitelia a profesori angličtiny si často myslia, že je Angličan. Aj jeho sestry hovoria pekne po anglicky.

## Vocabulary

|                         |                         |                        |                                |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>brat, -ia</b>        | brothers                | <b>má slovenských</b>  | he has Slovak                  |
| <b>Čech, Česi</b>       | Czechs                  | <b>rodičov</b>         | parents                        |
| <b>diplomat, -i</b>     | diplomats               | <b>rok</b>             | year                           |
| <b>dvaja</b>            | two                     | <b>skôr</b>            | rather, more<br>(like); sooner |
| <b>kolega, -ovia</b>    | colleagues              | <b>Slovák, Slováci</b> | Slovaks                        |
| <b>Londýn</b>           | London                  | <b>štyri</b>           | four                           |
| <b>Maďar, Maďarka</b>   | a Hungarian             | <b>títo dvaja</b>      | these two                      |
| <b>narodiť sa pf</b>    | to be born              | <b>učiteľ, -lia</b>    | teachers                       |
| <b>otec, otcovia</b>    | fathers                 | <b>veľvyslanectvo</b>  | embassy                        |
| <b>podnikateľ, -lia</b> | entrepreneurs           | <b>vtedy</b>           | then, at that<br>time          |
| <b>povedzte!</b>        | tell (me)!              | <b>z nich</b>          | out of/from<br>them            |
| <b>pravdaže</b>         | of course               | <b>sú z nich</b>       | they've become                 |
| <b>priateľ, -lia</b>    | friends                 |                        |                                |
| <b>profesor, -i</b>     | professors,<br>teachers |                        |                                |
| <b>rodičia</b>          | parents                 |                        |                                |

## Dialogue 4



*Igor helps Zora lay the table; and the talk turns to clothing*

**IGOR:** Prinesiem ešte nože a vidličky. Sú tam lyžice?

**ZORA:** Áno. Už sú na stole. Buďte taký láskavý, prineste aj nejaké taniere a tie veľké poháre!

**IGOR:** Michal a Pavol sa tak pekne obliekajú. Kupujú si drahé

oblečenie: krásne nohavice, kravaty a saká. Asi chcú vyzerať ako praví Angličania!

ZORA: A vy?

IGOR: Radšej nosím džínsy a staré tričká alebo svetre.

ZORA: A topánky?

IGOR: V zime nejaké staré čižmy a v lete sandále.

ZORA: A čo klobúky?

IGOR: Tie vôbec nikdy nenosím! Ani čiapky, aj keď je sneh a tuhý mráz.

ZORA: Ste vy normálny? Nemrznú vám uši?

IGOR: Možno som trochu blázon, ale mám kožené rukavice a teplý šál a to mi stačí.

ZORA: No, aspoň vám ruky nemrznú!

## Vocabulary

|                            |                 |   |                      |
|----------------------------|-----------------|---|----------------------|
| <b>a čo?</b>               | and what about? | <b>priniesť/</b><br><b>prinesiem pf</b> | to bring             |
| <b>Angličan, -ia</b>       | Englishmen      | <b>ruka, -y</b>                         | hand, hands.         |
| <b>blázon</b>              | madman          | <b>rukavica, -e</b>                     | glove, gloves        |
| <b>čiapka, -y</b>          | cap, caps       | <b>sako, -á</b>                         | jacket, jackets      |
| <b>čižma, -y</b>           | boot, boots     | <b>sandál, -e</b>                       | sandal, sandals      |
| <b>džínsy</b>              | jeans           | <b>sneh</b>                             | snow                 |
| <b>klobúk, -y</b>          | hat, hats       | <b>stačiť</b>                           | to be enough         |
| <b>kravata, -y</b>         | tie, ties       | <b>sveter, -tre</b>                     | sweater,<br>sweaters |
| <b>bud'te tak láskavý!</b> | be so kind!     | <b>šál</b>                              | scarf                |
| <b>lyžica, -e</b>          | spoon, spoons   | <b>tanier, -e</b>                       | plate, plates        |
| <b>možno</b>               | maybe           | <b>teplý</b>                            | warm                 |
| <b>mráz</b>                | frost           | <b>tie</b>                              | those                |
| <b>mrznúť</b>              | to freeze       | <b>tričko, -á</b>                       | t-shirt, t-shirts    |
| <b>normálny</b>            | normal          | <b>tuhý</b>                             | hard                 |
| <b>nosíť</b>               | to carry, wear  | <b>uši</b>                              | ears                 |
| <b>nôž, nože</b>           | knife, knives   | <b>vám</b>                              | to you               |
| <b>oblečenie</b>           | clothes         | <b>vidlička, -y</b>                     | fork, forks          |
| <b>pohár, -e</b>           | glass, glasses  |   |                      |
| <b>pravý</b>               | true            |   |                      |

## Language points

### Human male plurals

Nouns for human males have a basic plural ending in **-i**:

**To je kamarát – To sú kamaráti.**

That's a friend – Those (*lit. that*) are friends.

**To je študent – To sú študenti.**

That's a student – Those are students.

You have to change **k** to **c**, and **ch** to **s**:

**Slovák – Slováci**

Slovaks

**Čech – Česi**

Czechs

But some types have a plural ending **-ia** or **-ovia**:

**-an:**      **Američan – Američania**      Americans

**-tel:**      **učiteľ – učitelia**      teachers

**-a:**      **kolega – kolegovia**      colleagues

**-o:**      **strýko – strýkovia**      uncles

Also: **bratia, otcovia, synovia** ‘brothers, fathers, sons’, and others.

Noun surnames have plural **-ovci**: **Novák – Novákovci** ‘the Nováks’.

### Neuter plurals

Neuters have the plural ending **-á** (soft **-ia**):

|                      |         |                            |         |
|----------------------|---------|----------------------------|---------|
| <b>mesto – mestá</b> | towns   | <b>námestie – námestia</b> | squares |
| <b>okno – okná</b>   | windows | <b>pole – polia</b>        | fields  |

After a long vowel **-á** shortens (rhythmic law!): **miesto – miesta** ‘places’.

### Other plurals

Masculine nouns for things (and animals) and feminine nouns have plural **-y**:

**dom – domy**

houses

**stôl – stoly**

tables

**žena – ženy**

women

But after soft consonants **-e**:

|                      |         |
|----------------------|---------|
| <b>nôž – nože</b>    | knives  |
| <b>ulica – ulice</b> | streets |

The feminine **-ost'** type has plural **-i:**

|                          |        |
|--------------------------|--------|
| <b>radost' – radosti</b> | joys   |
| <b>noc – noci</b>        | nights |

## Male object forms

Only nouns for male human beings have a separate accusative plural form. It regularly ends in **-ov:**

**Učím Američanov a Slovákov.** I teach Americans and Slovaks.  
**Učím študentov a kolegov.** I teach students and colleagues.

A few male animal nouns can also be treated as if ‘male human’ in the plural:

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>pes – psi</b> (or <b>psy</b> ), <i>acc.</i> <b>psov</b> (or <b>psy</b> )          | dogs  |
| <b>vták – vtáci</b> (or <b>vtáky</b> ), <i>acc.</i> <b>vtákov</b> (or <b>vtáky</b> ) | birds |

N.B. In the singular, male animal nouns *are* regularly treated grammatically like human males, e.g. **Vidím psa** ‘I see a dog’.

## Plural adjectives

Male adjectives have plural **-í**, accusative **-ých:**

**Kde sú tí americkí študenti?**  
 Where are those American students?

**Vidiš tých anglických študentov?**  
 Do you see those English students?

Otherwise the plural is **-é**. ‘Those’ is **tie:**

|                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>To sú tie pekné domy.</b> | That's those nice houses. |
| <b>Majú veľké autá.</b>      | They have big cars.       |

The rhythmic law operates, as usual:

|                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>Nie sme hlúpi.</b>          | We are not stupid.       |
| <b>Máme hlúpych študentov.</b> | We have stupid students. |
| <b>Deti nie sú hlúpe.</b>      | Children are not stupid. |



5. 4. 1994  
Ročník  
5 (9)  
Cena 3 Sk

# SLOVENSKÉ 13/94 NÁRODNÉ NOVINY

## Numbers 'one' to 'four'

Basic numbers 'one' to 'four' are **jeden, dva, tri, štyri**.

**Jeden** has a feminine form **jedna** (accusative **jednu**) and neuter **jedno**. Other singular forms are like regular adjectives:

**Mám jeden dom a jedno auto.**

I have only one house and one car.

**Býva tam len jedna žena.**

Only one woman lives there.

**Mám jednu dcéru a jedného syna.**

I have one daughter and one son.

**Dva** has a feminine/neuter form **dve**:

**Karol má dva domy.**

Karol has two houses.

**Karol má dve sestry.**

Karol has two sisters.

Male nouns take special forms **dvaja** 'two', **traja** 'three', **štyria** 'four', with accusatives **dvoch**, **troch** and **štyroch**:

**Boli tam dvaja študenti.**

There were two students there.

**Prišli traja, štyria učitelia.**

Three, four teachers arrived.

**Karol má dvoch bratov.**

Karol has two brothers.

## Exercise 4

Give the plurals of the following and translate into English:

- 1 Slovák, Čech, Maďar, Angličan, učiteľ, brat, otec, syn
- 2 Slovenka, Češka, Maďarka, Angličanka, učiteľka, matka, sestra, dcéra
- 3 stôl, nôž, vidlička, lyžica, tanier
- 4 pekná kravata, veľký pohár, krásne mesto, biele sako, čierny klobúk

### **Exercise 5**

Translate these sentences into Slovak, watching out for plurals:

- 1 Do you buy English, Czech or Hungarian buses?
- 2 He chose some pretty postcards.
- 3 These old houses have beautiful gardens.
- 4 Do you like modern buildings?
- 5 I like old castles, churches, museums and concerts.
- 6 Adriana likes cafés, winebars and expensive restaurants.
- 7 I need three stamps for (onto) letters to England.
- 8 His friends read American novels.
- 9 They like Italian films and German cars.

### **Exercise 6**

Fill in the blanks with the words suggested and translate:

- 1 Janko má \_\_\_\_\_ autá. (*two*)
- 2 Títo \_\_\_\_\_ študenti nie sú \_\_\_\_\_. (*three American, stupid*)
- 3 Mám \_\_\_\_\_ bratov a \_\_\_\_\_ syna. (*four, one*)
- 4 Karol má \_\_\_\_\_ slovenčiny. (*two male teachers*)
- 5 Jozef má \_\_\_\_\_ slovenčiny. (*two female teachers*)
- 6 To sú veľmi \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ džínsy. (*old, ugly*)
- 7 Karol pracoval tri \_\_\_\_\_ v Bratislave. (*years*)
- 8 Títo \_\_\_\_\_ bratia boli \_\_\_\_\_ priatelia. (*two, good*)
- 9 Tieto \_\_\_\_\_ sestry sú veľmi \_\_\_\_\_ priateľky. (*two, good*)

### **Reading 1**

*It is night and all is peaceful in the Mikos' bedroom*

Je noc a v izbe je takmer tma, ale vonku za oblokom svieti mesiac a hviezdy. Domy a ulice vyzerajú smutno. Ľudia spia, aj Mikovci spia, lebo sú tri hodiny.

V izbe sú dve posteľe, dva nočné stolíky a stôl. Na dlážke sú dva koberce a na bielej stene visia štyri obrazy. Pod stolom ležia dve čierne mačky a biely pes. Mačky spia, ale pes stráži dom. Pod oknom sú dve kreslá a pri stole tri biele stoličky. Zo stropu visia dve lampy a sedí tam veľký čierny pavúk.

## Vocabulary

|                      |                     |                 |          |
|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------|
| <b>dva, dve</b>      | two                 | <b>pavúk</b>    | spider   |
| <b>hviezda</b>       | star                | <b>pes</b>      | dog      |
| <b>lampa</b>         | lamp                | <b>stena</b>    | wall     |
| <b>ľudia</b>         | people              | <b>stolička</b> | chair    |
| <b>mačka</b>         | cat                 | <b>strážiť</b>  | to guard |
| <b>Miko, Mikovci</b> | the Mikos           | <b>strop</b>    | ceiling  |
| <b>nočný stolík</b>  | night/bedside table | <b>svietiť</b>  | to shine |
| <b>oblok</b>         | window              | <b>tri</b>      | three    |
| <b>obraz</b>         | picture             | <b>visieť</b>   | to hang  |

## Reading 2

*Suddenly the alarm clock rings . . . Pavol has to catch a train*

Zrazu zazvoní budík. Oľga sa zobudí hneď, ale Pavol spí ďalej. Pavol, zobud' sa! – povie Oľga. – Vstávaj! – Pavol sa obráti a otvorí modré oči. – Chod' do kúpeľne, umy sa, ohol' sa a rýchlo sa obleč! – Oľga, nekrič tak, nebud' na mňa zlá! – povie Pavol. – Nehnevaj sa, Pavol, ale vieš, že musíš chytiť vlak, tak sa ponáhľaj! Pavol vstáva a ide do kúpeľne. – Zavolaj mi a nezabudni si vo vlaku tašku! – O chvíľu si Oľga zase ľahne a čoskoro zaspí. Je spokojná. Zajtra má nočnú službu, ale dnes má voľný deň. Pavol už odišiel, hádam chytil vlak.

Ráno zazvoní telefón. – Haló, kto volá? – Tu je Dávid. Prišiel som včera z Viedne, tak volám z hotela. Ako sa máš? Príď ku mne dnes večer. Chcem ťa vidieť.

## Vocabulary

|                           |                |                         |                       |
|---------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>chytiť</b>             | to catch       | <b>otvoriť pf</b>       | to open               |
| <b>kričať</b>             | to shout       | <b>spokojný</b>         | contented             |
| <b>ku mne</b>             | to me/my place | <b>umyť sa pf</b>       | to wash               |
| <b>ľahnúť/Tahne si pf</b> | to lie down    | <b>vstávať/vstávaj!</b> | to get up/get up!     |
| <b>mi</b>                 | to me          | <b>zabudnúť pf</b>      | to forget             |
| <b>mňa</b>                | me             | <b>zaspať/zaspí pf</b>  | to fall asleep        |
| <b>obrátiť sa pf</b>      | to turn        | <b>zobudiť sa pf</b>    | to wake up            |
| <b>oči</b>                | eyes           | <b>zly na + acc.</b>    | nasty to              |
| <b>oholiť sa pf</b>       | to shave       | <b>zrazu</b>            | suddenly, all at once |

# 11 Nakupovanie

## Shopping

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- ask for quantities, e.g. when shopping
- use the genitive with plural nouns
- use numbers 5 and above, and cope with money
- say 'many', 'few', 'some'

### Dialogue 1

*Dušan goes shopping for cold meats and cheese*

- DUŠAN: Dobrý deň. Prosím si pätnásť deka trvanlivej salámy.
- PREDAVAČKA: V celku alebo pokrájať?
- DUŠAN: Pokrájať. A desať deka šunky.
- PREDAVAČKA: Všetko?
- DUŠAN: Dajte mi ešte desať deka bryndze, jeden oštiepok a pätnásť deka z tohto syra.
- PREDAVAČKA: Eidam? V celku?
- DUŠAN: Áno.
- PREDAVAČKA: Zapláťte to pri pokladnici.
- DUŠAN: Prosím vás, nemám nákupnú tašku, môžete mi dať igelitovú tašku?
- PREDAVAČKA: Dve koruny.
- DUŠAN: Ďakujem pekne.
- PREDAVAČKA: Nech sa páči.

### Vocabulary

bryndza

soft sheep's  
milk cheese

celok

deka

whole (piece)

decagram (10 grams)

|                        |                               |                   |                           |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>igelitová taška</b> | plastic bag                   | <b>pokladnica</b> | till, cash desk           |
| <b>koruna</b>          | crown                         | <b>pokrájať</b>   | to slice, i.e.<br>sliced? |
| <b>nákupná taška</b>   | shopping bag                  | <b>trvanlivý</b>  | durable                   |
| <b>oštiepok</b>        | a hard sheep's<br>milk cheese |                   |                           |

## Dialogue 2

*He goes on to buy some fruit*

- DUŠAN: Prosím si päť pomarančov. A kilo jabĺk.
- PREDAVAČKA: Červené alebo zelené?
- DUŠAN: Z tých malých zelených.
- PREDAVAČKA: Prajete si ešte niečo?
- DUŠAN: Päť banánov – nie, tri banány, šesť broskýň a štvrt kila marhúľ. A dajte mi ešte dve kilá zemiakov.
- PREDAVAČKA: Nechcete ešte jahody? Pozrite, aké sú krásne!
- DUŠAN: Ďakujem, nie, to je všetko. Koľko platíme?
- PREDAVAČKA: Stodvadsaťsedem korún. Nemáte drobné? Ďakujem pekne, do videnia.

## Vocabulary

|                   |                       |                        |                      |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>banán</b>      | banana                | <b>marhuľa</b>         | apricot              |
| <b>broskyňa</b>   | peach                 | <b>pozrite!</b>        | look!                |
| <b>drobné</b>     | change                | <b>stodvadsaťsedem</b> | 127                  |
| <b>ešte niečo</b> | any/something<br>else | <b>štvrt'</b>          | quarter              |
| <b>jahody</b>     | strawberries          | <b>z tých ...</b>      | some of<br>those ... |
| <b>kilo</b>       | kilogram              | <b>zemiaky</b>         | potatoes             |
| <b>koľko</b>      | how much              |                        |                      |

## Language points

### Quantities of things

When shopping for food you often need to ask for specific quantities. Quantity words are typically followed by 'of' – in Slovak by the *genitive*.

For weight you use **kilo** ‘kilogram’ (2.2 lbs) and **deka** ‘decagram’ (10 grams), an invariable form.

**Štvrt' kila**, a quarter of a kilo, is just over half a pound. **Desať** (10) **deka** is just under a quarter of a pound:

**Kúpil kilo/dve kilá cukru.**

He bought a kilo/two kilos of sugar.

**Kúpili sme pol/štvrt' kila masla.**

We bought half/quarter of a kilo of butter.

**Kúpila desať/pätnásť deka syra.**

She bought 10/15 decagrams of cheese.

For liquids you use **liter** ‘litre’ or **deci** ‘decilitre’, (a tenth of a litre), invariable.

**Kúpil liter/dva litre mlieka.**

He bought a litre/two litres of milk.

**Objednala si dve deci vína.**

She ordered two decilitres (a fifth of a litre) of wine.

## Genitive plural in -ov

The genitive plural (‘of’) form of masculine nouns ends in **-ov** (like the male accusative form). This form often appears after quantity words:

**Kúpil si kilo/dve kilá zemiakov.**

He bought a kilo/two kilos of potatoes.

Basic number forms **päť** ‘five’ upwards are also followed by the genitive plural ‘of’ form:

**Dajte mi päť pomarančov.** Give me five [of] oranges.

**Dajte mi desať litrov.** Give me ten [of] litres.

## The zero ending

Non-masculine nouns mostly have zero (i.e. *no* ending) for the genitive plural/‘of’ form. The final **-a** or **-o** is simply dropped.

However: the last vowel in the word *lengthens*. E becomes ie:

**žena: ženy → päť žien** five [of] women

**mesto: mestá → šesť miest** six [of] towns

**O** becomes ô. Others add the acute sign:

|  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| <b>hora: hory</b> → <b>deväť hôr</b>         | nine [of] mountains              |
| <b>koruna: koruny</b> → <b>sedem korún</b>   | seven [of] crowns = Slovak money |
| <b>kravata: kravaty</b> → <b>osem kravát</b> | eight [of] ties                  |
| <b>kilo: kilá</b> → <b>desať kíl</b>         | ten [of] kilos                   |
| <b>jablko: jablká</b> → <b>kilo jablk</b>    | a kilo of apples                 |

After a soft consonant **a** becomes **ia**:

|  |                  |
|--|------------------|
| <b>flaša: flaše</b> – <b>desať fliaš</b> | ten [of] bottles |
|--|------------------|

(No lengthening after long vowels, or with the ending **-ov**: **záhrady** → **do záhrad** ‘into the gardens’, **slová** → **zopár slov** ‘a couple of words’. Some foreign words don’t bother to follow this rule either, **percento** → **desať percent** ‘ten percent’.)

## Numbers 1–20

Here again are basic numerals 1–10, with those up to **dvadsať** 20. For 11–19 you roughly just add **-násť** to numbers 1–9. (The **-ť** of **päť** becomes **-t-** in **pätnásť** 15, etc.)

|                            |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 <b>jeden/jedna/jedno</b> | 11 <b>jedenásť</b>    |
| 2 <b>dva/dve</b>           | 12 <b>dvanásť</b>     |
| 3 <b>tri</b>               | 13 <b>trinásť</b>     |
| 4 <b>štyri</b>             | 14 <b>štrnásť</b> (!) |
| 5 <b>päť</b>               | 15 <b>pätnásť</b>     |
| 6 <b>šesť</b>              | 16 <b>šestnásť</b>    |
| 7 <b>sedem</b>             | 17 <b>sedemnásť</b>   |
| 8 <b>osem</b>              | 18 <b>osemnásť</b>    |
| 9 <b>deväť</b>             | 19 <b>devätnásť</b>   |
| 10 <b>desať</b>            | 20 <b>dvadsať</b>     |

As we have already noted, forms **päť** ‘five’ upwards are followed by the genitive plural (!). So you say:

|                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>Mám štyri koruny.</b>   | I have four crowns. |
| <b>but: Mám päť korún.</b> | I have five crowns. |

And, if asked **Koľko máte rokov?** ‘How old are you?’ (lit. ‘How many of years do you have?’) you can say:

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>Mám štyri roky.</b> | I’m four years old (lit. I have four years.) |
|------------------------|--|

*but: Mám dvadsať rokov.* I am twenty.

Verbs in phrases with 'five' and upwards treat the quantity as neuter singular!

**Prišlo dvadsať kamarátov.** Twenty friends came.

## Higher numerals

You will need numbers higher than 20 to cope with prices, etc.

Numbers 21–29 are formed by combination:

21 **dvadsať jeden**, 22 **dvadsať dva** . . . 29 **dvadsať deväť**,  
30 **tridsať**, 40 **štýridsať**

For 50–90 just add **-desiat** to the Slovak for 'five', etc.:

50 **päťdesiat**, 60 **šesťdesiat**, 70 **sedemdesiat**, 80 **osemdesiat**,  
90 **deväťdesiat**

'A hundred' is **sto**, 200 **dvesto**, 300 **tristo**, etc. 'A thousand' is **tisíc**, 2,000 **dvetisíc**, and so on.

'Million' is **milión**, giving **dva milióny**, **päť miliónov** . . . **tisíc miliónov = miliarda**, 'a thousand million'.

Other numbers are combinations as before:

38 **tridsaťosem**, 99 **deväťdesiatdeväť**,  
753 **sedemsto päťdesiattri** (or as one word)

### Exercise 1

Revise quantity words. You are shopping and want to ask for these quantities of things:

- 1 Four kilos of potatoes.
- 2 A quarter of a kilo of butter.
- 3 Three litres of milk.
- 4 One kilo of oranges.
- 5 Twenty decagrams of cheese.
- 6 Fifteen decagrams of bryndza.
- 7 Half a kilo of apricots.
- 8 One kilo of strawberries.
- 9 Ten decagrams of ham.
- 10 Two kilos of apples.

**Exercise 2**

Ask for these amounts of things or people, etc.

- 1 Six bananas, eight oranges and seven peaches.
- 2 Twelve bottles of beer and five bottles of white wine.
- 3 Five Slovaks and sixteen Englishmen.
- 4 Ten weeks and eleven months.
- 5 Fourteen words and four words.

**Exercise 3**

Give these prices in Slovak crowns:

- 1 3, 4, 2
- 2 5, 14, 16, 24, 40, 60, 35, 81, 99, 19
- 3 500, 300, 257, 982, 3000, 2146

**Dialogue 3** 

*Dušan is out shopping again*

- PREDAVAČKA: Čo si želáte?
- DUŠAN: Prosím si desať vajíčok, pol masla, jedno mlieko a ementálsky syr.
- PREDAVAČKA: Stačí takýto kus?
- DUŠAN: Áno, stačí.
- PREDAVAČKA: Pokrájať?
- DUŠAN: Nie, v celku.
- PREDAVAČKA: Ešte niečo? Dostali sme pekné paradajky.
- DUŠAN: Dobre, tak pol kilo paradajok. A ešte jeden biely chlieb a rožky.
- PREDAVAČKA: Koľko rožkov?
- DUŠAN: Osem rožkov. A päť žemiel.
- PREDAVAČKA: Všetko?
- DUŠAN: Moment. Čo ešte potrebujem? Aha. Päť flăsieiek piva – Zlatý bažant. A desať deka kávy – mokka.
- PREDAVAČKA: Zomliet?
- DUŠAN: Áno, a ešte, prosím vás, túto bonboniéru. Môžete mi ju zabaliť? Koľko platím?
- PREDAVAČKA: Dvestopäťdesiat korún a tridsať halierov. Áno. Nemáte tých tridsať halierov?

- DUŠAN: Počkajte, pozriem sa. Tu sú.  
 PREDAVAČKA: Tristo. Tak to je päťdesiat korún naspäť. Ďakujem.  
 Do videnia.

## Vocabulary

|                                       |                                |   |                               |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| <b>bonboniéra</b>                     | a box of chocolates            | <b>prosím vás</b>                                       | please                        |
| <b>dvestopäťdesiat</b>                | 250                            | <b>stačiť</b>   | to be enough                  |
| <b>ementálsky</b>                     | Emmental                       | <b>takýto</b>   | this kind of                  |
| <b>fľaška, päť</b>                    | bottle, 5 bottles              | <b>tridsať</b>  | 30                            |
| <b>fľašiek</b>                        |                                | <b>tristo</b>   | 300                           |
| <b>halier</b>                         | heller (100 = 1 koruna)        | <b>vajíčko, desať</b>                                   | egg, 10 eggs                  |
| <b>kus</b>                            | piece                          | <b>vajíčok</b>  |                               |
| <b>mokka</b>                          | mocca                          | <b>zabalíť pf</b>                                       | to wrap                       |
| <b>moment</b>                         | (just) a moment                | <b>žemľa, žemiel</b>                                    | round-shaped roll, [of] rolls |
| <b>naspäť</b>                         | back                           | <b>Zlatý bažant</b>                                     | Golden Pheasant               |
| <b>paradajka,</b><br><b>paradajok</b> | tomato, [of] tomatoes          | <b>zomlieť/</b><br><b>zomeliem,</b><br><b>zomlel pf</b> | (beer)<br>to grind            |
| <b>päťdesiat</b>                      | 50                             |   |                               |
| <b>pol masla</b>                      | half/half a kilogram of butter |   |                               |

## Language points

### Filler vowels

If the genitive plural would otherwise end in awkward consonants, you insert a filler vowel between the final consonants, normally **-ie-**:

**študentka** → **sedem študentiek** seven [of] female students  
**okno** → **desať okien** ten [of] windows

*But:* before **-k** the filler is **-o-**, following a long vowel (or **j**):

**vajíčko** → **šesť vajíčok** six [of] eggs  
**paradajka** → **kilo paradajok** a kilo [of] tomatoes

(Other vowels – **á, ô, e** – only occur in a few words, e.g. **jedlo** ‘food, meal’, **päť jedál** ‘five meals’.)

## Soft genitive plural -í

As a rule non-masculine soft nouns ending in a consonant or -e have a soft genitive plural ending -í.

|                                 |                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>kaviareň → veľa kaviarní</b> | lots of cafés     |
| <b>noc → päť nocí</b>           | five [of] nights  |
| <b>námestie → šesť námestí</b>  | six [of] squares  |
| <b>pole → sedem polí</b>        | seven [of] fields |

Nouns types -ia, and -ňa (after a consonant) also take this ending:

|                                       |                     |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>reštaurácia → veľa reštaurácií</b> | lots of restaurants |
| <b>kúpelňa → päť kúpeľní</b>          | five [of] bathrooms |

Note also: **dni** → **dní** ‘days’, **Ľudia** → **Ľudí** ‘people’, **deti** → **detí** ‘children’. You will come across a number of others.

## Quantity again

The genitive is much in demand after general quantity words like **veľa** ‘a lot, lots of, many’, **privel'a** ‘too much, too many’ and **málo** ‘little, few’.

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Mám veľa času.</b>           | I have a lot of time.      |
| <b>Mám privel'a času.</b>       | I have too much time.      |
| <b>Mám málo času.</b>           | I have little time.        |
| <b>Janko má veľa priateľov.</b> | Janko has lots of friends. |
| <b>Janko má málo priateľov.</b> | Janko has few friends.     |

As with higher numbers, for the verb these words count as neuter singular. Note also **kol'ko?** ‘how many?’:

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <b>Koľko tam bolo Ľudí?</b>    | How many [of] people were there?        |
| <b>Bolo tam málo Ľudí.</b>     | Few people were there.                  |
| <b>Bolo tam asi šesť Ľudí.</b> | There were about six [of] people there. |

Other such words are **niekol'ko** ‘some, several’, **mnoho** ‘many’, **tol'ko** (or **tak veľa**) ‘so many’, **pár/zopár** ‘a few, a couple’.

**Poznám len niekol'ko/zopár Slovákov.**

I know only some/a few Slovaks.

**Tol'ko Ľudí!**

So many people!

## Shops and shop signs

'A shop' is **obchod**, or **predajňa**. 'To shop' is **nakupovať**. **Nákup** is 'shopping' or 'the purchase'. **Trh, na trhu** means 'market, at the market'.

|                               |                        |                      |                       |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>SAMOOB-</b>                | self-service           | <b>citróny</b>       | lemons                |
| <b>SLUHA</b>                  | (supermarket)          | <b>paradajky</b>     | tomatoes              |
| <b>košík</b>                  | basket                 | <b>uhorky</b>        | cucumbers             |
| <b>pokladnica</b>             | till (also box-office) | <b>zemiaky</b>       | potatoes              |
| <b>platíte pri pokladnici</b> | pay at the cash desk   | <b>kapusta</b>       | cabbage               |
|                               |                        | <b>karfiol</b>       | cauliflower           |
|                               |                        | <b>mrkva</b>         | carrots               |
| <b>POTRAVINY</b>              | foodstuffs             | <b>KVETINY</b>       | flowers               |
| <b>obchod s potravinami</b>   | food shop              | <b>ruža</b>          | rose                  |
| <b>múka</b>                   | flour                  | <b>fiala</b>         | violet                |
| <b>ryža</b>                   | rice                   | <b>CHLIEB-PEČIVO</b> | bread – bakery goods  |
| <b>cukor</b>                  | sugar                  | <b>pekáreň</b>       | bakery                |
| <b>olej</b>                   | oil                    | <b>RYBA</b>          | fish                  |
| <b>maslo</b>                  | butter                 | <b>MÄSO-ÚDENINY</b>  | meat and smoked meats |
| <b>mlieko</b>                 | milk                   | <b>mäsiarstvo</b>    | butcher's             |
| <b>sýr</b>                    | cheese                 | <b>hovädzie</b>      | beef                  |
| <b>káva</b>                   | coffee                 | <b>bravčové</b>      | pork                  |
| <b>čaj</b>                    | tea                    | <b>tel'acie</b>      | veal                  |
| <b>OVOCIE-ZELENINA</b>        | fruit and vegetables   | <b>hydina</b>        | poultry               |
| <b>jablká</b>                 | apples                 | <b>kurča</b>         | chicken               |
| <b>pomaranče</b>              | oranges                |                      |                       |

Moving away from food:

|                      |            |                        |                    |
|----------------------|------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>DROGÉRIA</b>      | chemist's  | <b>ODEVY</b>           | clothes            |
| <b>mydlo</b>         | soap       | <b>dámske</b>          | ladies'            |
| <b>šampón</b>        | shampoo    | <b>pánske</b>          | men's              |
| <b>zubná pasta</b>   | toothpaste | <b>detské</b>          | children's         |
| <b>LEKÁREŇ</b>       | pharmacy   | <b>oblečenie, šaty</b> | clothes in general |
| <b>lieky</b>         | medicines  | <b>šaty</b>            | ladies' dress      |
| <b>lekár/lekárka</b> | doctor     | <b>oblek</b>           | suit               |
| <b>chorý/chorá</b>   | ill        | <b>OBUV</b>            | footwear           |

|                 |                           |                        |                   |
|-----------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>KNÍHKU-</b>  | bookshop                  | <b>cigareta/-y</b>     | cigarettes        |
| <b>PECTVO</b>   |                           | <b>POŠTA</b>           | post office       |
| <b>KNIHY</b>    | books                     | <b>známky</b>          | stamps            |
| <b>román</b>    | novel                     | <b>list</b>            | letter            |
| <b>učebnica</b> | textbook                  | <b>doporučený list</b> | registered letter |
| <b>slovník</b>  | dictionary                | <b>balík</b>           | parcel            |
| <b>NOVINY-</b>  | newspapers and            |                        |                   |
| <b>TABAK</b>    | tobacco, often<br>a kiosk |                        |                   |

### **Exercise 4**

You are shopping again and ask for these items:

- 1 Six eggs.
- 2 Five litres of milk.
- 3 Twenty decagrams of coffee.
- 4 Two kilos of tomatoes.
- 5 Six round-shaped rolls.
- 6 Five pointed-shaped rolls.

### **Exercise 5**

Fill in the blanks as suggested and translate into English:

- 1 Zostali tam desať \_\_\_\_\_. (nights)
- 2 Zostaneme tam osem \_\_\_\_\_. (days)
- 3 Má osem \_\_\_\_\_. (fields)
- 4 V Bratislave je veľa \_\_\_\_\_. (cafés)
- 5 Náš dom ma dve \_\_\_\_\_. (bathrooms)
- 6 Majú šesť \_\_\_\_\_. (children)
- 7 Poznám len zopár \_\_\_\_\_. (people)
- 8 Mám dosť málo \_\_\_\_\_. (friends)
- 9 Mám veľa \_\_\_\_\_. (time)

### **Exercise 6**

Read through quickly now, but only translate into Slovak after studying Dialogues 4 and 5 below

- 1 We have a lot of pupils, several Americans of Slovak origin and a couple of Englishmen, altogether eighteen people.

- 2 Mr Švantner has a group of beginners, ten Italians, eight Hungarians and seven French.
- 3 Mostly they are women: four Italian, six Hungarian and six French – many beginners but few advanced.
- 4 What time is it? – It's exactly seven o'clock, they should have begun by now.
- 5 What have you got in that briefcase? – About four books, ten exercise books and a kilo of potatoes.

## Dialogue 4

*Pani Bednárová and pán Minárik discuss the students on their Slovak course*

- BEDNÁROVÁ: Koľko študentov máte na slovenčinu, pán Minárik?
- MINÁRIK: Tento rok mám dosť veľa žiakov, ako zvyčajne niekoľko Američanov slovenského pôvodu a zopár Angličanov. Spolu osem ľudí. A vy?
- BEDNÁROVÁ: Ja mám skupinu začiatočníkov, jedenásť Talianov, deväť Maďarov a osem Francúzov.
- MINÁRIK: Tak veľa! To je krásne! Ale aj veľa roboty! Koľko je z toho žien?
- BEDNÁROVÁ: No, chlapov je málo, väčšinou sú to ženy. Päť Talianok, sedem Maďarieiek a päť Francúzok.
- MINÁRIK: Prirodzene mnoho začiatočníkov, ale málo pokročilých.

## Vocabulary

|                   |             |                         |              |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| <b>dosť veľa</b>  | quite a lot | <b>skupina</b>          | group        |
| <b>Francúz,</b>   | Frenchman/  | <b>spolu</b>            | (al)together |
| <b>Francúzka</b>  | woman       | <b>tak veľa</b>         | so many      |
| <b>chlap</b>      | man, guy    | <b>Talian, Talianka</b> | an Italian   |
| <b>málo</b>       | few         | <b>väčšinou</b>         | mostly       |
| <b>mnoho</b>      | many        | <b>veľa</b>             | a lot        |
| <b>niekoľko</b>   | several     | <b>začiatočník</b>      | beginner     |
| <b>pokročilý</b>  | advanced    | <b>žiak</b>             | pupil        |
| <b>pôvod</b>      | origin      | <b>zopár</b>            | a couple     |
| <b>prirodzene</b> | naturally   |                         |              |

## Dialogue 5



*Jana and Peter are at a lecture which is about to begin*

JANA: Kedy začína prednáška? Koľko je hodín?

PETER: Je presne päť hodín a desať minút. Už mali začať, o chvíľu asi skutočne začnú.

JANA: O čom je táto prednáška?

PETER: O ekonómii a dnešnej politickej situácii.

JANA: A kto prednáša?

PETER: Dvaja mladí profesori, jeden z Košíc a druhý z Bratislavы. Bude to asi dosť veľká nuda. Ekonómia nie je mojou obľúbenou tému!

JANA: Čo to máte v tej aktovke? Vyzerá strašne ťažká!

PETER: Asi šesť kníh a veľa zošitov. Ticho, už prichádzajú. Čoskoro začnú. Určite budú hovoriť minimálne tri hodiny.

## Vocabulary

|                 |                        |             |               |
|-----------------|------------------------|-------------|---------------|
| aktovka         | briefcase              | minuta      | minute        |
| hodina          | hour                   | moja, mojou | my            |
| koľko je hodín? | what time is it?       | prednášať   | to lecture    |
| Košice pl.      | town of Košice         | prednáška   | a lecture     |
| z Košíc         | from Košice            | téma        | theme         |
| mali            | here = should<br>have  | ticho!      | quiet!        |
| minimálne       | minimally, at<br>least | zošit       | exercise book |

# 12 Kol'ko je hodín?

What time is it?

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- tell the time
- use ordinal numbers up to 'twelfth'
- say forms for 'me', 'you' and 'us'
- say forms for 'self'

## Dialogue 1

*Viera wants some tennis lessons*

PAVOL: Ahoj, Viera! Koľko je hodín?

VIERA: Sú presne dve. Kam sa tak náhliš? Hľadám ťa celý deň! Chcem ti niečo povedať.

PAVOL: Idem do Univerzitnej knižnice. Nechceš ísť so mnou?

VIERA: Dobre. Pôjdem teda kus cesty s tebou. Chcem ťa poprosiť o jednu vec. Počula som totiž o tebe, že hráš tenis. Nemohol by si ma to naučiť?

PAVOL: A ty už vieš trošku hrať?

VIERA: Trošku, áno. Nepoviem o sebe, že som veľký talent, ale myslím, že som na seba dosť prísná. Budem sa veľmi snažiť.

PAVOL: Prepáč, že sa ťa na to pýtam, ale o tebe viem len to, že si študentka prvého ročníka a že rada plávaš.

VIERA: O mne vieš tak málo, lebo sme sa zoznámili len pred týždňom.

PAVOL: No dobre. Čo keby sme sa stretli zajtra poobede? Príď ku mne, povedzme, o tretej.

VIERA: O tretej nemôžem, lebo mám schôdzku so sestrou. Nemohla by som prísť tak o piatej?

PAVOL: Fajn. O piatej teda. Teším sa. Čau!

## Vocabulary

|                               |                                |                       |                              |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>čau</b>                    | bye!                           | <b>pýtať sa na</b>    | to ask ... about             |
| <b>čo keby</b>                | what if                        | + gen.                | that                         |
| <b>koľko je hodín?</b>        | what time is it?               | <b>seba, sebe</b>     | self                         |
| <b>ma</b>                     | me                             | <b>snažiť sa</b>      | to try                       |
| <b>ku/o mne</b>               | to/about me                    | <b>študentka</b>      | female student               |
| <b>so mnou</b>                | with me                        | <b>ťa</b>             | you                          |
| <b>náhliť sa</b>              | to hurry                       | <b>ti</b>             | to you                       |
| <b>naučiť pf</b>              | to teach                       | <b>o tebe</b>         | about you                    |
| <b>o tretej/jpiatej</b>       | at three, at five<br>(o'clock) | <b>s tebou</b>        | with you                     |
| <b>pôjdem</b>                 | we'll go                       | <b>tak</b>            | so; about<br>(approximately) |
| <b>poprosíť</b>               | ask for                        | <b>talent</b>         | talent                       |
| <b>o + acc. pf</b>            |                                | <b>tešíť sa</b>       | I look forward               |
| <b>pred týždňom</b>           | a week ago                     | <b>to, že ...</b>     | (the fact) that ...          |
| <b>prepáč(te)!</b>            | sorry!                         | <b>trošku</b>         | a little, a bit              |
| <b>prísny</b>                 | strict, severe                 | <b>univerzitný</b>    | university <i>adj.</i>       |
| <b>prísť, príd!</b> <i>pf</i> | come!                          | <b>več -i f.</b>      | thing                        |
| <b>prvý</b>                   | first                          | <b>zoznámiť sa pf</b> | to get to know               |

## Language points

### What time is it?

To ask 'what time is it?' you say: **Koľko je hodín?** (*lit.* 'how many is it of hours?').

For 'one' to 'four o'clock' you say:

**Je/bola jedna hodina.** It is/was one o'clock.

**Sú/boli dve, tri, štyri hodiny.** It is/was (*lit.* are/were) two, three, four o'clock.

But from 'five' up you say: **je/bolo X hodín.**

**Je/Bolo päť, šesť, sedem, osem (hodín).**

It is/was five, six, seven... o'clock

**Je deväť, desať, jedenásť, dvanásť (hodín).**

It's nine, ten, eleven, twelve.

Learn also:

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Je polnoc.</b>         | It's midnight.         |
| <b>Je poludnie.</b>       | It's midday.           |
| <b>ráno</b>               | in the (early) morning |
| <b>doobeda/dopoludnia</b> | in the morning         |
| <b>poobede/popoludní</b>  | in the afternoon       |
| <b>večer</b>              | in the evening         |

Literally, **doobeda** and **poobede** mean ‘before lunch’ and ‘after lunch’.

## ‘At what time?’ – ordinal numbers

To ask ‘at what time?’ you say:

**Kedy prišiel?** When did he come?  
**or: O kol'kej prišiel?** At what time did he come?

For ‘at one o’clock’ you say:

**O jednej (hodine).** At one (o’clock).

But for ‘at two o’clock’, etc. you say ‘at the second (hour)’, etc. in Slovak.

For this you need the *ordinal numbers*, which are:

|               |        |               |         |                   |          |
|---------------|--------|---------------|---------|-------------------|----------|
| <b>prvý</b>   | first  | <b>piaty</b>  | fifth   | <b>deviaty</b>    | ninth    |
| <b>druhý</b>  | second | <b>šiesty</b> | sixth   | <b>desiaty</b>    | tenth    |
| <b>tretí</b>  | third  | <b>siedmy</b> | seventh | <b>jedenásťty</b> | eleventh |
| <b>štvrty</b> | fourth | <b>ôsmy</b>   | eighth  | <b>dvanásťty</b>  | twelfth  |

The phrases are all in the form: **o -ej (hodine):**

**o druhej** at two, **o tretej** at three, **o štvrtnej** at four  
**o polnoci** at midnight

Work out the others yourself!

Similar time phrases use **od** ‘from’, **do** ‘until’, and **okolo** ‘around’:

**Bol tu od šiestej do ôsmej.** He was here from six till eight.  
**Odišiel okolo siedmej.** He left around seven.

## ‘Me’ and ‘you’

**Ja** ‘I’ and **ty** ‘you’ have various other forms. You have already come across some of these earlier in the book.

Note the contrast between *weak* (shorter) forms used alone and *strong* (longer) forms used after prepositions:

|                     |                               |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>accusative</i>   | <b>Vidia ma, t'a</b>          | They see me, you        |
| (+ genitive)        | <b>List pre mňa, pre teba</b> | A letter for me, you    |
|                     | <b>List odo mňa, od teba</b>  | A letter from me, you   |
| <i>dative</i>       | <b>Pomáhajú mi, ti</b>        | They help 'to' me, you  |
| (+ locative)        | <b>Idú ku mne, k tebe</b>     | They go towards me, you |
|                     | <b>Hovoria o mne, o tebe</b>  | They talk about me, you |
| <i>instrumental</i> | <b>Idú so mnou, s tebou</b>   | They go with me, you    |

*Weak forms* come roughly second position in a sentence (but after **som/si/sme/ste** and **sa/si** 'self'):

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Kto ma hľadal?</b>     | Who was looking for me? |
| <b>Kto ti to povedal?</b> | Who told 'to' you that? |

**Pýtal(a) som sa ťa, či si ma videl v kine.**  
I asked you whether you saw me in the cinema.

*Strong forms* can also be used for emphasis:

- |                      |                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Teba hľadal?</b>  | Was he looking for you?   |
| <b>Mňa nehľadal.</b> | He wasn't looking for me. |

**So** is pronounced /so/ in the phrase **so mnou** (not, as normally, /zo/). Note the added **-o** in **cezo mňa, bezo mňa, odo mňa** ('through me', 'without me', 'from me'), and **predo mnou, nado mnou, podo mnou** ('in front of me', 'above me', 'below me').

### 'Each other'

**Sa** 'self' can also mean 'each other':

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Majú sa radi.</b>   | They like each other.       |
| <b>Nemajú sa radi.</b> | They don't like each other. |

**Sa** has strong case forms similar to **ty** 'you': **pre seba** 'for self', **k sebe** 'to/for self', **so sebou** 'with self'

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Máš pred sebou ťažkú úlohu.</b>         |  |
| You have a hard task in front of yourself. |  |

- |                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Varím pre seba.</b> | I cook for myself. |
|------------------------|--------------------|

### Exercise 1

What time is it? **Koľko je hodín?** Reply in Slovak as suggested:

- 1 It's four o'clock.
- 2 It's three o'clock.
- 3 It's eleven o'clock.
- 4 It's nine o'clock.
- 5 It's midnight.

### **Exercise 2**

When? **Kedy?** At what time? **O kol'kej?** Translate the questions and reply in Slovak as suggested:

- 1 Kedy prišiel? – *He came at one o'clock.*
- 2 O kol'kej odišiel? – *He left at two o'clock.*
- 3 Kedy prišli? – *They arrived at eight o'clock.*
- 4 Kedy odišli? – *They left at midnight.*
- 5 Kedy tu boli? – *They were here from three o'clock to nine o'clock.*
- 6 Kedy prišla? – *She arrived around four.*

### **Exercise 3**

Complete with correct forms of **ma/fá** and translate into English:

- 1 Hľadajú \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Táto kniha je pre \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Hovorili často o \_\_\_\_\_ / o \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Stoja za \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Ide ku \_\_\_\_\_ / k \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Kto \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ to povedal?
- 7 Chcela \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ poprosiť o jednu vec.
- 8 Nechcel ísť so \_\_\_\_\_ /s \_\_\_\_\_.

## **Dialogue 2**

*The scene is a hotel. Pan Kolár enters and the receptionist asks him if he has a reservation*

**KOLÁR:** Dobrý deň.

**RECEPČNÁ:** Pekne vás vítam! Máte objednané izby?

**KOLÁR:** Nie. Prišli sme práve teraz z Košíc. Nemáte voľné izby?

**RECEPČNÁ:** Koľko je vás?

**KOLÁR:** Je nás päť. Potrebujeme tri izby, s kúpeľnou alebo so sprchou. Moja matka by chcela mať vlastnú izbu.

- RECEPČNÁ:** Bohužiaľ nemáme jednolôžkové izby. U nás sú len dvojlôžkové a izby pre tri osoby.
- KOLÁR:** Tak dobre, vezmeme dve izby. Vnučka môže spať so starou matkou a chlapec s nami.
- RECEPČNÁ:** Ako dlho tu zostanete?
- KOLÁR:** Dva dni. Koľko to bude stáť? Majú deti zľavy?
- RECEPČNÁ:** Áno. Moment, hneď vám poviem. Menšia izba so sprchou ... tisíc stopäťdesiat korún na deň, vrátane zľavy. Väčšia izba s kúpeľňou stojí tisíc päťstošesťdesiat. Aj raňajky sú zahrnuté v cene.
- KOLÁR:** Dobre, berieme to.

## Vocabulary

|                         |                               |                           |                  |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| <b>ako dlho?</b>        | how long?                     | <b>sprcha</b>             | shower           |
| <b>cena</b>             | price                         | <b>stará matka</b>        | grandmother      |
| <b>dni pl. of deň</b>   | days                          | <b>stáť</b>               | to cost          |
| <b>na deň</b>           | per day                       | <b>tisíc stopäťdesiat</b> | 1,150            |
| <b>dvojlôžková izba</b> | double room                   | <b>tisíc päť-</b>         | 1,560            |
| <b>jednolôžková</b>     | single room                   | <b>stošesťdesiat</b>      |                  |
| <b>izba</b>             |                               | <b>väčšia izba</b>        | bigger room      |
| <b>koľko je vás?</b>    | how many are<br>there of you? | <b>vám, vás</b>           | to you, (of) you |
| <b>menšia izba</b>      | smaller room                  | <b>vziať/vezmem pf</b>    | to take          |
| <b>nás, s nami</b>      | (of) us, with us              | <b>vítat', vítam!</b>     | welcome!         |
| <b>u nás</b>            | at us = in our<br>hotel       | <b>vlastný</b>            | own              |
| <b>objednaný</b>        | reserved,<br>ordered          | <b>vnučka</b>             | granddaughter    |
| <b>osoba</b>            | person                        | <b>vol'ná izba</b>        | vacant room      |
| <b>pre + acc.</b>       | for                           | <b>vrátane + gen.</b>     | including        |
| <b>recepčný/-á</b>      | receptionist                  | <b>zahrnutý</b>           | included         |
|                         |                               | <b>zľava</b>              | reduction        |
|                         |                               | <b>zostať/zostanem</b>    | to stay          |
|                         |                               | < <b>zostávať</b>         |                  |

## Language points

### 'We/us' and 'you'

My 'we' and vy 'you' have the following set of other forms:

|                     |                              |                         |
|---------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>accusative</i>   | <b>Vidia nás, vás</b>        | They see us, you        |
| (+ genitive)        | <b>List pre nás, pre vás</b> | A letter for us, you    |
|                     | <b>List od nás, od vás</b>   | A letter from us, you   |
| <i>dative</i>       | <b>Pomáhajú nám, vám</b>     | They help 'to' us, you  |
|                     | <b>Idú k nám, k vám</b>      | They go towards us, you |
| <i>locative</i>     | <b>Hovoria o nás, o vás</b>  | They talk about us, you |
| <i>instrumental</i> | <b>Idú s nami, s vami</b>    | They go with us, you    |

NB: Short **a** in **nami, vami!**

Basic word order for **nás, vás** is the same as for **ma, ta:**

**Kto vám pomáha?** Who is helping you?

**Pýtali sme sa vás, či ste nás videli včera v meste.**

We asked you whether you saw us in town yesterday.

**Je nás päť.** There are five of us.

*but:* **Sme traja.** We are three.

## More about telling the time

Learning to say the quarter and half hours is a bit tricky. For 'quarter past' in Slovak you refer *forward* to the next hour, unlike English:

**Je štvrt na dve.** It's a quarter *onto two* = past one.

**Je štvrt na šest.** It's a quarter *onto six* = past five.

**Je štvrt na jednu.** It's quarter *onto one* = past twelve.

Similarly, for 'half past':

**Je pol jednej.** It's half *of one* = past twelve.

**Je pol druhej.** It's half *of the second* = past one.

**Je pol tretej.** It's half *of the third* = past two.

For a 'quarter to' you say '*three-quarters to*':

**Je trištvrt na jednu.** It's *three-quarters to one* = a quarter to one.

**Je trištvrt na päť.** It's *three-quarters to five* = a quarter to five.

You can also add five or ten-minute intervals like this, using **minuta** 'minute':

**Je o päť minút osem.**

It's *in five minutes* eight = five to eight.

**Je o desať minút pol ôsmej.**

It's *in ten minutes* half past seven = twenty past seven.

**O** is also used to say 'at':

**Prišli o pol deväť.** They arrived at half past eight.

**Odišli o tri štvrté na päť.** They left at a quarter to five.

Omit a second **o** 'at' if the time phrase already starts with **o**:

**O päť minút sedem zastavil pred hotelom.**

(At) five minutes to seven he stopped in front of the hotel.

Specific delays are stated using **meškať** 'to be delayed/late' or **mať meškanie** (*lit.* 'have a delay'):

**Vlak mešká hodinu.** The train is an hour late.

**Máme meškanie dvadsať minút.**

We are twenty minutes late.

## The 24-hour clock

You may find it easier to say the time in simple numbers! This is standard with the 24-hour clock anyway:

**Je sedem hodín a pätnásť minút.**

It's 7.15 (7 o'clock and 15 minutes).

**Je trinásť desať a desať sekúnd.**

It's 13.10 and ten seconds.

**Vlak odchádza osem päť.**

The train leaves (at) 8.05.

**Chytil rýchlik o sedemnásť trinásť.**

He caught the express at 17.13.

## Exercise 4

Complete with correct forms of **nás** or **vás** and translate into English:

- 1 Nevideli \_\_\_\_\_. (*us*)
- 2 Nepomáhali \_\_\_\_\_.? (*you*)
- 3 Koľko je \_\_\_\_\_.? (*you*)

- 4 Chlapec môže hrať s \_\_\_\_\_. (*us*)
- 5 Moment, hned' \_\_\_\_\_ to poviem. (*you*)
- 6 Tento list je pre \_\_\_\_\_ (*us*)

### **Exercise 5**

**Koľko je hodín? Kedy?** What time is it? When? Reply in Slovak as suggested:

- 1 It's a quarter past five.
- 2 It's a quarter to five.
- 3 It's half past five.
- 4 They left at half past nine.
- 5 They came at half past two.
- 6 The train leaves at a quarter past eleven.
- 7 At half past one we stopped in front of the hotel.

### **Exercise 6**

You enter a hotel and try to book rooms, saying:

- 1 Do you have any rooms free?
- 2 There are six of us.
- 3 There are two of us.
- 4 We need three double rooms, with a shower.
- 5 We need one double room, with a bathroom.
- 6 Is breakfast included in the price?
- 7 Good, we('ll) take it.

## **Dialogue 3**



*Where can they park the car? Is there a restaurant?*

**KOLÁR:** Kde môžeme zaparkovať auto?

**RECEPČNÁ:** Hned' za hotelom je malé parkovisko. Tu sa zapíšte do knihy. Prineste si batožinu, dajte mi pasy a dám vám kľúče. Vpravo je výťah, hned' pôjdem s vami a ukážem vám izby. Sú naozaj pekné, na treťom poschodí, s krásnym výhľadom na rieku, zámok a les. Izby majú aj telefón, televízor a chladničku. Raňajky sa podávajú od pol siedmej do deviatej.

**KOLÁR:** Môžeme tu aj večerať?

- RECEPČNÁ:** Bohužiaľ nemáme vlastnú reštauráciu. O kus ďalej na námestí je veľmi pekná vináreň, hneď naproti obchodnému domu, v uličke za kostolom. Je to odtiaľto len pár krokov. Ukážem vám cestu, keď pôjdete von.
- KOLÁR:** Neviete, koľko je hodín? Zastavili sa mi hodinky.
- RECEPČNÁ:** O päť minút trištvrté na osem.
- KOLÁR:** Tak neskoro! Ďakujem vám. Rodina je asi hladná. Ale je teplo, slnko ešte svieti. Pôjdeme tam asi peši. Teraz si idem po rodinu a zaparkujem auto.
- RECEPČNÁ:** Poviem vrátnikovi. Ak chcete, pomôže vám s batožinou.

## Vocabulary

|                         |                   |                         |                 |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>batožina</b>         | luggage           | <b>poschodie</b>        | floor, storey   |
| <b>chladnička</b>       | fridge            | <b>slnko</b>            | sun             |
| <b>hodinky</b>          | watch             | <b>televízor</b>        | TV set          |
| <b>ísť si po + acc.</b> | go for/and fetch  | <b>teplo</b>            | warm(th)        |
| <b>kľúč</b>             | key               | <b>ukázať/ukážem</b>    | to show         |
| <b>krok</b>             | step, pace        | <b>&lt; ukazovať</b>    |                 |
| <b>les</b>              | forest            | <b>ulička</b>           | little street   |
| <b>malý</b>             | little            | <b>vrátnik</b>          | porter          |
| <b>o kus ďalej</b>      | a bit further     | <b>výhľad na + acc.</b> | view of         |
| <b>odtiaľto</b>         | from here         | <b>výťah</b>            | lift, elevator  |
| <b>parkovisko</b>       | car-park, parking | <b>zámek</b>            | château, castle |
|                         | lot               | <b>zaparkovať pf</b>    | to park         |
| <b>peši, pešo</b>       | on foot           | <b>of parkovať</b>      |                 |
| <b>podať &lt;</b>       | to be served      | <b>zastaviť &lt;</b>    | to stop         |
| <b>podávať sa</b>       |                   | <b>zastavovať sa</b>    |                 |
| <b>pomôcť/</b>          | to help           |                         |                 |
| <b>pomôžem</b>          |                   |                         |                 |
| <b>&lt; pomáhať</b>     |                   |                         |                 |

# 13 Ako mačka s myšou

Like a cat with a mouse

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- say him, her and it
- say them
- distinguish some basic going verbs
- understand some basic prefixes

## Dialogue 1

*Milan's involved with Soňa, and Zora's very interested*

ZORA: Kam šiel Milan?

DUŠAN: Práve išiel do knižnice. Teraz tam stále chodí, číta si tam noviny. Chodí tam totiž aj Soňa, vieš. Rád s ňou sedí v čítarne. Potom chodia spolu do vinárne alebo do mliečneho baru, niekedy aj k nemu na kávu, alebo k nej na obed. Niekedy chodia spolu do divadla alebo na diskotéku.

ZORA: Kto je vlastne tá Soňa?

DUŠAN: Soňa je jeho spolužiačka zo strednej školy. Študuje film a televíziu na Vysokej škole múzických umení. Sú to starí kamaráti, poznajú sa tak desať rokov.

ZORA: Je to fantastická blondínka, však? Ľudia na fakulte o nej často rozprávajú.

DUŠAN: Milan na ňu stále čaká pred školou, alebo aj Soňa niekedy naňho čaká na zastávke električky. Dnes bola veľmi spokojná, dostala od neho strašne dlhý list.

ZORA: Takže Milan je do nej zaľúbený?

DUŠAN: Pravdaže! Nie je to na ňom vidieť? Ale mne sa zdá, že ona sa s ním len hrá ako mačka s myšou.

## Vocabulary

|                       |                       |                                     |                    |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>blondinka</b>      | a blonde              | <b>naňho</b>                        | onto/for him       |
| <b>chodiť</b>         | to go<br>(habitually) | <b>neho, nemu,</b>                  | him                |
| <b>čítáreň</b>        | reading room          | <b>ňom, ním</b>                     |                    |
| <b>diskotéka</b>      | disco                 | <b>nej, ňou, ňu</b>                 | her                |
| <b>divadlo</b>        | theatre               | <b>poznať sa</b>                    | to know each other |
| <b>fakulta</b>        | faculty               | <b>spolužiak,</b><br><b>-žiačka</b> | fellow-student     |
| <b>na fakulte</b>     | at the faculty        | <b>stredný</b>                      | middle, central    |
| <b>fantastický</b>    | fantastic             | <b>stredná škola</b>                | secondary school   |
| <b>film</b>           | film                  | <b>takže</b>                        | so ...             |
| <b>je to vidieť</b>   | it is visible         | <b>však?</b>                        | isn't she?         |
| <b>jeho</b>           | his                   | <b>vysoký</b>                       | high               |
| <b>mliečny bar</b>    | milk-bar              | <b>vysoká škola</b>                 | = university       |
| <b>múzické umenia</b> | the performing arts   | <b>zdať sa</b>                      | to seem            |
| <b>myš -i f.</b>      | mouse                 |                                     |                    |

## Language points

### 'Her' and 'him'

The table gives the basic range of Slovak forms for both 'her' and 'him'. Note that forms after prepositions all have initial **n-**.

|                     |                              |                       |
|---------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>accusative</i>   | <b>Vidím ju/ho</b>           | I see her/him         |
|                     | <b>List pre ňu /pre neho</b> | A letter for her /him |
| <i>genitive</i>     | <b>Pýtam sa jej/ho</b>       | I ask 'of' her/him    |
|                     | <b>List od nej/od neho</b>   | A letter from her/him |
| <i>dative</i>       | <b>Pomáham jej/mu</b>        | I help 'to' her/him   |
|                     | <b>Idem k nej/k nemu</b>     | I go to her/him       |
| <i>locative</i>     | <b>Hovorím o nejo/o ňom</b>  | I talk about her/him  |
| <i>instrumental</i> | <b>Idem s ňou/s ním</b>      | I go with her/him     |

There is less variation for 'her' than for 'him'. Which forms are used for more than one case?

Word order is the same as for 'me':

**Viera ju hľadala.**

Viera was looking for her.

**Ján sa ho stále pýtal, kam chce íst.**

Ján kept asking him where he wanted to go.

'Him' and 'her' come after 'me', 'you' and 'us':

**Dajte mi ho! Ja vám ho nedám!**

Give me him! I won't give you him!

**Daj mi ju! Ja ti ju nedám!**

Give me her! I won't give you her!

## 'Her' and 'his'

**Jej** is also the possessive 'her', alongside **jeho** 'his':

**To je jej/jeho kniha.** That is her/his book.

**Hovoríme o jej/jeho knihe.** We are talking about her/his book.

## More about 'him'

**Neho** 'him' can shrink to **-ňho** or **-ň** after short prepositions like **pre**, **na**, **do** ending in a vowel. Preposition and 'him' become a single word:

**preňho, preň**

for him

**naňho, naň**

onto him

**doňho, doň**

into him.

There are also two emphatic forms: **jeho** instead of **ho**, and **jemu** instead of **mu**. They often come at the beginning of a sentence:

**Jeho nevidím.**

*lit.* 'Him I don't see.'

**Jemu nepomáham.**

I don't help *him*.

## 'It' as the subject

If you need a vague subject word for 'it', you can just use **to** 'that'. But if 'it' refers back to a particular noun, you use the matching gender of **ten**, **tá**, **to**:

**Čo je to? To je kniha.**

What is it? It's a book.

**Tá je dobrá. Je dobrá.**

That [one] is good. It's good.

Another word for 'it' is **ono**, used to refer to neuter nouns for living beings, e.g. **dievča** 'girl' and **dieťa** 'child':

**Ono spí.**

It's asleep.

## Other case forms for 'it'

When in Slovak you want to refer to a feminine noun as 'it', you call it 'her':

**To je pekná záhrada.**  
**Vidiš ju? Pozri na ňu.**

That's a pretty garden.  
Do you see her/it? Look at her/it.

Masculine and neuter nouns use the 'him' case forms, with accusative **ho** and **-ň**:

**To je pekný dom.**  
**Vidiš ho? Pozri naň.**

**Okno je špinavé.**  
**Vidiš ho? Vidiš cezeň?**

That's a nice house.  
Do you see him/it? Look at it.

The window is dirty.  
Do you see it? Do you see through it?

## Two 'going' verbs

You have met two basic verbs for 'to go or come': **íst** and **chodiť**. Both are extremely common, but used somewhat differently.

The usual way to give the command 'Go!' is **Chod!** **Chod'te!**, but to say 'Come!' (here and now) you say **Pod!** **Pod'te!**

Otherwise, **chodiť** denotes habitual or repeated activity, or walking in general:

|                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Chodí do školy.</b>             | S/he goes to school.        |
| <b>Chodíme často do divadla.</b>   | We often go to the theatre. |
| <b>Obyčajne chodíme autobusom.</b> | We usually go by bus.       |
| <b>Evička sa učí chodiť.</b>       | Evička is learning to walk. |

Basically, **íst** refers to single acts:

|                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Dnes ide pešo.</b>     | Today s/he is going on foot. |
| <b>Včera išla vlakom.</b> | Yesterday she went by train. |
| <b>Vlak ide pomaly.</b>   | The train is going slowly.   |

The future of **íst** is special. You add **pô-**:

|                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Zajtra pôjdem do školy.</b> | Tomorrow I'll go to school. |
| <b>Pôjdeš so mnou?</b>         | Will you come with me?      |

The future of **chodiť** is regular:

|                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>Budem chodiť do školy.</b> | I'll be going to school (regularly). |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|

**Exercise 1**

Replace the names by correct forms for 'her', and translate:

- 1 Vidím Soňu.
- 2 Pomáham Viere.
- 3 Idem s Hedou.
- 4 Hovorili sme o Zuzke.
- 5 Hľadám pani Bednárovú.

**Exercise 2**

Replace the names by correct forms for 'him' and translate:

- 1 Nemám Michala rada.
- 2 Telefonujem otcovi.
- 3 Išla s Pavlom na koncert.
- 4 Nerád hovoril o bratovi.
- 5 Stretli sme pána Kováča pred divadlom.

**Exercise 3**

Translate into Slovak using forms of **chodiť** or **ísť**, as appropriate:

- 1 She usually goes by train.
- 2 Yesterday she went by bus.
- 3 He often goes to the cinema.
- 4 Today he's going to the theatre.
- 5 On Monday he went to a concert.
- 6 Will you go with me to the disco?

**Dialogue 2** 

*Zora continues her interest in Soňa and Milan*

**ZORA:** Kde sú Milan a Soňa? Nevidíte ich? Viem, že tu boli pred chvíľou. Chcela som sa s nimi rozprávať o včerajšom filme.

**DUŠAN:** O nich viem len to, že išli na obed. Presne o dvanástej zišli dolu schodmi, vyšli z budovy, prešli cez námestie a odišli smerom na električku. Videl som ich, lebo som práve prichádzal. Keď zasa prídu, poviem im, že si ich hľadala. Aký bol film?

- ZORA: Taliantsky, skvelý. Milan a Soňa na ňom tiež boli. Povedali vraj ale, že sa im vôbec nepáčil. Chcela by som od nich počuť, čo proti nemu majú, lebo ma to veľmi prekvapuje, Podľa mňa je to proste fantastická vec!
- DUŠAN: Asi tam bolo málo lásky, nie?
- ZORA: Práve naopak. Bolo tam tej lásky až priveľa!
- DUŠAN: Preto sa im to asi nepáčilo.
- ZORA: Asi máš pravdu.
- DUŠAN: Nemám proti nim v podstate nič, ale sú to naozaj čudní ľudia, títo dvaja!
- ZORA: No nič. Aj ja pôjdem na obed. Zatiaľ ahoj.
- DUŠAN: Čau.

## Vocabulary

|                             |                             |                        |                     |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>aký bol?</b>             | what was it like?           |                        |                     |
| <b>ale</b>                  | however                     |                        |                     |
| <b>až priveľa</b>           | to the point of too much    |                        |                     |
| <b>cez + acc.</b>           | across                      |                        |                     |
| <b>chvíľa, pred chvíľou</b> | moment, a moment ago        |                        |                     |
| <b>čudný</b>                | strange, odd                |                        |                     |
| <b>ich, im</b>              | them, to them               |                        |                     |
| <b>láská</b>                | love                        |                        |                     |
| <b>na ňom</b>               | at it                       |                        |                     |
| <b>nich, nim, nimi</b>      | them                        |                        |                     |
| <b>nie?</b>                 | wasn't there?               |                        |                     |
| <b>no nič</b>               | well never mind             |                        |                     |
| <b>odísť/odišli pf</b>      | to go away, went away       |                        |                     |
| <b>podľa mňa</b>            | according to me, in my view | <b>proti + dat.</b>    | against             |
| <b>podstata</b>             | basis                       | <b>schody</b>          | stairs, steps       |
| <b>v podstate</b>           | basically                   | <b>dolu schodmi</b>    | down the stairs     |
| <b>prekvapit'</b>           | to surprise                 | <b>smerom</b>          | in the direction    |
| <b>&lt; prekvapovať</b>     |                             | <b>na + acc.</b>       | of                  |
| <b>prejst'/prešli pf</b>    | to cross, crossed           | <b>včerajší</b>        | yesterday's         |
| <b>priísť/prídem</b>        | to arrive                   | <b>vôbec ne-</b>       | not at all          |
| <b>&lt; prichádzat'</b>     |                             | <b>vyjsť, vyšli pf</b> | to go out, went out |
| <b>proste</b>               | simply                      | <b>zísť, zišli pf</b>  | they went down      |



## Language points

### Saying ‘them’

‘They’ as a subject word is **oni**, with a non-male form **ony**. Different forms for ‘them’ are also used for things. Forms after prepositions again have initial **n-**.

|                     |   |                    |
|---------------------|---|--------------------|
| <i>accusative</i>   | <b>Videl som ich</b>                    | I saw them         |
|                     | <b>List pre ne</b> (male: <b>nich</b> ) | A letter for them  |
| <i>genitive</i>     | <b>Pýtam sa ich</b>                     | I ask ‘of’ them    |
|                     | <b>List od nich</b>                     | A letter from them |
| <i>dative</i>       | <b>Pomáham im</b>                       | I help ‘to’ them   |
|                     | <b>Idem k nim</b>                       | I go to them       |
| <i>locative</i>     | <b>Hovorím o nich</b>                   | I talk about them  |
| <i>instrumental</i> | <b>Idem s nimi</b>                      | I go with them     |

Remember, **ich** is also the possessive ‘their’:

**To je ich dom.** That is their house.

### Going in, going out

English verbs are often followed by words like ‘in/out’: ‘He went in/out’. Slovak verbs use prefixes in a similar way.

Various perfective compounds are based on **ísť** ‘to go’. Their imperfective pairs are based on **-chádzat**. Here are two opposites, using **vo-/v-** ‘in’ and **vy-** ‘out’:

|   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| <b>vojsť/vojdem, vošiel &lt; vchádzat</b> | to go/come in, enter |
|---|----------------------|

**Vošiel dnu.**

He went in.

**Vošla do obchodu.**

She went into the shop.

**Práve vchádzali do domu.**

They were just going into the house.

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| <b>vyjsť/vyjdem, vyšiel &lt; vychádzat</b> | to go/come out, exit |
|--|----------------------|

**Vyšla von.**

She went out.

**Vyšiel z obchodu.**

He came out of the shop.

**Práve vychádzali z domu.** They were just coming out of the house.

## Arriving and departing

Two more verbs use opposites **pri-** ‘near’ and **od-** ‘away’:

**prišť/prídem, prišiel < prichádzať** to come, arrive

**Autobus ešte neprišiel.** The bus hasn’t come/arrived yet.  
**Príde zajtra!** Come tomorrow!

**odísť/odídem, odšiel < odchádzať** to go away, depart

**Autobus už odišiel.** The bus has now left, departed.  
**Anna odíde zajtra.** Anna will leave, go away tomorrow.

The related nouns **príchod** and **odchod** appear on timetables and travel signs: **PRÍCHODY** ‘arrivals’ and **ODCHODY** ‘departures’.

## Meeting and parting

Compare similar opposites **z-/s-** ‘together’ and **roz-** ‘apart’. Both add **sa**:

**zísť sa/zídem, zišiel sa < schádzať sa** to come together, meet

**Zišiel sa s kamarátom.** He met with a friend.

**rozísť sa/rozíde, rozšiel sa < rozchádzať sa** to part, separate

**Rozšili sa po hodine.** They separated after the hour/class.

## Up and down

**Vy-** can also mean ‘up’, while **z-/s-** can mean ‘down’:

**Vyšiel hore na prvé poschodie.**  
 He went up to the first floor.

**Zišli dolu schodmi.** They went down (by) the stairs.

## Other prefixes

Other common prefixes used to form compounds of **íšť** are:

**do-** finish    **dôjsť/dôjdem, došiel** to reach, arrive

**Došiel do školy.**                          He reached school.

**na-** upon    **nájsť/nájdem, našiel** to come upon, find

**Našiel som knihu.**                          I found a book.

**o-/ob-** round    **obísť/obídem, obišiel** to go round

**Obišiel dom/okolo domu.** He went round the house.

**pod-** under, up to    **podísť/podídem, podišiel** to go up to

**Podišla k oknu.**                          She went up to the window.

**pre-** across    **prejst'/prejdem, prešiel** to go across

**Prejdi/prejdite cez most!** Go across the bridge!

**Prejdite podchodom!** Go through the subway!

**u-** off, away    **ujšť/ujdem, ušiel** to get away

**Ušiel mi autobus.**                          I missed the bus. (*lit.* The bus got away to me.)

**za-** behind, off    **zájsť/zájde, zašiel** to go behind, go/call into (for a purpose)

**Zašiel za roh.**                                  He went off round the corner.

**Slnko už zašlo.**                                  The sun has now set (gone behind).

**Zašli si na obed/do kina.** They went in for lunch/to the cinema.

**Exercise 4**

Replace these pairs of names by correct pronoun forms for 'them' and translate:

- 1 Vidíte Milana a Soňu?
- 2 Hovorili sme práve o Pavlovi a Petrovi.
- 3 Zatelefonovala matke a sestre.
- 4 Išli k Viere a Zuzane na večeru.
- 5 Dostali sme od Jany a Jozefa pekný list.

**Exercise 5**

Translate into Slovak using compounds of **-íšť**:

- 1 They went into the house.
- 2 The train has now left.
- 3 They parted in front of the theatre.
- 4 Janko went into the library.
- 5 Viera went round the theatre and crossed the bridge.
- 6 We found a lovely wine bar.
- 7 The boy went up to the window.

**Reading 1***Milan and Soňa yet again*

Milan a Soňa sa zišli o pol jednej v hale univerzitnej knižnice. O tri štvrtre na jednu zišli dolu schodmi a vyšli z budovy. Šli asi tri minúty, prešli podchodom na druhú stranu ulice a obišli okolo obchodného domu. Už bola o päť minút jedna. Zašli do vinárne na obed a našli tam aj Vieru Kolárovú. Viera ich súčasťou pozdravila ale bolo jasné, že s ňou nie je niečo v poriadku. O desať minút sa jej kamarát vrátil, hádala sa s ním asi päť minút, ale nakoniec odišli spolu. Milan so Soňou sa na obedovali, dali si kávu a rozprávali sa vyše pol hodiny. O štvrt na dve vyšli z vinárne a prechádzali sa tak dvadsať minút po námestí. Rozšli sa o desať minút tri.

## Vocabulary

|                             |                             |                         |                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>druhý</b>                | other, second               | <b>podchod</b>          | subway            |
| <b>hádať sa</b>             | to quarrel                  | <b>pozdraviť pf</b>     | to greet          |
| <b>hala</b>                 | hall                        | <b>prechádzať sa</b>    | to walk           |
| <b>jasný</b>                | clear                       | <b>priateľsky</b>       | in a friendly way |
| <b>nakoniec</b>             | finally, in the end         | <b>rozísť/rozišli</b>   | they parted       |
| <b>naobedovať<br/>sa pf</b> | have dinner                 | <b>sa pf</b>            |                   |
| <b>obísť/obišli</b>         | went round                  | <b>strana</b>           | side              |
| <b>okolo + gen.</b>         | around                      | <b>výše</b>             | more than         |
| <b>po + loc.</b>            | about, over, up<br>and down | <b>zísť/zíšli sa pf</b> | they met          |

# 14 Sveter, Tatry a Ľudovít Štúr

## A sweater, the Tatras and Ľudovít Štúr

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- make comparisons
- use soft adjectives
- express preference
- talk about 'north', 'south', 'east', 'west'
- use other plural forms
- use more 'going' and 'taking' verbs

### Dialogue 1

*Peter tries to buy a sweater*

PETER: Dobrý deň. Môžete mi ukázať ten žltý sveter – aj ten modrý?

PREDAVAČKA: Tu sú. Nech sa páči, vyberte si. Obidva sú vlnené. Modrý je tenší, ale drahší, z trošku mäkčej a kvalitnejšej látky. Žltý je hrubší, oveľa lacnejší, ale teplejší a tiež veľmi kvalitný.

PETER: Páčia sa mi obidva, ale žltý mi hádam lepšie pristane. Kol'ko stojí?

PREDAVAČKA: Rovných päťsto korún.

PETER: Zvyčajne nosím číslo štyridsaťštyri. Tento mi bude malý, potrebujem väčšie číslo. Nemáte aj svetlejšiu alebo tmavšiu farbu?

PREDAVAČKA: Áno, máme. Tu máte väčšie čísla. Pozrite si tieto hnedé alebo tieto biele. Ak chcete, môžete si ich vyskúsať. Tu vpravo je kabínka.

PETER (o chvíľu sa vráti): Tento hnedý je mi akurát. Veľmi sa mi páči.

- PREDAVAČKA: Áno, svedčí vám.  
 PETER: Dobre, vezmem si ho.  
 PREDAVAČKA: Päťsto korún. Ďakujem. Hned' vám ho zabalím.

## Vocabulary

|                             |                         |                                       |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>akurát, je mi akurát</b> | it's an exact fit       | <b>pozrite si pristať/pristane pf</b> | look at<br>to suit, fit |
| <b>číslo</b>                | number, size            | <b>rovný</b>                          | straight, exact         |
| <b>drahý, -ší</b>           | dear, -er               | <b>svedčí vám</b>                     | it suits you            |
| <b>farba</b>                | colour                  | <b>svetlý, -ejší</b>                  | light, -er-<br>coloured |
| <b>hnedý</b>                | brown                   | <b>tenký, tensí</b>                   | thin, -ner              |
| <b>hrubý, -ší</b>           | thick, -er              | <b>teplý, -ejší</b>                   | warm, -er               |
| <b>kabínka</b>              | cabin, cubicle          | <b>tmavý, -ší</b>                     | dark, -er               |
| <b>kvalitný, -ejší</b>      | good, better<br>quality | <b>veľký, väčší</b>                   | big, -ger               |
| <b>lacný, -ejší</b>         | cheap, -er              | <b>vlnený</b>                         | woollen                 |
| <b>látka</b>                | material, fabric        | <b>vyberte si!</b>                    | choose!                 |
| <b>lepšie</b>               | better                  | <b>vyskúšať si pf</b>                 | to try on               |
| <b>mäkký, mäkší</b>         | soft, -er               | <b>žltý</b>                           | yellow                  |
| <b>obidva</b>               | both                    |                                       |                         |
| <b>oveľa</b>                | much (+ -er)            |                                       |                         |

## Dialogue 2

Zuzana tries to buy a shirt or blouse

- PREDAVAČ: Želáte si?
- ZUZANA: Len sa tak pozérám. Moment – môžete mi ukázať tamtie blúzky? Tú bielu, tú zelenú a tú červenú? Ďakujem.
- PREDAVAČ: Nech sa páči. Sú pekné, však?
- ZUZANA: Nie sú tieto blúzky veľmi drahé?
- PREDAVAČ: Táto biela je samozrejme drahšia ako tá červená, lebo je hodvábna. Tá červená je lacnejšia, ale je z čistej bavlny. Zelená blúzka má krátke rukávy, je najlacnejšia, polyesterová, ale kvalitná a hádam aj najobľúbenejšia.
- ZUZANA: Tá biela sa mi vôbec nepáči.
- PREDAVAČ: Skôr sa hodí pre staršiu paniu, však?
- ZUZANA: Tá červená sa mi najviac páči. Má širšie rukávy a užší

golier. Gombíky má tiež lepšie ako tá zelená. Zdá sa mi celkom elegantnejšia, má najkrajší strih, ale bude mi hádam veľká. Nemáte menšie číslo?

PREDAVAČ: Žiaľ, táto je posledná, čo máme. Tieto blúzky sú veľmi obľúbené, viete. Budúci týždeň máme dostať ďalšie, ale neviem aké farby.

ZUZANA: Škoda. No nič. Mohli by ste mi ukázať, kde máte pánske košeley? Môj mladší brat bude mať čoskoro narodeniny.

PREDAVAČ: Pozrite si tieto páskované a kockované košeley.

ZUZANA: Tieto sú oveľa lepšie ako tie dámske! A máte aj bohatší výber! Kúpim si hádam aj jednu pre seba!

## Vocabulary

|                             |                              |                         |                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>ako</b>                  | than                         | <b>máme</b>             | we are supposed to |
| <b>bavlna</b>               | cotton                       | <b>mladý, -ší</b>       | young, -er         |
| <b>bohatý, -ší</b>          | rich, -er                    | <b>naj-</b>             | most/-est          |
| <b>budúci</b>               | next, coming, future         | <b>najviac</b>          | most               |
| <b>dámsky</b>               | ladies'                      | <b>pani, acc. paniu</b> | lady               |
| <b>elegantný,</b><br>-nejší | elegant, more<br>elegant     | <b>pánsky</b>           | men's              |
| <b>golier</b>               | collar                       | <b>pásikovaný</b>       | striped            |
| <b>gombík</b>               | button                       | <b>polyesterový</b>     | polyester          |
| <b>hodiť sa</b>             | to be suitable               | <b>predavač</b>         | sales assistant    |
| <b>kockovaný</b>            | checked                      | <b>rukáv</b>            | sleeve             |
| <b>krásny,</b><br>najkrajší | beautiful, most<br>beautiful | <b>široký, širší</b>    | wide, -er          |
| <b>krátky</b>               | short                        | <b>starý, -ší</b>       | old, -er           |
| <b>len sa tak</b>           | I'm just looking             | <b>strih</b>            | cut                |
| <b>pozerám</b>              |                              | <b>úzky, užší</b>       | narrow, -er        |
| <b>malý, menší</b>          | small, -er                   | <b>výber</b>            | selection          |
|                             |                              | <b>žiaľ</b>             | unfortunately      |

## Language points

### Comparative adjectives in -ší

In English we can make comparisons by adding '-er' to adjectives (or by prefacing 'more'). In Slovak you often replace -ý by

-ší. These forms are called comparatives. For ‘than’ you use **ako** or **než**.

**Pavol je starší ako ja.**

Pavol is older than me.

**Pavol je mladší než Peter.**

Pavol is younger than Peter.

To say ‘much’ (e.g. small)-er you add **oveľa** (*lit.* ‘by much’). Notice the feminine ending -šia:

**Zuzana je oveľa mladšia ako Viera.**

Zuzana is much younger than Viera.

Here are some common examples, grouped by meaning:

**starý – starší**

older

**mladý – mladší**

younger

**nový – novší**

newer

Some very common ones lose a **-k-** and alter slightly in other ways:

**vysoký – vyšší**

higher

**hlboký – hlbší**

deeper

**nízky – nižší**

lower

**široký – širší**

wider

**úzky – užší**

narrower

**ťažký – ťažší**

heavier

**ľahký – ľahší**

lighter

**krátky – kratší**

shorter

**dlhý – dlhší**

longer

A few are very irregular:

**malý – menší**

smaller

**velký – väčší**

bigger, greater

**dobrý – lepší**

good/better

**zlý – horší**

bad/worse

**krásny/pekný – krajší**

beautiful, pretty/more beautiful,  
prettier

## Longer comparatives in -ejší

Many adjectives have longer comparatives ending **-ejší**, especially those

- with two consonants before **-ý** (**silný**)
- or with a long vowel before **-y** (**hlúpy**)
- many less basic (derived) adjectives

Learn these common examples, again grouped by meaning:

|                                     |                  |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>silný – silnejší</b>             | stronger         |
| <i>but slabý – slabší</i>           | weaker           |
| <b>rýchly – rýchlejší</b>           | quicker          |
| <i>but pomalý – pomalší</i>         | slower           |
| <b>múdry – múdrejší</b>             | wiser            |
| <b>hlúpy – hlúpejší</b>             | sillier          |
| <b>chudobný – chudobnejší</b>       | poorer           |
| <i>but bohatý – bohatší</i>         | richer           |
| <b>zložitý – zložitejší</b>         | more complicated |
| <i>but jednoduchý – jednoduchší</i> | simpler          |

## Superlatives in **naj-**

To say ‘oldest’, ‘youngest’, etc. you simply add **naj-** to the **-ší** form. These **naj-** forms are called superlatives: **najstarší** ‘oldest’, **najmladší** ‘youngest’, **najlepší** ‘best’, **najhorší** ‘worst’, **najsilnejší** ‘strongest’.

**Pavol je starší ako ja,** Peter is older than me,  
**ale Peter je najstarší z nás.** but Peter is the oldest of us.  
**Ivan je môj najlepší kamarát.** Ivan's my best friend.

## Soft adjectives in **-í**

So-called soft adjectives ending in **-í/-í** have forms much like standard adjectives, but with some ‘soft’ vowels in their endings.

*Rule: ý (y), á, é, ú become ‘soft’ í (i), ia, ie, iu*

Comparatives ending **-ší/-ejší** follow this rule: **starší (muž)**, **staršia (žena)**, **staršie (auto)**.

**Hľadám staršieho muža, staršiu ženu.**  
I'm looking for an older man/woman.

**Bývam v staršom dome, v staršej budove.**  
I live in an older house/building.

Other common soft adjectives include **tretí** ‘third’, **cudzí** ‘foreign’ and **domáci** ‘native/domestic’, **svieži** ‘fresh’.

**Viera býva na treťom poschodí.**  
Viera lives on the third floor.

**Káva je cudzie alebo domáce slovo?**  
Is coffee a foreign or a native word?

**Všetci máme radi svieži vzduch.**  
We all like fresh air.

Note also the question adjective čí?, čia?, čie? ‘whose?’:

**Čia je to kniha?** Whose book is that?

You will find a table with all the adjective endings in the ‘Grammar summary’.

## More/most quickly

To say adverbs of comparison, like ‘more quickly’, ‘most quickly’, etc., you just use the neuter forms of comparatives in -sie, -ejšie:

**Pavol behá rýchlejšie ako ja.**  
Pavol runs more quickly/quicker than me.

**Ale Peter behá najrýchlejšie.**  
But Peter runs most quickly/quickest.

Similarly:

**Viera spieva dobre, lepšie ako ja.**  
Viera sings well, better than me.

**Viera spieva zle, horšie ako ja.**  
Viera sings badly, worse than me.

## More and less

**Viac** ‘more’, **najviac** ‘most’ are steps further on from **veľa** ‘a lot’:

**Robí veľa, má veľa peňazí.**  
S/he works a lot, has lots of money.

**Robí viac, má najviac peňazí.**  
S/he works more, has most money.

Similarly, **menej** ‘less’, **najmenej** ‘least’ follow on from **málo** ‘little’:

**Robí málo, má málo peňazí.**  
S/he works little, has little money.

**Robí menej, má najmenej peňazí.**  
S/he works less, has least money.

For ‘more than’ with numbers you can also say **vyše** ‘over’:

**Robí tu vyše dvadsať ľudí.**

More than twenty people work here.

## Expressing preference

To say that you prefer or like *doing* something better/best, use the comparative/superlative forms **radšej/najradšej**, from **rád**:

**Rád/rada pozerám televíziu.** I like watching TV.

**Radšej čítam a najradšej spím.**

I like reading better and sleeping best.

Similarly, to say you prefer *a thing*, you use **mať radšej/najradšej**:

**Mám radšej/najradšej bavlnu.**

I prefer cotton. I like cotton better/best.

For immediate preference when given a choice, however, use **páčiť sa viac/najviac** ‘to please more/most’:

**Tá červená košel'a sa mi viac/najviac páči.**

I like the red shirt better/best.

### Exercise 1

You are talking about clothes and you say in Slovak:

- 1 This blouse is cheaper.
- 2 These buttons are better.
- 3 This sweater is dearer than that blue one.
- 4 I like the white blouse best, it has the prettiest cut.
- 5 These shirts are warmer, of better quality material.
- 6 This shirt is (too) small for me, I need a bigger number/size.
- 7 This shirt has shorter sleeves.

### Exercise 2

Replace the regular adjectives by superlatives and translate:

- 1 Eva je mladá.
- 2 Otec je starý.
- 3 Zuzana je moja dobrá kamarátka
- 4 Igor je silný, ale Peter je rýchly.

- 5 Môj kufor je ľahký a tvoja aktovka je ľahká.
- 6 Táto ulica je krátka a úzka.
- 7 Tvoje auto je nové.
- 8 Toto mesto je staré a krásne.

### **Exercise 3**

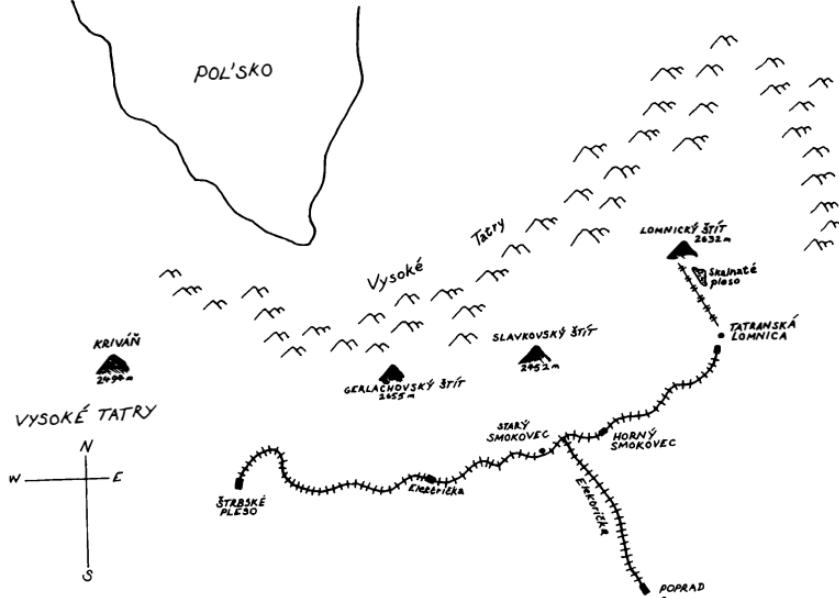
Complete, using comparatives, and translate:

- 1 Ivan je – ako ja. (*more stupid*)
- 2 Mária je – ako Viera. (*older*)
- 3 Pán Rojko je – ako pán Novák. (*richer*)
- 4 Evička je – ako ja. (*smaller*)
- 5 Pavol je – ako ja. (*bigger*)

### **Dialogue 3**

*Peter wants advice about where to go in the High Tatras*

- PETER: Pani Bártová, mohli by ste mi láskavo poradiť? Chcel by som ísť do Vysokých Tatier. Kam by som mal vlastne ísť? Kde sú najlepšie možnosti ubytovania?
- BÁRTOVÁ: No, nebola som tam osobne už dlho, ale najpopulárnejšími rekreačnými strediskami sú Starý Smokovec,



najväčšie stredisko, severne od Popradu, potom na západe Štrbské Pleso a na východe Tatranská Lomnica. Idete sám alebo s nejakými kamarátmi?

PETER: Idem s kolegami z kancelárie, ktorí v Tatrách tiež neboli. Ako sa do Tatier najlepšie dostaneme?

BÁRTOVÁ: Aj vlakom aj autobusom sa dá ísť, do Popradu alebo tiež do Tatranskej Lomnice. Do Popradu sa tiež dá ísť lietadlom, z Prahy aj z Bratislavы.

## Vocabulary

|                            |                     |                   |               |
|----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| <b>dá sa</b>               | it is possible      | <b>rekreačný</b>  | recreational  |
| <b>dostať sa</b>           | to get (to a place) | <b>severne od</b> | north from    |
| <b>láskavo</b>             | kindly              | <b>stredisko</b>  | centre        |
| <b>lietadlo</b>            | plane               | <b>Tatry</b>      | the Tatras    |
| <b>mal by</b>              | ought to            | <b>do Tatier</b>  | to the Tatras |
| <b>pleso</b>               | mountain lake       | <b>ubytovanie</b> | accommodation |
| <b>populárny</b>           | popular             | <b>východ, na</b> | in the east   |
| <b>poradiť pf of radíť</b> | to advise           | <b>východe</b>    |               |
|                            |                     | <b>západ, na</b>  |               |
|                            |                     | <b>západe</b>     | in the west   |

## Dialogue 4

*Mrs Bártová tells him about the tram-style Tatra light railway*

PETER: A z Popradu ďalej?

BÁRTOVÁ: Odtiaľ chodí do Vysokých Tatier električka. Je sice dosť pomalá, ale máte pekný výhľad na hory. A potom existujú rôzne lanovky a vleky pre lyžiarov a turistov, napríklad z Tatranskej Lomnice na Skalnaté pleso a Lomnický štít.

PETER: Ktoré kopce sú najvyššie?

BÁRTOVÁ: Medzi najvyššie patria Kriváň, Gerlachovský štít (ten je najvyšší) a Lomnický štít. Priamo na horách nájdete ubytovanie v rôznych horských hoteloch a turistických chatách. Ubytovanie sa dá samozrejme objednávať vopred v cestovných kanceláriách, v Poprade, v Hornom Smokovci a tak ďalej. Želám vám peknú dovolenku! Bohužiaľ, ja som už stará na takéto horské túry!

PETER: Ďakujem za praktickú radu! Chystám sa tam už budúci mesiac a prinesiem vám potom fotky. Len dúfam, že si nezlomím nohu!

## Vocabulary

|   |                 |                        |                           |
|---|-----------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>cestovná</b>                           | travel office   | <b>pomalý</b>          | slow                      |
| <b>kancelária</b>                         |                 | <b>poskytnúť</b>       | to offer                  |
| <b>chata</b>                              | chalet          | <b>&lt; poskytovať</b> |                           |
| <b>chystať sa</b>                         | to prepare to   | <b>praktický</b>       | practical                 |
| <b>dovolenka</b>                          | holiday         | <b>rada</b>            | advice                    |
| <b>existovať</b>                          | to exist        | <b>rôzny</b>           | various                   |
| <b>fotka</b>                              | photo           | <b>skala</b>           | rock                      |
| <b>hora</b>                               | mountain        | <b>skalnatý</b>        | rocky                     |
| <b>horný</b>                              | upper           | <b>štít</b>            | peak, shield,<br>gable    |
| <b>horský hotel</b>                       | mountain hotel  | <b>túra</b>            | hike                      |
| <b>lanovka</b>                            | cable-car       | <b>turista, -tka</b>   | tourist                   |
| <b>lyžiar, -ka</b>                        | skier           | <b>turistický</b>      | tourist <i>adj.</i>       |
| <b>noha</b>                               | leg             | <b>vlek</b>            | ski-lift                  |
| <b>objednať</b><br><b>&lt; objednávať</b> | to order, book  | <b>vopred</b>          | beforehand, in<br>advance |
| <b>odtiaľ</b>                             | from there      | <b>vysoký, vyšší</b>   | high, higher              |
| <b>patriť medzi</b><br><b>+ acc.</b>      | to belong among | <b>zlomiť si pf</b>    | to break                  |

## Directions

The four points of the compass are:

**sever, juh, východ a západ**  
north, south, east and west

For 'in (the north)', etc. you say **na** ('on') in Slovak. For example, using **žiť/zíjem** to live:

**Žijem na severe, na juhu.**  
I live in the north, in the south.

**Žijú na východe, na západe.**  
They live in the east, in the west.



Note likewise how to say 'to' and 'from':

**Cestujú na Západ.**

They travel to the West.

**Letia zo severu na juh.**

They fly from the north to the south.

Adjectives are quite simple:

**Severná/Južná Amerika** North/South America

**východná/západná Európa** Eastern Europe, Western Europe

**Východ** 'east' means basically 'coming up/out', as in **východ slnka** 'sunrise' (*lit.* 'coming up of the sun'), while **západ** 'west' means 'falling, setting', as in **západ slnka** 'sunset'.

Note that **východ** is also 'exit', alongside **vchod** 'entrance', e.g. **núdzový východ** 'emergency exit'.

## Plural case forms

The remaining standard plural case forms of nouns and adjectives are shown here, using the phrase **tie pekné hory** 'those high mountains'.

|                     |                                |             |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|
| <i>genitive</i>     | <b>do tých vysokých hôr</b>    | into ...    |
| <i>dative</i>       | <b>k tým vysokým horám</b>     | towards ... |
| <i>locative</i>     | <b>na tých vysokých horách</b> | on ...      |
| <i>instrumental</i> | <b>za tými vysokými horami</b> | beyond ...  |

Most nouns have the dative ending **-ám**, locative **-ách** and instrumental **-ami**, as above, but masculine nouns end in **-om**, **-och** and **-mi**:

**k tým študentom, o tých študentoch, pred tými študentmi**  
towards, about, in front of those students

## Plural variants

If the masculine instrumental ending **-mi** would be awkward, you replace it by **-ami**. This also applies to masculines ending in **-a/-o**:

**pred chlapcami, domami, kolegami**

in front of the boys, houses, colleagues

After long vowels, **ý** becomes **y**, **á** becomes **a** (rhythmic law):

**o tých krásnych žiačkach**

about those beautiful schoolgirls



**Dnes ich viedem do múzea.**

Today I'm taking them to the museum.

**Nosiť** also means 'to wear (habitually)':

**Zvyčajne nosí okuliare.**

S/he usually wears spectacles.

**Ale dnes nemá okuliare.**

But today s/he doesn't have spectacles (on).

## More verbs with pri-, od-

Compounds of the verbs just discussed, with **pri-**, **od-** etc., simply form standard perfective-imperfective pairs, e.g.:

|                                 |                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>pribehnúť &lt; pribiehať</b> | to run up, arrive running |
| <b>odletieť &lt; odlietať</b>   | to fly off, depart flying |

**Pri-** added to **niesť**, **viezt**, **viesť** produces three verbs meaning 'bring': **priniesť < prinášať** 'to bring by carrying', **priviezť < privážať** 'to bring by vehicle', and **priviesť < privádzat** 'to bring by leading'. With **od-** they all mean 'take (away)':

|                              |                                   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>Priniesol jej kyticu.</b> | He brought her a bouquet.         |
| <b>Odviezol ju domov.</b>    | He took her home.                 |
| <b>Priviedol ju do izby.</b> | He brought/led her into the room. |

## Exercise 4

Some names for towns or villages are plural. Often they end in **-ice** (feminine) or **-any** (masculine). Complete with the names suggested and translate:

- 1 Býva v \_\_\_\_\_. (*Trenčianske Teplice*)
- 2 Jej brat študuje v \_\_\_\_\_. (*Košice*)
- 3 Jej matka býva v \_\_\_\_\_. (*Nové Zámky m*)
- 4 Jeho otec býva v \_\_\_\_\_. (*Topoľčany*)
- 5 Jeho dcéra býva v \_\_\_\_\_. (*Piešťany*)
- 6 Ján Hollý býval v \_\_\_\_\_. (*Madunice*)

## Exercise 5

Place names ending **-ice** and **-any** both have zero genitives. Complete and translate:

- 1 Išli sme do \_\_\_\_\_. (*Košice*)
- 2 Jej otec je z \_\_\_\_\_. (*Topoľčany*)
- 3 Ideme do \_\_\_\_\_. (*Piešťany*)
- 4 Idú do \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_. (*Trenčianske Teplice*)
- 5 Jeho sestra je z \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_. (*Nové Zámky*)

### **Exercise 6**

Complete as suggested and translate:

- 1 Hovorili sme o tých \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_. (*American students*)
- 2 Ide s \_\_\_\_\_ do divadla. (*friends*)
- 3 Varí \_\_\_\_\_ obed. (*the sisters*)
- 4 Piše \_\_\_\_\_ krátky list. (*the brothers*)
- 5 Ubytovanie objednáva v \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_. (*travel agencies*)
- 6 Kupuje knihy o \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_. (*old towns, castles*)

### **Exercise 7**

Translate into Slovak with the correct simple verbs of motion:

- 1 Today I'm flying to Bratislava.
- 2 I don't like flying.
- 3 He always wears lovely shirts.
- 4 Today you are carrying a suitcase.
- 5 Usually you carry a briefcase or a bag.
- 6 He often runs in the park.
- 7 Today he's running to work.

## **Reading 1**

O dejinách Bratislavы a začiatkoch spisovnej slovenčiny. *About the history of Bratislava and the beginnings of standard literary Slovak*

Nad sútokom Dunaja a Moravy, nedaleko Bratislavы, stojí hrad Devín. Na vysokom brale bola rímska a neskôršie aj slovanská pevnosť. Devín sa v minulom storočí stal národným symbolom: pamätná tabuľa na zrúcaninách hradu pripomína slávny výlet Ľudovíta Štúra so slovenskými študentmi na Devín v roku 1836.

Staršie historické meno Bratislavы bol Prešporok. Vysoko nad mestom, hned vedľa širokej modernej magistrály s mostom cez Dunaj, stojí Bratislavský hrad. Cisár Jozef II, syn Márie Terézie,

tu založil seminár na vzdelávanie katolíckych kňazov. Na seminári študoval Anton Bernolák, ktorý v roku 1787 vydal prvý slávny návrh spisovnej slovenčiny.

## Vocabulary

|                        |                     |                           |                            |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>bralo</b>           | crag, rock          | <b>slávny</b>             | famous                     |
| <b>cisár</b>           | emperor             | <b>slovanský</b>          | Slav(ic),<br>Slavonic      |
| <b>dejiny f. pl.</b>   | history             | <b>spisovný</b>           | standard literary          |
| <b>historický</b>      | historical          | <b>storočie</b>           | century                    |
| <b>katolícky</b>       | Catholic            | <b>sútok -u</b>           | confluence                 |
| <b>kňaz</b>            | priest              | <b>symbol</b>             | symbol                     |
| <b>magistrála</b>      | major trunk<br>road | <b>tabuľa</b>             | plaque, tablet             |
| <b>nad + ins.</b>      | above               | <b>vydať &lt; vydávať</b> | to publish                 |
| <b>národný</b>         | national            | <b>výlet</b>              | excursion, trip            |
| <b>návrh</b>           | proposal            | <b>vysoko</b>             | high up                    |
| <b>nedaleko + gen.</b> | not far from        | <b>vzdelávanie</b>        | the educating,<br>training |
| <b>neskorší</b>        | later               | <b>začiatok -tku</b>      | beginning                  |
| <b>pamätný</b>         | commemorative       | <b>založiť</b>            | to found                   |
| <b>pevnosť</b>         | fort                | <b>&lt; zakladať</b>      |                            |
| <b>pripomínať</b>      | to commemorate      | <b>zrúcaniny f. pl.</b>   | ruins                      |
| <b>rímsky</b>          | Roman               |                           |                            |
| <b>seminár</b>         | seminary            |                           |                            |

## Reading 2

O Bernolákovej a Štúrovej slovenčine. *About Bernolák's and Štúr's Slovak*

Bernolák umrel v Nových Zámkoch v roku 1813. Jeho pomník stojí na druhej strane magistrály, pred dómom svätého Martina, v ktorom sa často korunovali uhorskí králi. Za dómom nájdete aj pomník najslávnejšieho spisovateľa Bernolákovej slovenčiny, básnika Jána Hollého. Hollý bol asi tridsať rokov farárom v Maduničiach v údolí Váhu, medzi Trnavou a Piešťanmi.

Bernolákova slovenčina sa sice nestala dnešným spisovným jazykom, ale silne zapôsobila na viac-menej modernú podobu spisovnej reči, ktorú vytvoril Ľudovít Štúr spolu s inými spisovateľmi v štyridsiatich rokoch minulého storočia. Štúr študoval na

evanjelickom lýceu na Konventnej ulici a prednášal mladým študentom o dejinách, literatúre a jazykoch slovanských národov. Na tomto lýceu študovali aj slávni slovenskí básnici Janko Kráľ a Andrej Sládkovič. V starých budovách lýcea sú dnes vedecká knižnica a Literárnovedený ústav Slovenskej akadémie vied.

## Vocabulary

|                        |                         |   |                          |
|------------------------|-------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| <b>akadémia</b>        | academy                 | <b>spisovateľ, -ka</b>                  | writer                   |
| <b>básnik</b>          | poet                    | <b>svätý</b>                            | Saint                    |
| <b>dóm</b>             | cathedral               | <b>údolie</b>                           | valley                   |
| <b>evanjelický</b>     | Lutheran                | <b>uhorský</b>                          | old Hungarian<br>(state) |
| <b>farár</b>           | vicar, parish<br>priest | <b>umrieť/umrie</b><br>< <b>umierať</b> | to die                   |
| <b>jazyk</b>           | language, tongue        | <b>ústav</b>                            | institute                |
| <b>korunovať sa</b>    | to be crowned           | <b>veda</b>                             | science                  |
| <b>kráľ</b>            | king                    | <b>vedecký</b>                          | scientific,<br>scholarly |
| <b>literárnovedený</b> | of literary<br>studies  | <b>viac-menej</b>                       | more or less             |
| <b>lýceum</b>          | lycée, college          | <b>vytvoriť</b>                         | to create                |
| <b>národ</b>           | nation                  | < <b>vytvárať</b>                       |                          |
| <b>podoba</b>          | form                    | <b>zapôsobiť &lt;</b><br><b>pôsobiť</b> | to have an<br>influence  |
| <b>pomník</b>          | memorial<br>(statue)    |   |                          |
| <b>reč -i f.</b>       | language, speech        |   |                          |

# 15 Čo keby?

## What if?

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- say 'would', 'if' and 'in order to', using the conditional
- use possessives
- talk about allowing and forbidding
- express hopes and fears
- use higher ordinal numbers
- say the date and year

### Dialogue 1

*What would you do if you suddenly became a millionaire?*

HELENA: Čo by si robil, keby si zajtra vyhral hŕbu peňazí? Keby si sa stal odrazu milionárom? Prestal by si pracovať?

MILAN: Hej, hned' by som prestal pracovať. Predal by som svoj malý byt v Petržalke a kúpil by som si krásnu starú vilu s veľkou záhradou. A tiež zopár luxusných áut. A cestoval by som po svete. A ty?

HELENA: Zišli by sa mi tie peniaze, ale rozhodne by som neprestala chodiť do práce, lebo ma to miesto v knižnici veľmi baví. Asi by som sa strašne nudila, keby som nemala zamestnanie alebo nejakú stálu prácu. Ale peniaze nehrajú v mojom živote až takú veľkú rolu. Nie. Na tvojom mieste by som neodišla z roboty. Aj keby mi niekto dal milión dolárov.

## Vocabulary

|                  |                       |                      |                     |
|------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| <b>aj keby</b>   | even if               | <b>peniaze, gen.</b> | money               |
| <b>až takú</b>   | quite such            | <b>peňazí</b>        |                     |
| <b>baviť</b>     | to amuse              | <b>po + loc.</b>     | about, over         |
| <b>by</b>        | would                 | <b>predať</b>        | to sell             |
| <b>dolár</b>     | dollar                | <b>&lt; predávať</b> |                     |
| <b>hŕba</b>      | a heap, pile,<br>load | <b>rola</b>          | role                |
| <b>keby</b>      | if                    | <b>stály</b>         | constant, steady    |
| <b>luxusný</b>   | luxury                | <b>svet</b>          | world               |
| <b>miesto</b>    | place, job            | <b>svoj</b>          | one's own           |
| <b>na tvojom</b> | in your place         | <b>vila</b>          | villa               |
| <b>mieste</b>    |                       | <b>vyhrať</b>        | to win              |
| <b>milión</b>    | million               | <b>&lt; vyhrávať</b> |                     |
| <b>milionár</b>  | millionaire           | <b>zamestnanie</b>   | employment          |
| <b>odrazu</b>    | suddenly              | <b>zísť sa</b>       | to come in<br>handy |

## Dialogue 2

*The discussion continues, moving on to unemployment*

- MILAN: Poznáš môjho staršieho brata? Nemá žiadne zamestnanie a je sám so sebou celkom spokojný a šťastný!
- HELENA: Pozri sa na mojich rodičov. Celý život pracovali vo fabrike alebo v kancelárii a teraz, hoci nie sú vôbec starí, sú nezamestnaní, sedia doma a nevedia, čo majú robiť. Celý deň si len čítajú noviny, pozerajú televíziu, ponošujú sa na svoju situáciu a spomínajú si na staré časy.
- MILAN: Tvoji rodičia nie sú vôbec typický príklad.
- HELENA: Neviem, či máš celkom pravdu. Dnes je u nás na Slovensku veľa nezamestnaných ľudí. Podľa môjho názoru by všetci mali mať právo na prácu.
- MILAN: Aj na oddych! Nie je to ale trochu staromódny názor?

## Vocabulary

|                |             |              |               |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| <b>celkom</b>  | entirely    | <b>mali</b>  | should, ought |
| <b>fabrika</b> | factory     |              | to            |
| <b>majú</b>    | they should | <b>názor</b> | view          |

|                     |               |                        |               |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|
| <b>podľa môjho</b>  | in my view    | <b>právo na + acc.</b> | a right to    |
| <b>názoru</b>       |               | <b>príklad</b>         | example       |
| <b>nezamestnaný</b> | unemployed    | <b>sám so sebou</b>    | with himself  |
| <b>oddych</b>       | rest, leisure | <b>staromódny</b>      | old-fashioned |
| <b>ponosovať sa</b> | to complain   | <b>šťastný</b>         | happy         |
| <b>na + acc.</b>    | about         | <b>typický</b>         | typical       |

## Language points

### 'Will' and 'would' when reporting speech

Often 'would' comes out as 'will' in Slovak. This is because when reporting someone's words you don't change the tense as in English. He said:

**Prídem zajtra.** I will come tomorrow.

And you report this as:

**Povedal, že príde zajtra.**

He said that he would come tomorrow.

### 'If' and 'whether'

'If' when it means 'whether' (reporting or discussing a question) is **či**:

**Pýtal sa, či prídem.** He asked me if/whether I would come.  
*The question was: Prídeť? Will you come?*

**Neviem, či príde.** I don't know if/whether he will come.  
**Príde?** Will he come?

### 'If' and 'would'

One common word for 'if' is **keby**. It consists of **ke-** with **-by** attached, which on its own has the meaning 'would'.

**Keby** is used if the sentence contains 'would', referring to something which is regarded as not necessarily ever going to be true. 'Would' is then expressed by the fixed word **by**.

Both **keby** and **by** are followed by past tense forms (this combination is called the *conditional*). **By** is placed in second position:

**Keby som mal čas, išiel by som do kina.**

If I had time, I would go to the cinema.

**Keby mal peniaze, kúpil by si dom.**

If he had money, he would buy a house.

**Čo by ste robili, keby ste nemali peniaze?**

What would you do, if you didn't have money?

**By** may appear in a sentence on its own, as a question or answer:

**Čo by ste robili?**

What would you do?

**Kam by ste šli?**

Where would you go?

**Šli by sme domov.**

We would go home.

**By** can also express a wish or polite request:

**Preložili by ste mi toto slovo?**

Would you translate this word for me?

Of course, you can also use **mohol by** ‘could, would be able’ for expressing such a wish:

**Mohli by ste prísť zajtra?** Could you come tomorrow?

### 'If' and 'will'

When ‘would’ does not feature, ‘if’ can be expressed by **ak**. **Ak** is often followed by the future tense in Slovak, unlike English:

**Ak budeme mať čas, pôjdeme do kina.**

If we have time, we'll go to the cinema.

**Ak nepríde, pôjdeme domov.**

If he doesn't come, we'll go home.

### 'My' and similar possessives

The case forms of **môj** ‘my’ differ a bit from regular adjectives:

---

#### *Singular*

---

*nom.*              **môj** brat, moje auto, moja izba

*acc.*              **môjho** brata, moju izbu

*gen.*              od **môjho** brata – od mojej izby

*dat.*              k **môjmu** bratovi – k mojej izbe

*loc.*              o mojom bratovi – o mojej izbe

*ins.*              pred mojím bratom – pred mojou izbou

---

---

*Plural*

---

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>nom.</i> | moji bratia – moje autá, izby        |
| <i>acc.</i> | mojich bratov ( <i>rest = nom.</i> ) |
| <i>gen.</i> | od mojich bratov                     |
| <i>dat.</i> | k mojim bratom                       |
| <i>loc.</i> | o mojich bratoch                     |
| <i>ins.</i> | pred mojimi bratmi                   |

---

Possessive **tvoj** has the same endings, but always has a short **o**. **Náš** and **váš** have the same endings, with long **á** where **môj** has **ô**:

**Nepozná tvojho/nášho brata.** He doesn't know your/our brother.

**Hľadám vašu sestru.** I'm looking for your sister.

**Pozná nášich rodičov?** Does s/he know our parents?

## Possessive **svoj**

The possessive **svoj** ‘own’ (related to **sa** ‘self’) only refers to possession by the subject of the phrase. Its forms are just like **tvoj**. It means ‘my’ if the subject is ‘I’, ‘your’ if it’s ‘you’, and so on:

**Stratil som svoj kľúč.** I've lost my [own] key.

**Stratila si svoju knihu?** Have you lost your [own] book?

**Viera stratila svoju knihu.** Viera has lost her [own] book.

## Exercise 1

Complete as suggested and translate:

1 Keby ... čas, ... po svete. (*I had /I'd travel*)

2 Keby ... peniaze, čo ...? (*you didn't have/would you do*)

3 ... toto slovo? (*would you translate*)

4 ... prísť zajtra? (*couldn't she*)

5 Neviem, ... (*if Viera will come*)

## Exercise 2

Translate into Slovak, using the correct forms of possessives (say ‘your’ both ways!):

1 The cat is in my room.

2 The key is in your pocket (= **vrecko**).

3 My coat is in your car.

- 4 Your magazines are on my chair.
- 5 Do you know our American and English colleagues?
- 6 She was talking about your friends.
- 7 She was talking about her (= *her own*) friends.
- 8 He is talking about her friends.
- 9 I left my book on your table.

## Dialogue 3

*Selling Grandad's house, amidst some rather complex family affairs*

- PETER: Chceš, aby som ti prečítal Vierin list? Dostal som ho včera.  
Píše o rodičoch Zuzaninho kamaráta Pavla, že idú predáť dedov dom.
- EDITA: Prečo ho chcú predáť? Taký krásny starý dom! Spomínaš si naň, však? Boli sme tam niekol'ko ráz.
- PETER: Predávajú ho, aby sa mohli Pavlovi bratia presťahovať do Bratislavы a kúpiť si tam byty.
- EDITA: A čo Pavlove sestry? Nepotrebujú tiež peniaze a byty?
- PETER: Pravdaže, ale sú ešte mladé a aj tak im niečo najskôr ostane z predaja. A strýkov dom v Martine je tiež dosť veľký.

## Vocabulary

|                            |                               |                          |                                 |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>-ov, -in</b>            | = 's                          | <b>Pavlovi, Pavlove</b>  | Pavel's                         |
| <b>a čo</b>                | and what about                | <b>predaj</b>            | sale                            |
| <b>aby</b>                 | that, to, in order<br>to/that | <b>prešťahovať</b>       | to move house<br><i>sa pf</i>   |
| <b>aj tak</b>              | even so                       | <b>raz, gen. pl. ráz</b> | time, once,                     |
| <b>dedo, dedov</b>         | grandfather('s)               | <b>niekol'ko ráz</b>     | several times                   |
| <b>idú predáť</b>          | they're about to<br>sell      | <b>spomínať si</b>       | to remember<br><i>na + acc.</i> |
| <b>najskôr</b>             | most likely                   | <b>strýko, strýkov</b>   | uncle('s)                       |
| <b>ostat' &lt; ostávať</b> | to remain, be<br>left         | <b>Vierin</b>            | Viera's                         |
|                            |                               | <b>Zuzanin</b>           | Zuzana's                        |

## Dialogue 4

*Whose things are whose? Janko's attitudes are a bit primitive*

- JANKO: Čia je to aktovka? Máš návštevu?
- ZUZKA: To je Ivanova aktovka.
- JANKO: A čie sú to topánky?
- ZUZKA: To sú bratove nové topánky. Pekné, však?
- JANKO: Hej, ale Petrove čierne topánky sú ešte krajšie. A čie je to auto pred domom?
- ZUZKA: To je otcovo auto. Kúpil si ho dnes. Ako sa ti páči?
- JANKO: Veľmi sa mi páči! Je ešte lepšie ako sestrino! Prečo mi otecko stále odmieta kúpiť nový bicykel?! Irenin bicykel je lepší ako môj a ona je dievča!
- ZUZKA: Ale Irena je staršia ako ty – a lepšia športovkyňa.

## Vocabulary

|              |            |          |          |
|--------------|------------|----------|----------|
| bicykel      | bicycle    | otecov   | father's |
| čí, čia, čie | whose?     | otecko   | dad      |
| ešte krajšie | even finer | sestrino | sister's |
| odmietnuť    | to refuse  |          |          |
| < odmietať   |            |          |          |

## Dialogue 5

*What's the date?*

- JANKO: Koľkého je dnes?
- ZUZKA: Je dvadsiateho siedmeho júla. V auguste ideme do Paríža!
- JANKO: Hej, prvého augusta! O necelý týždeň! Strašne sa na to teším! Vrátime sa až desiateho októbra.
- ZUZKA: Kedy máš narodeniny?
- JANKO: Šestnásteho októbra, budem mať pätnásť rokov!
- ZUZKA: Taký starý človek! Ja mám narodeniny ôsmeho februára. Zakaždým sneží, nenávidím sneh a budem mať tridsaťpäť rokov.
- JANKO: Kedy si sa narodila?
- ZUZKA: V roku tisícdeväťstošešdesiattri (1963). A ty?
- JANKO: Zabudol som. Počkaj, teraz som si spomenul, v roku tisícdeväťstoosemdesiatdva (1982).

## Vocabulary

|                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>august</b>        | August                   |
| <b>az</b>            | only                     |
| <b>dvadsiateho</b>   | 27 July                  |
| <b>siedmeho júla</b> |                          |
| <b>február</b>       | February                 |
| <b>júl</b>           | July                     |
| <b>koľkého je</b>    | what's today's           |
| <b>dnes?</b>         | date?                    |
| <b>mať X rokov</b>   | to be <i>X</i> years old |

## Possessives from people's names

Personal nouns can form possessives that are like 's (e.g. 'Anna's') in English. Males have possessive forms ending in **-ov**, females in **-in**. They work as adjectives, with basic agreement as follows:

|                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Petrov, Evin dom</b>             | Peter's, Eva's house            |
| <b>Petrova sestra, Evino auto</b>   | Peter's sister, Eva's car       |
| <b>Petrove sestry, Eviní bratia</b> | Peter's sisters, Eva's brothers |

These forms are like **môj, tvoj**:

**Videl som otcovu sestru, otcovho lekára.**  
I saw father's sister, doctor.

**Chodí k Evinmu lekárovi.**  
He goes to Eva's doctor.

Other forms are like regular adjectives:

**Hovorili o Zuzaninej knihe.**  
They talked about Zuzana's book.

**Hovorili o Zuzaniných priateľoch.**  
They talked about Zuzana's friends.

Only a single proper noun can form a possessive. Otherwise you just use the genitive case, e.g. **kniha Zuzany Kováčovej** 'Zuzana Kováčová's book'.

## Expressing purpose

**Aby** means something like ‘that (I, you, etc.) would’, expressing purpose. Like **keby**, it is followed by past tense forms. In English we often just say ‘to’, or ‘in order to’:

**Potrebujem peniaze, aby som kúpil dom.**

I need money to buy a house (‘that I would buy a house’).

But an infinitive can be used, as in English, after a verb of motion:

**Prišiel som ťa navštíviť.** I have come to visit you.

## Telling someone to do something

**Aby** is also used after verbs of ‘wanting’ or ‘telling’:

**Chcem, aby si prišiel.**

I want you to come (‘that you would come’).

**Chcú, aby som študoval medicínu.**

They want me to study medicine.

**Povedal mu, aby si kúpil dom.** He told him to buy a house.

**Radila nám, aby sme si ľahli.** She advised us to lie down.

**Požiadala ho, aby išiel s ňou.** She asked him to go with her.

## Allowing and forbidding

‘To allow’ is **dovoliť pf**, ‘to forbid’ **zakázať/zakážem pf**:

**Lekár mu zakázal fajčiť.** The doctor forbade him to smoke.

**Učiteľ mu tiež nedovolił fajčiť.**

The teacher also didn’t allow him to smoke.

**Dovoliť** is used with **aby** in the phrase:

**Dovol'te, aby som sa predstavil.** Allow me to introduce myself.

**Volám sa ...** My name is ...

– **Teším sa, že vás poznávam.** – Pleased to meet you.

A related verb is **smieť/smiem** ‘may, to be allowed’:

**Smiem (or Môžem) vám predstaviť svoju priateľku Vieru?**

May (or can) I introduce to you my friend Viera?

**Smiem prosiť?** May I ask (for the next dance)?

This verb is commoner in the negative, meaning ‘mustn’t’:

|                               |                       |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Tam nesmiesť!</b>          | You mustn't go there! |
| <b>To sa nesmie!</b>          | That is not allowed!  |
| (or: <b>To je zakázané.</b> ) | That is forbidden.)   |

Note also the sign **Zákaz vstupu!** ‘Entry forbidden!‘.

## Hopes and fears

**Báť sa/bojím sa** ‘to fear’ and **mať strach** ‘to be afraid’ (*lit.* ‘to have fear’) may be followed by either **aby** or **že**. After **aby** the verb is negative!

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Bojím sa, že spadnem.</b>       | I'm afraid that I'll fall.                   |
| <b>Bojím sa, aby som nespadol.</b> | I'm afraid that I might fall (hope I don't). |

**Aby** on its own can express an exclamatory hope or wish:

|                          |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Aby som nespadol!</b> | Hope I don't fall! |
|--------------------------|--------------------|

A weaker fear can be expressed by **obávať sa**:

|                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Obávam sa, že príde neskoro.</b> | I'm afraid that he'll arrive late. |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|

For an explicit hope you can simply use **dúfať** ‘to hope’:

|                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Dúfam, že nespadnem.</b> | I hope that I won't fall. |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|

## Higher ordinal numbers

In order to give the date you need ordinal numbers up to ‘thirty-first’. Higher ones turn up for various other purposes.

The ‘-teenths’ all end in **-násť**:

|                      |      |                    |      |
|----------------------|------|--------------------|------|
| <b>trinásťty</b>     | 13th | <b>sedemnásťty</b> | 17th |
| <b>štrnásťty</b> (!) | 14th | <b>osemnásťty</b>  | 18th |
| <b>pätnásťty</b>     | 15th | <b>devätnásťty</b> | 19th |
| <b>šestnásťty</b>    | 16th |                    |      |

Then it's:

|                  |      |                  |      |                    |      |
|------------------|------|------------------|------|--------------------|------|
| <b>dvadsiaty</b> | 20th | <b>tridsiaty</b> | 30th | <b>štvradsiaty</b> | 40th |
|------------------|------|------------------|------|--------------------|------|

Followed by:

|                    |      |                     |      |                     |      |
|--------------------|------|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| <b>päťdesiaty</b>  | 50th | <b>sedemdesiaty</b> | 70th | <b>deväťdesiaty</b> | 90th |
| <b>šesťdesiaty</b> | 60th | <b>osemdesiaty</b>  | 80th |                     |      |

Next:

|                |       |                 |       |
|----------------|-------|-----------------|-------|
| <b>stý</b>     | 100th | <b>štvorstý</b> | 400th |
| <b>dvojstý</b> | 200th | <b>päťstý</b>   | 500th |
| <b>trojstý</b> | 300th |                 |       |

**Tisíci** 1,000th, **dvojtisíci** . . . plus **miliónty**, **miliardtý**, and **biliónty!!**

For ‘twenty-first’ you say **dvadsiaty prvý**, literally ‘twentieth first’, and so on, but for the initial parts of higher complex ordinals you use ordinary numbers: **tisíc deväťsto šesťdesiaty štvrtý** 1,964th.

## Months, date and year

The names of the months are basically the same as ours (but note they are spelt without capital letters). Here they are, with the corresponding phrases for ‘in . . .’:

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <b>január, február, marec</b>      | <b>v januári, vo februári, v marci</b>    |
| <b>apríl, máj, jún</b>             | <b>v apríli, v máji, v júni</b>           |
| <b>júl, august, september</b>      | <b>v júli, v auguste (!), v septembri</b> |
| <b>október, november, december</b> | <b>v októbri, v novembri, v decembri</b>  |

To say ‘from’ and ‘till/to’ you use **od** and **do**. All have genitives ending **-a**:

|                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>od januára do apríla</b> | from January till April |
| <b>od marca do decembra</b> | from March to December  |

The date is always in the genitive:

|                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Koľkého je dnes?</b>        | What's today's date?       |
| <b>Je tridsiateho januára.</b> | It's 30th January.         |
| <b>Prišiel prvého januára.</b> | He arrived on 1st January. |

To say the year you use the form ‘one thousand nine hundred eighteen’:

**V roku 1918 (tisícdeväťstoosemnásť) sa skončila prvá svetová vojna.**

The first world war ended in (the year) 1918.

**Miesto a dátum narodenia.** Place and date of birth.

To say ‘in the sixties’, etc. you say **v šesťdesiatych rokoch** (‘in the sixtieth years’).

### **Exercise 3**

Complete with the right form of čí? ‘whose?’, then answer as suggested:

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ je to kniha? (*That's Irena's book.*)
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ sú to topánky? (*Those are my brother's shoes.*)
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ je to bicykel? (*That's my sister's bicycle.*)
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ je to auto? (*That's Igor's car.*)
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ sú to perá? (*Those are uncle's pens.*)

### **Exercise 4**

Koľkého je dnes? What's the date? Reply as suggested:

- 1 It's 14 January.
- 2 It's 5 May.
- 3 It's 21 October.
- 4 It's 8 September.
- 5 It's 30 March.
- 6 It's 29 August.

### **Exercise 5**

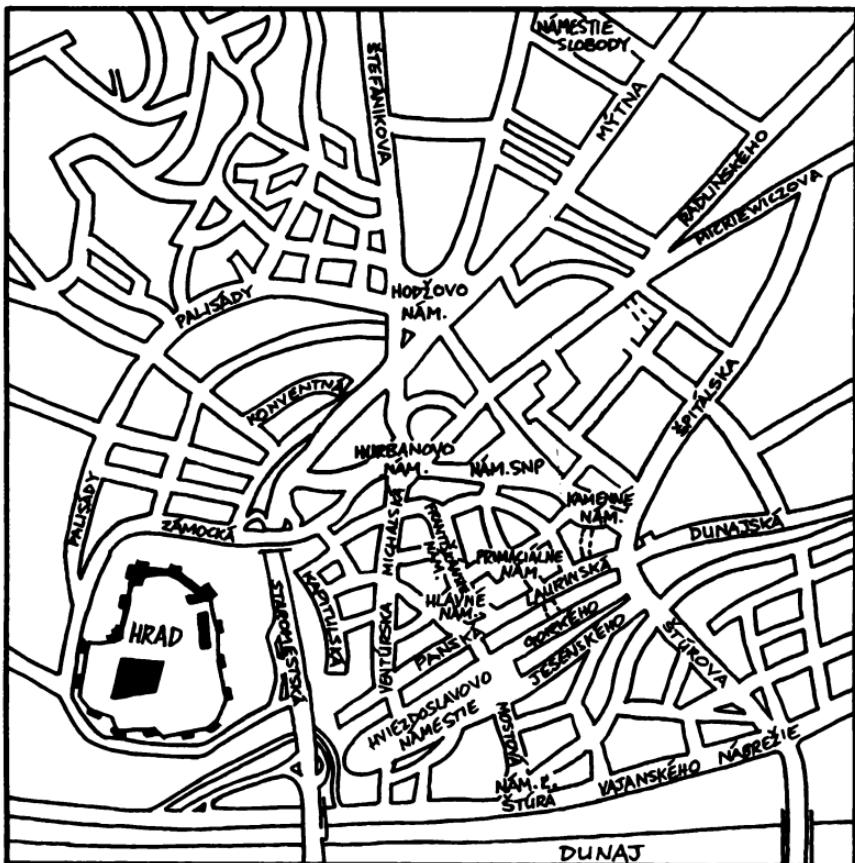
Complete as suggested, using aby:

- 1 Chcela, ... (*me to go with her*)
- 2 Povedal mi, ... (*to buy a new shirt*)
- 3 Radili nám, ... (*to sell the house*)
- 4 Bojím sa, ... (*I might lose my job*)
- 5 Chcem, ... (*them to give me a bigger room*)
- 6 Potrebuje auto, ... (*so that she can travel about Slovakia*)

## **Reading 1**

### *Four Bratislava squares*

Hlavné námestie je historickým srdcom Bratislavы. Nachádza sa tu Stará radnica, pôvodne gotická budova zo štrnásťteho a pätnásťteho storočia, ale viackrát prestavaná. Tu na námestí je tiež Maximiliánova fontána so sochou Rolanda z roku 1572 (tisícpäťstošedesaťdva).



Hned vedľa na Františkánskom námestí je Mirbachov palác so zbierkou starých obrazov a zopár krokov odľial', na Primaciálnom námestí, sa nachádza Primaciálny palác z druhej polovice osemnásteho storočia. Mierovú zmluvu podpísali rakúsky cisár František a Napoleón v zrkadlovej sieni paláca v roku 1805 (tisícosemstopäť).

Smerom k Dunaju na Hviezdoslavovom námestí je Národné divadlo, postavené koncom minulého storočia. Pred divadlom stojí Ganymedova fontána a na námestí, na ktorom sa tiež nachádza hotel Carlton, je socha slávneho slovenského básnika Pavla Országha Hviezdoslava. Za rohom na Mostovej ulici je Reduta, hlavná koncertná sieň a sídlo Slovenskej filharmónie.

## Vocabulary

|   |                          |                       |                       |
|---|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>fontána</b>                              | fountain                 | <b>prestavaný</b>     | rebuilt               |
| <b>gotický</b>                              | Gothic                   | <b>Primaciálny</b>    | Primate's             |
| <b>koncertná sieň</b>                       | concert hall             | <b>radnica</b>        | town-hall             |
| <b>koniec</b>                               | end                      | <b>rakúsky</b>        | Austrian              |
| <b>koncom + gen.</b>                        | at the end of            | <b>sídlo</b>          | seat,<br>headquarters |
| <b>mierová zmluva</b>                       | peace treaty             | <b>sieň f.</b>        | hall                  |
| <b>nachádzať sa</b>                         | to be found/<br>situated | <b>socha</b>          | statue                |
| <b>palác</b>                                | palace                   | <b>srdce</b>          | heart                 |
| <b>podpísat'</b><br><i>&lt; podpisovať'</i> | to sign                  | <b>viackrát</b>       | several times         |
| <b>polovica</b>                             | half                     | <b>zbierka</b>        | collection            |
| <b>postavený</b>                            | built                    | <b>zmluva</b>         | treaty                |
| <b>pôvodne</b>                              | originally               | <b>zrkadlová sieň</b> | mirror hall           |

## Reading 2

### *And two Bratislava streets*

Na Michalskej ulici stojí stará Michalská veža a hneď vedľa nej v dome U červeného raka je pekná stará lekáreň, v ktorej je dnes múzeum. Na Michalskej je tiež budova Univerzitnej knižnice, v ktorej ešte v prvej polovici minulého storočia bolo sídlo uhorského parlamentu.

Dolu na Ventúrskej ulici číslo 13 (trinásť) mal deväťročný Liszt svoj prvý koncert a v paláci, ktorý sa dnes nazýva Mozartov dom, hral šestročný chlapec Mozart v decembri roku 1762 (tisícsedemstošesťdesiatdva). Naproti je stará budova, niekoľkokrát prestavaná, v ktorej v roku 1465 (tisícštyristošesťdesiatpäť) kráľ Matej Korvín založil prvú bratislavskú vysokú školu, ktorá sa nazývala Academia Istropolitana. Jej činnosť trvala žiaľ krátko, len dvadsať päť rokov. Dnes je v budove Vysoká škola múzických umení.

## Vocabulary

|                   |            |                     |                      |
|-------------------|------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| <b>činnosť</b>    | activity   | <b>Matej Korvín</b> | Matthias<br>Corvinus |
| <b>deväťročný</b> | 9-year-old | <b>nazývať sa</b>   | to be called         |
| <b>lekáreň f.</b> | pharmacy   |                     |                      |

---

|                     |               |                  |            |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------|------------|
| <b>niekoľkokrát</b> | several times | <b>šesťročný</b> | 6-year-old |
| <b>parlament</b>    | parliament    | <b>veža</b>      | tower      |
| <b>rak</b>          | crayfish      |                  |            |

# 16 Máte volný stôl?

Do you have a table free?

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**

- say 'all', 'the same', 'there isn't', 'it's necessary', 'would have done'
- recognise verbal adjectives and frequentatives
- recognise diminutives and other noun and number forms
- write letters

**This final lesson includes some more advanced material on verbs and numerals, which you need at least for recognition and for reading.**

## Dialogue 1



*Ondrej finds his foreign guests the only eating place in town*

ONDREJ: Dobrý večer. Sme radi, že máte otvorené! Hľadali sme strašne dlho, prší a nemohli sme nič nájsť!

ČAŠNÍČKA: Môžem vám povedať, že v tomto mestečku niet lepšieho hostinca, lebo sme vlastne jediný!

ONDREJ: Máte voľný stôl pre štyri osoby? Vidieť, že v prednej miestnosti sú všetky stoly obsadené.

ČAŠNÍČKA: Áno, pane, tieto stoly sú sice tiež všetky rezervované, ale tam pri okienku máme ešte jeden voľný stôl. Sadnite si. Nech sa páči. Budete večerať?

ONDREJ: Áno.

ČAŠNÍČKA: Hned vám prinesiem jedálny lístok. Budete niečo piť? Pivečko, víno?

ONDREJ: Pre kolegyňu pohár bieleho vína, kolegom dvakrát pohárik slivovice a pre mňa pomarančový džús, lebo šoférujem. A štyri fľašky minerálky. Sme smädní!

## Vocabulary

|                       |  |                       |               |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|---------------|
| <b>dvakrát</b>        | twice, two times<br>(-krát 'times')                    | <b>obsadený</b>       | occupied      |
|                       | commonly used for ordering in a restaurant, pub, etc.) | <b>okienko</b>        | little window |
| <b>hostinec, -nca</b> | pub, inn   | <b>pane</b>           | sir!          |
| <b>jedálny lístok</b> | menu   | <b>pivečko</b>        | (nice) beer   |
| <b>jediný</b>         | the only, sole   | <b>pomarančový</b>    | orange juice  |
| <b>mať otvorené</b>   | to be open   | <b>džús</b>           |               |
| <b>mestečko</b>       | little town  | <b>pre + acc.</b>     | for           |
| <b>minerálka</b>      | mineral water  | <b>rezervovaný</b>    | reserved      |
| <b>niet + gen.</b>    | there isn't  | <b>smädný</b>         | thirsty       |
|                       |  | <b>šoférovať</b>      | to drive      |
|                       |  | <b>vidieť</b>         | it's visible  |
|                       |  | <b>všetci, všetky</b> | all           |

## Dialogue 2

*Ondrej orders food, including fish and a typical meatless dish*

- ČAŠNÍČKA: Nech sa páči, dáme biele vínečko, pánom dvakrát slivovica, jeden džús a štyri minerálky. Už ste si vybrali? Prajete si nejaké predjedlo? Šunku, hlávkový šalát s oštiepkom?
- ONDREJ: Nie, d'akujeme, dáme si všetci polievku.
- ČAŠNÍČKA: Zeleninovú polievku, rybaciu alebo hovädzí vývar?
- ONDREJ: Trikrát zeleninovú, raz rybaciu. Potom raz pečeného pstruha na masle s varenými zemiakmi – nie, s hranolkami – dvakrát kapra v paprikovej omáčke s ryžou – a raz vyprážaný syr s tatarskou omáčkou, nie, bryndzové halušky. Kolegyná je z Anglicka, želá si nejaké typické bezmäsité jedlo.
- ČAŠNÍČKA: To bude všetko?
- ONDREJ: Dvakrát uhorkový šalát a raz paradajkový. A prineste nám, prosím, ešte pečivo. Možno neskôr si ešte niečo objednáme – nejaký zákusok, pohárik alebo také niečo.

## Vocabulary

|                       |                |                       |               |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| <b>bezmäsity</b>      | meatless       | <b>dáma</b>           | lady          |
| <b>bryndzové</b>      | cheese gnocchi | <b>hlávkový šalát</b> | lettuce salad |
| <b>halušky f. pl.</b> |                | <b>hovädzí vývar</b>  | beef consommé |

|                                |                  |                         |               |
|--------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| <b>hranolky</b> <i>m. pl.</i>  | chips            | <b>raz</b>              | once          |
| <b>jedlo</b>                   | food, dish       | <b>rybacia polievka</b> | fish soup     |
| <b>kapor – kapra</b>           | carp             | <b>tatarská omáčka</b>  | Tartar sauce  |
| <b>na masle</b>                | cooked in butter | <b>trikrát</b>          | three times   |
| <b>papriková</b>               | paprika sauce    | <b>uhorka, adj.</b>     | cucumber      |
| <b>omáčka</b>                  |                  | <b>uhorkový</b>         |               |
| <b>paradajkový</b> <i>adj.</i> | tomato           | <b>varený</b>           | boiled        |
| <b>pečený</b>                  | roast            | <b>vínečko</b>          | (nice) wine   |
| <b>pečivo</b>                  | bread/rolls      | <b>vyprážaný</b>        | fried         |
| <b>predjedlo</b>               | starter          | <b>zákusok, -ska</b>    | dessert, cake |
| <b>pstruh</b>                  | trout            |                         |               |

## Language points

### All

In general the word for ‘all’ is most frequent in the plural. Basic *male animate* forms are **všetci** and accusative **všetkých**:

- Všetci chlapci tam boli.** All the boys were there.  
**Pozvali všetkých chlapcov.** They invited all the boys.

Other genders use **všetky**:

- Všetky ženy tam boli.** All the women were there.  
**Pozvali všetky ženy.** They invited all the women.

Singular neuter **všetko** ‘all, everything’ is very common. Singular **všetok** *m.* and **všetka** *f.* (*acc. všetku*) turn up less often, with words for uncountable ‘stuff’:

- Zjedol všetko.**  
He ate up everything.

- Zjedol všetok šalát/všetku zeleninu.**  
He ate up all the salad/all the vegetables.

Other forms are like ordinary adjectives:

- Hovorila o všetkom.**  
She spoke about everything.

- Hovorila so všetkými o všetkých problémoch.**  
She spoke with everyone about all the problems.

## '-ed' adjectives

English adjectives ending in '-ed' can be formed from verbs, e.g. 'closed' from 'to close', as in 'a closed door'. (Some are irregular, e.g. 'open' from 'to open', as in 'an open door'.)

The equivalent Slovak adjectives usually end in **-ný**, e.g. **zatvorený** 'closed', **otvorený** 'open':

**Zatvorené/otvorené okno.** A closed/open window.

**Okno je zatvorené/otvorené.** The window is closed/open.

They are usually predictable from verb infinitives:

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>-at': -aný:</b>       | <b>sklamat': sklamaný</b> disappointed                                  |
| <b>-it'/-iet': -ený:</b> | <b>prekvapíť': prekvapený</b> surprised, <b>vidieť': videný</b><br>seen |
| <b>-ovat': -ovaný</b>    | <b>organizovať': organizovaný</b> organized                             |

Some end in **-tý**:

**-núť: -nutý** **zabudnúť: zabudnutý** forgotten

These adjectives may be formed either from perfective or imperfective verbs, depending on the precise meaning.

## Passives

Phrases with forms of **byť** 'to be' plus **-ný/tý** verb adjectives can amount to what we call the *passive* in English. Here the subject is not the *doer*, but the thing or person (passively) *affected*:

**List bol napísaný včera.** The letter was written yesterday.

But if the doer is stated ('The letter was written by Viera') you normally just say grammatically 'Viera wrote the letter', but reverse the word order. The meaning is clear from the case endings:

**List (object) napísala Viera (subject).**

The letter was written by Viera.

**Túto knihu mi dal Peter.**

This book was given to me by Peter.

Another way of making a kind of passive is to use a verb with **sa**:

**Ako sa to píše?**

How is that written? (*lit.* ‘How does that write itself?’)

**Kde sa predávajú lístky?**

Where are tickets sold? (*lit.* ‘Where do tickets sell themselves?’)

Rather similarly:

**Obchod sa zatvára o šiestej.**

The shop closes, is closed at six.

**Polievka sa začína variť.**

The soup is starting to boil (*lit.* ‘be boiled’).

**‘-ing’ nouns**

English can form ‘-ing’ nouns from verbs, e.g. ‘reading’. Their direct Slovak equivalents end in **-nie/-tie**.

Their forms match closely the ‘-ed’ adjectives ending in **-ný/-tý** looked at above. They can be either imperfective or perfective, according to meaning. Sometimes you translate them with other English nouns:

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>-at': -anie</b>       | <b>čítanie/precítanie</b> reading                              |
| <b>-it'/-iet': -enie</b> | <b>otvorenie</b> opening                                       |
| <b>-ovat': -ovanie</b>   | <b>videnie</b> seeing, vision<br><b>upratovanie</b> tidying-up |

Some end in **-tie**:

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>-nút': -nutie</b> | <b>stretnutie</b> a meeting, <b>rozhodnutie</b> a decision |
|----------------------|--|

Dictionaries only list some of these nouns separately. Usually it is easy to work out their meaning by looking up the verb.

**Diminutives**

Slovak has many special nouns called *diminutives* which basically express ‘smallness’, also ‘niceness’. Their genders match the simple nouns. They are clearly marked by their final consonant **k**. ‘Double’ diminutives add **č** as well.

Masculine nouns end in **-ík**, **-ok**, **-ko** (people), or **-ček**: **pohár** – **pohárik** ‘small glass’, **pes** – **psík**, **psíček** ‘little dog(gie)’, **vták** – **vtáčik** ‘little bird(ie)’, **kus** – **kúsok**, **kúštok**, **kúštiček** ‘little (tiny) piece’, **dom** – **domček** ‘little house’; **Ján** – **Janko**, **Janičko** or **Janiček** ‘(little) Johnny’, **otec** – **otecko**, **ocko** ‘Dad’.

Feminine nouns end in **-ka** or **-(i)čka**: **kniha** – **knižka** ‘little book’, **ulica** – **ulička** ‘little street’, **ruka** – **ručička** ‘little hand’, **mama** – **mamička** ‘Mummy’.

Neuters end in **-ko** or **-(e)čko**: **okno** – **okienko** ‘little window’, **mesto** – **mestečko** ‘little town’, **slovo** – **slovíčko** ‘little word’, **víno** – **vínko**, **vínečko** (**n** pronounced /n/ not /ň/) ‘nice wine’, **pivo** – **pivečko** ‘nice beer’.

Some adjectives and other words also form diminutives:

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| <b>malý</b> – <b>maličký</b>                    | (nice) little, tiny |
| <b>trochu</b> – <b>trošku</b> , <b>trošičku</b> | (just) a little bit |

Often diminutives are used in special senses:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>list</b> – <b>lístok</b>               | little leaf <i>or</i> ticket              |
| <b>jedálny lístok</b>                     | menu                                      |
| <b>ruka</b> – <b>ručička</b>              | little hand <i>or</i> clock hand          |
| <b>roh</b> – <b>rožok</b> , <b>rožtek</b> | little horn/corner <i>or</i> pointed roll |
| <b>strom</b> – <b>stromček</b>            | little tree                               |
| <b>vianočny stromček</b>                  | Christmas tree                            |

## Girls, children and the young of animals

The case forms of neuter noun **dievča** ‘girl’ are rather odd, with **-at-** and **-at-** added before the endings, e.g. **od dievčaťa** ‘from a girl’, **dievčati** ‘to/for a girl’, **s dievčaťom** ‘with a girl’, and plural **dievčatá** ‘girls’, or (familiarly) **dievčence**. You’ll find a full table in the Grammar summary.

Neuter words for the young of animals also belong to this type, e.g. **šeňa** ‘puppy’, **mača** ‘kitten’, and **šeňatá** ‘puppies’, **mačatá** ‘kittens’. One of the commonest words of this type is **dieťa** *n.* ‘child’, but its plural is **deti** ‘children’.

### Exercise 1

Make ‘-ed’ adjectives from these verbs and translate them into English:

prekvapiť, kúpiť, napísat, prečítať, milovať, stratiť, variť, oholiť, zabudnúť, pozvať, baliť, zatvoriť, korunovať, zmeniť, objednať

### **Exercise 2**

Identify and translate the simple words these diminutives come from:

okienko, domček, lístok, ručička, kúštek, slovíčko, ulička, knižka, psíček, trošíčku, rožok, pivečko

### **Exercise 3**

Revise the relevant notes and translate into Slovak:

- 1 All the girls are in the library.
- 2 All the boys are in the bus.
- 3 How is that written?
- 4 Where are tickets to (into) the theatre sold?
- 5 The library closes at four.
- 6 We searched in all the rooms.

## **Dialogue 3**

*Ondrej finds a restaurant again for his friends*

**ONDREJ:** Toto je tá istá reštaurácia, o ktorej som vám práve včera rozprával. Je skutočne vynikajúca. Keby som bol vedel, že dnes majú otvorené, nebol by som hľadal inú možnosť. V pondelok totiž mávali kedysi zatvorené, ale teraz sa v oknách svieti a vidno, že niektoré stoly sú už obsadené. Prekvapujúci úspech! Tentoraz niet dôvodu sa obávať, že všetky stoly budú obsadené. Bol som tu už niekoľkokrát, a zakaždým mali voľné miesta. Už ide čašníčka. Dobrý večer, máte, prosím, voľný stôl pre štyri osoby?

**ČAŠNÍČKA:** Áno, pane, máme ešte jeden stôl voľný. Podte so mnou. My sa poznáme, však? Vídavám vás tu dosť často.

**ONDREJ:** Áno, bol som tu už niekoľko ráz. Zavše sem chodievam s kolegami zo zahraničia a zakaždým sa im táto

- reštaurácia veľmi páči. Pred dvoma týždňami som tu bol so štyrmi kamarátmi zo Spojených štátov.
- ČAŠNÍČKA: Pamätám sa na nich – tri dievčatá, však? A jeden starší pán. Ale, prepáčte, treba povedať, že by bolo naozaj lepšie, keby ste nám vopred zavolali a objednali si stôl, lebo teraz sem chodieva dosť veľa ľudí. Aj v pondelok tu býva často plno.
- ONDREJ: Niet sa čomu čudovať, keď máte takého vynikajúceho kuchára!
- ČAŠNÍČKA: No d'akujem! Som rada, že sa vám naša reštaurácia páči.
- ONDREJ: Počuť, že sa tu stretávajú aj politici a slávni umelci, pravda?
- ČAŠNÍČKA: Áno, sedávajú tu dlho, niekedy potom robievame do druhej alebo tretej ráno.

## Vocabulary

|                            |                         |                            |                                |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| bývať <i>freq.</i>         | to be                   | prekvapujúci               | surprising                     |
| dievčatá                   | girls                   | robievať <i>freq.</i>      | to work                        |
| dôvod                      | reason                  | sedávať <i>freq.</i>       | to sit                         |
| dvoma <i>ins.</i>          | of two                  | Spojené štáty              | United States                  |
| chodievať <i>freq.</i>     | to go                   | stretávať sa <i>freq.</i>  | to meet                        |
| istý                       | certain                 | svieti                     | it's shining,<br>lights are on |
| ten istý                   | the same                | štvrť <i>ins.</i>          | of four                        |
| kedysi                     | once (upon a<br>time)   | tentoraz                   | this time                      |
| kuchár, -ka                | cook                    | treba                      | it's necessary                 |
| mávať <i>freq.</i>         | to have                 | umelec, -ica               | artist                         |
| niektorý                   | some                    | úspech                     | success                        |
| obávať sa                  | to be afraid,<br>worry  | vidavať <i>freq.</i>       | to see                         |
| pamätať sa na<br>+ acc.    | to remember             | vidno                      | it's visible, you<br>can see   |
| plno                       | full                    | zahraničie                 | abroad                         |
| počuť                      | it's audible,<br>I hear | zatvorený                  | closed                         |
| pravda?                    | true?                   | zavše                      | from time to<br>time           |
| <b>keby som bol vedel</b>  |                         | if I'd known               |                                |
| <b>nebol by som hľadal</b> |                         | I wouldn't have looked for |                                |

|                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>mávali zatvorené</b>     | used to be closed   |
| <b>niet sa čomu čudovať</b> | it's not surprising |

## Language points

### The same

To say ‘the same’, meaning ‘one and the same’, you can use **ten istý**:

**Stále robí tie isté chyby.**

He keeps making the same mistakes.

**Bol to ten istý človek.**

It was the same person.

**To je tá istá pieseň, ktorú hrali včera.**

That is the same song (which) they played yesterday.

**Taký istý** means ‘the same kind of’:

**On je prchký a ty si taký istý.**

He is short-tempered and you are the same.

**Rovnaký** is another general term for ‘the same’:

**Bolí ma to stále na rovnakom mieste.**

It still hurts me in the same place.

**Mám rovnaké šaty ako ty.**

I have the same dress as you.

### ‘-ing’ adjectives

English ‘-ing’ adjectives (e.g. ‘a surprising success’) have Slovak equivalents ending in **-úci** or **-iaci**. You form them by adding **-ci** to the ‘they’ present form of a verb, e.g. **bežiaci** ‘running’ from **bežia** ‘they run’, **idúci** ‘going’ from **idú** ‘they go’. So:

**bežiaci pás**

a running belt

**idúci vlak**

a moving train

**prekvapujúci úspech**

a surprising success

**vedúca úloha**

a leading role

Some can act as nouns, e.g. **vedúci** ‘a manager’, **vedúca** ‘a manageress’, **cestujúci** ‘a traveller’, **cestujúca** ‘a female traveller’.

Similarly:

**Žena sediaca pri okne je moja sestra.**

The woman sitting by the window is my sister.

**Chlapec píšuci list je môj syn.**

The boy writing a letter is my son.

In writing you also find short fixed forms **-úc** or **-iac**, meaning ‘while doing’:

**Sediac v záhrade, pili čaj.**

(While) sitting in the garden, they drank tea.

**Pijúc čaj, počúvali rádio.**

(While) drinking tea, they listened to the radio.

If perfective they mean ‘after (doing)’:

**Vypijúc čaj, odišiel domov.**

(After) drinking the tea he went off home.

The rhythmic law applies only to this short form, e.g. **píšuc** (but **píšúci**).

## Frequentatives

A good number of verbs have the quite common *frequentative* forms **-ávať** and **-ievať** which refer to usual repetition:

**jest – jedávať      Kde jedávaš?** Where do you (usually) eat?  
**robiť – robievať      Robieva chyby.** He tends to make mistakes.

Even **chodiť** ‘to go regularly’ has a form **chodievať** meaning ‘to go from time to time’. In the past tense these verbs mean ‘used to do’:

**Chodieval do kostola.**      He used to go to church.

## ‘There isn’t’

‘There isn’t’ can be expressed by **niet** (= **nie je**), followed by nouns in the genitive:

**Niet vody.**      There’s no water. (*lit.* There isn’t [of] water.)

**Niet nikoho doma.** There’s no-one at home.

**Niet väčzej rýchlosťi, ako má svetlo.**

There’s no greater speed than light.

For past or future you substitute **nebolo** and **nebude**:

**Nebolo vody.**

There wasn't any water.

**Nebude nikoho doma.**

There won't be anyone at home.

**Niet** often turns up in set phrases:

**Niet pravidla bez výnimky.**

There's no rule without exception.

**Komu niet rady, tomu niet pomoci.**

For whom there's no advice, for him there's no help.

**Niet sa čomu čudovať.**

There isn't what (i.e. anything) to be surprised at.

### 'It's necessary', etc..

Certain idiomatic phrases omit an expected **je** 'is' in the present. For example, **treba** on its own means 'it is necessary'. For past and future you add **boľo** or **bude**:

**Treba si dávať pozor.**

It's necessary (i.e. you need) to watch out, take care.

**Bude treba si dávať pozor.**

It will be necessary to take care.

**Má všetko, čo treba.**

S/he has everything that's necessary.

**Treba povedať, že ...**

It's necessary to say that ...

The same applies to **vidieť** or **vidno** 'it's visible/evident' and **počuť** 'it's audible/one hears':

**Vidieť (vidno), že máte problémy.**

It's evident you've got problems.

**Odtiaľ zle počuť.**

From there it's poorly audible, you hear badly.

**Počuť, že máte problémy.**

One hears you've got problems.

## 'Would have done', 'had done'

To talk about what might have been in the past (but wasn't), you can add **bol** to the ordinary conditional, forming a *past conditional*:

**Keby bol mal peniaze, bol by si kúpil auto.**

If he had had (*lit.* 'would have had') money, he would have bought a car.

For 'would have been' you say **bol by býval**:

**Keby bol býval mladší, bol by chytíl vlak.**

If he had been younger, he would have caught the train.

**Keby bolo bývalo pekne, boli by sme sa išli kúpať.**

If it had been nice, we would have gone to bathe.

Sometimes you can even say 'had done' by adding **bol** to the past, though the simple past is enough:

**Obliekol si košeľu, ktorú si (bol) kúpil včera.**

He put on the shirt which he had bought yesterday.

## Vocative

When addressing someone, you normally use the subject form:

**Viera, Peter, podťe sem!** Viera, Peter, come here!

**Otecko, chceme ti niečo ukázať!**

Dad, I want to show you something!

However, a few male nouns have a form called the *vocative*, which can be used for this. They end in **-e** or **-u**, e.g. **pán – pane!** 'sir!' **boh – bože!** 'God!' **človek – človeče!** 'man!' **chlápec – chlapče!** 'lad!' **priateľ – priateľu!** 'pal!'.

**Čo si želáte, pane?** What would you like, sir?

**Človeče, čo to robíš?** What are you doing, man?

**Pane bože!** Lord God!

**Ja som sa zmenil, priateľu!** I've changed, pal!

## Case forms of numbers

For number phrases which are not the subject or object of the verb (or in the accusative after a preposition) you put the number into the same case as the noun.

For this you have to know the other case forms of numbers. Forms of **päť** give the model for higher numbers below **sto**:

|             |   |                           |
|-------------|---|---------------------------|
| <i>gen.</i> | <b>do dvoch, troch, štyroch, piatich rokov</b>            | up to 2, 3, 4,<br>5 years |
| <i>dat.</i> | <b>k dvom, trom, štyrom, piatim rokom</b>                 | to 2, 3, 4, 5<br>years    |
| <i>loc.</i> | <b>po dvoch, troch, štyroch, piatich rokoch</b>           | after 2, 3, 4,<br>5 years |
| <i>ins.</i> | <b>pred dvoma, troma/tromi, štyrmi, piatimi<br/>rokmi</b> | 2, 3, 4, 5<br>years ago   |

**Obidva** (**obi-** plus **dva**) or **oba** means ‘both’. Other forms are **obidve/obe**, **obidvaja/obaja**, **obidvoch/oboch**, etc.

**Piatich**, **šiestich**, **siedmich**, **ôsmich** and up have the same long vowels as their ordinals (**piaty**, **šiesty**, **siedmy**, **ôsmy**).

Optional male subject forms in **-i** have the same, e.g. **Prišli ôsmi kamaráti**. ‘Eight friends came’. (Or: **Prišlo osem kamarátov**.)

However, numbers ‘five’ and up are often left unaltered, e.g. **pred dvadsať** (**dvadsiatimi**) **rokmi** ‘five years ago’, and always: **pred dvadsaťjeden** **rokmi** ‘twenty-one years ago’, **pred sto/päťsto** **rokmi** ‘a hundred/five hundred years ago’.

**Niekoľko** and **mnoho** have adjective forms for this purpose:

|                              |                  |
|------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>pred niekoľkými dňami</b> | several days ago |
| <b>pred mnohými rokmi</b>    | many years ago   |

## Numbered items

Numbered items have a series of nouns ending in **-ka**:

|                      |   |                   |    |                     |    |
|----------------------|---|-------------------|----|---------------------|----|
| <b>jednotka</b>      | 1 | <b>sedmička</b>   | 7  | <b>dvadsiatka</b>   | 20 |
| <b>dvojka</b>        | 2 | <b>osmička</b>    | 8  | <b>tridsiatka</b>   | 30 |
| <b>trojka</b>        | 3 | <b>deviatka</b>   | 9  | <b>štyridsiatka</b> | 40 |
| <b>štvrťka</b>       | 4 | <b>desiatka</b>   | 10 | <b>päťdesiatka</b>  | 50 |
| <b>päťka/päťorka</b> | 5 | <b>jedenásťka</b> | 11 |                     |    |
| <b>šestka</b>        | 6 | <b>dvanásťka</b>  | 12 |                     |    |

These often refer to trams, buses, or rooms in hotels:

**Chodím osmičkou alebo dvadsaťtrojkou.**

I take the 8 or 23.

**Sadol do stoosemnásťky.** He boarded a 118.

**Býva na štvorke.**

S/he's staying in room 4.

**Jedenástka** is also a football 'eleven', **dvanásťka** '12° beer' (according to the traditional local measure of original gravity, around 5 per cent alcohol).

## Coins and banknotes

'Coin' is **minca**, Sk = **Slovenské koruny**:

|                    |      |                       |       |
|--------------------|------|-----------------------|-------|
| <b>dvojkorunák</b> | 2 Sk | <b>desaťkorunák</b>   | 10 Sk |
| <b>päťkorunák</b>  | 5 Sk | <b>dvadsaťkorunák</b> | 20 Sk |

'Banknote' is **bankovka** (**banka** is 'a bank'). Numbered-item nouns are used colloquially instead of the fuller names ending **-áčka**:

|   |         |
|---|---------|
| <b>dvadsaťkorunáčka, dvacka</b>           | 20 Sk   |
| <b>päťdesiatkorunáčka, päťdesiatka</b>    | 50 Sk   |
| <b>stokorunáčka, stovka</b>               | 100 Sk  |
| <b>päťstokorunáčka, päťstovka</b>         | 500 Sk  |
| <b>tisíckorunáčka, tisícka, tisícovka</b> | 1000 Sk |
| <b>päťtisíckorunáčka, päťtisícka</b>      | 5000 Sk |

**Mohli by ste mi rozmeniť tisícku?**

Could you change me a thousand-crown note?

## Sets of items

Yet more number words denote 'x sets/pairs' of things. Only the lower ones occur frequently. They are often found with plural nouns for single items, e.g. **nohavice** 'trousers', **dvere** 'door(s)':

|               |   |                 |    |
|---------------|---|-----------------|----|
| <b>jedny</b>  | 1 | <b>šestoro</b>  | 6  |
| <b>dvoje</b>  | 2 | <b>sedmoro</b>  | 7  |
| <b>troje</b>  | 3 | <b>osmoro</b>   | 8  |
| <b>štvoro</b> | 4 | <b>devätoro</b> | 9  |
| <b>päťoro</b> | 5 | <b>desatoro</b> | 10 |

**Jedny noviny**

one newspaper

**troje topánky/topánok**

three pairs of shoes

**dvoje nohavice/nohavíc**

two pairs of trousers

**štvoro nožníc**

four pairs of scissors.

**Jedni** also means 'some', in contrast to 'others':

**Jedni súhlasili, iní/druhí nie.** Some agreed, others didn't.

## X-times, fractions and sums

To say ‘x-times’ you just add **-krát** to the number or use the noun **raz, gen. pl. ráz: jedenkrát, jeden raz** ‘once, one time’, **dvakrát, dva razy** ‘twice, three times’ . . . **päťkrát, päť ráz** ‘five times’, **niekol'kokrát, niekol'ko ráz** ‘several times’.

The commonest lower fractions are: **polovica/polovina** ‘half’, **tretina** ‘a third’, **štvrtina** ‘a quarter’, **dve tretiny** ‘two thirds’, **tri štvrtiny** ‘three quarters’. Then (all **-ina**): **päťina, šestina, sedmina, osmina, deväťina, desatina** . . . **stotina** ‘hundredth’ . . . **tisícina** ‘thousandth’.

Shorter **pol** and **štvrt** are used for simple measures: **pol roka** ‘half a year’, **štvrt litra** ‘a quarter of a litre’, **tri štvrté kilometra** ‘three-quarters of a kilometre’, **pred pol rokom** ‘half a year ago’. Percentages use the noun **percento**: **jedno percento** ‘1 per cent’, **dve percentá** ‘2 per cent’, **päť percent** ‘5 per cent’.

Decimals are read out saying **celá** ‘whole number’, rather than the continental ‘comma’ (**čiarka**) and *not* ‘point’ (**bodka** = ‘full stop’). Adding ‘tenths’ etc. is optional:

|  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| <b>1,5 = Jedna celá päť (desatín)</b>    | ‘One whole five (tenths)’    |
| <b>3,1 = Tri celé jedna (desatina)</b>   | ‘Three wholes one (tenth)’   |
| <b>9,2 = Deväť celých dve (desatiny)</b> | ‘Nine wholes two (tenths)’   |
| <b>0,05 = Nula celá päť stotín</b>       | ‘Zero whole five hundredths’ |
| <b>or: Nula celá nula päť</b>            | ‘Zero whole zero five’       |

Lastly, some arithmetical phrases:

**Tri plus desať je (rovná sa) trinásť.**  
Three plus ten is (equals) thirteen.

**Dvanásť mínus sedem je päť.**  
Twelve minus seven is five.

**Sedem krát štyri je dvadsaťosem.**  
Seven times four is twenty-eight.

**Osemnásť delené troma je šesť.**  
Eighteen divided by three is six.

## Writing letters

There are various levels for ‘Dear’ in a Slovak letter. **Vážený** ‘Respected’ is formal, while **Milý** is suitable for friends and

relations. **Drahý** ‘Dear’ shows loving respect, perhaps for your beloved or close family. An exclamation mark habitually follows:

**Vážený pán Kováč!** Dear Mr Kováč, **Vážená paní Kováčová!** Dear Mrs Kováčová, **Vážená slečna Šabíková!** Dear Miss Šabíková, ...

**Milá Eva!** Dear Eva, **Milý Peter!** Dear Peter, **Ahoj, Eva!** Hi, Eva, ...

Place and date can be given as:

**V Bratislave 10. apríla 1996** Bratislava 10.4.1996

‘You’ and ‘your’ are capitalized:

**Ďakujem za Váš list.**

Thank you for your letter.

**Ďakujem Vám srdečne za milý list.**

Thank you sincerely for your nice letter.

**Odpovedám na Váš list zo dňa/z 18. júna t. r. (toho roku).**

I am replying to your letter of 18th June this year.

**Ďakujem Ti za pohľadnicu.**

Thank you for your postcard.

**Ospravedlňujem sa, že som Ti nenapísal(a), ako som slúbil(a), ale ...**

I apologize for not writing to you as I promised, but ...

**Prepáč, že som Ti nenapísal(a) skôr, ale ...**

Sorry I didn’t write to you sooner but ...

**Nehnevaj sa, že som Ti tak dlho nepísal(a).**

Don’t be angry that I didn’t write to you for so long.

You often end with phrases such as:

**Ďakujem Vám vopred.**

Thank you in advance.

**Očakávam Vašu skorú odpověď.**

I await your prompt reply.

**Teším sa na Tvoj/Váš list.**

I look forward to your letter.

**S pozdravom ...**

Yours sincerely/truly ...,

Regards ...

**So srdečným pozdravom ...**

With sincere regards ...

**Srdečné pozdravy ...**

Sincere regards ...

**Srdečne Vás (Ta) pozdravuje ...**

Warm greetings from ...

**Váš/Vaša or Tvoj/Tvoja ...**

Yours ... (formal/familiar)

**Bozkáva ...** Kisses from ... (quite common)  
**Ahoj! ...** Bye! ... (casual)

**Veselé Vianoce a šťastlivý Nový rok Vám/Ti želá ...**  
Wishing you a Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year ...

### **Exercise 4**

Form '-ing' adjectives from these verbs and translate into English:

cestovať, organizovať, študovať, čítať, volať, spievať, robiť, chodiť,  
bežať, sedieť, ležať, piť, spať, viesť, niesť

### **Exercise 5**

Identify the simple verbs these frequentatives come from:

robievať, sedávať, vídavať, bývať, jedávať, mávať, bývať

### **Exercise 6**

Revise the notes on numbers, insert correct forms, and translate into English:

- 1 Pred \_\_\_\_\_ rokmi. (4)
- 2 Po \_\_\_\_\_ rokoch. (2)
- 3 Čítam \_\_\_\_\_ novín. (3)
- 4 Mám len \_\_\_\_\_ nohavice. (1)
- 5 Chodím do roboty \_\_\_\_\_. (*by/on the no.* 17)
- 6 Bývam na \_\_\_\_\_. (*room no.* 8)

## **Reading 1**

*Marta writes a short letter to her friend Pavol*

V Košiciach dňa 23. augusta 1996

Milý Pavol!

Posielam Ti srdečné pozdravy z našej exkurzie po východnom Slovensku. Je tu krásne! Boli to veľmi pekné letné prázdniny. V horách sme boli viackrát, chodili sme po lesoch, spávali pod šírym nebom, kúpali sme sa v jazierkach, a tak ďalej. Počasie je tu ešte vynikajúce, je tridsať stupňov! Všetci sme pekne opálení. Nechce sa nám vôbec odísť, ale zajtra sa bohužiaľ musíme vrátiť domov.

‘Niet takej pesničky, čo by konca nemala.’ Treba sa pripraviť na skúšky a nový školský rok. Teším sa ale na Vianoce, lebo v decembri pôjdeme s oteckom do Paríža a zostaneme tam do jari!

Prepáč, že Ča obťažujem, ale mám k Tebe veľkú prosbu. Mohol by si mi požičať Tvoj veľký anglicko-slovenský slovník? Môj maličký vreckový slovník nestačí na prekladanie odbornej literatúry. Mám strašné ťažkosti s niektorými otázkami a tiež s povinným čítaním na budúci semestier. Ozvi sa! Zavolaj mi čo najskôr! Vieš predsa, aká som niekedy netrpezlivá! Teraz ale bežím na poštu kúpiť si obálky a známky! Oteckovi posielam aj balík. Ďakujem vopred!

Ahoj!

Marta

## Vocabulary

| anglicko-slovenský                   | English–Slovak              | po + loc.                               | through, over               |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| <b>balík</b>                         | parcel                      | <b>počasie</b>                          | the weather                 |
| <b>čo najskôr</b>                    | as soon as possible         | <b>poslat'/pošleť</b><br>< posielat'    | to send                     |
| <b>do + gen.</b>                     | until, till                 | <b>povinné čítanie</b>                  | compulsory/set reading      |
| <b>exkurzia</b>                      | excursion                   | <b>pozdrav</b>                          | greeting                    |
| <b>jar -i f.</b>                     | spring                      | <b>požičať si</b><br>< požičiavať si    | to borrow                   |
| <b>jazero, jazierko</b>              | lake, little lake           | <b>požičať</b><br>< požičiavať          | to lend                     |
| <b>kúpať sa</b>                      | to bathe                    | <b>prekladanie</b>                      | translation,<br>translating |
| <b>letný adj.</b>                    | summer                      | <b>prosba</b>                           | request                     |
| <b>maličký</b>                       | little, tiny little         | <b>semester -tra,</b><br><i>loc. -i</i> | semester                    |
| <b>na + acc.</b>                     | for (time ahead)            | <b>šíry</b>                             | wide open                   |
| <b>nebo -a, loc. -i</b>              | the sky                     | <b>školský rok</b>                      | school year                 |
| <b>netrpezlivý</b>                   | impatient                   | <b>slovník</b>                          | dictionary                  |
| <b>obálka</b>                        | envelope                    | <b>spávať freq.</b>                     | to sleep                    |
| <b>odborný adj.</b>                  | specialist,<br>technical    | <b>srdečný</b>                          | cordial                     |
| <b>opálený</b>                       | sunburnt                    | <b>stupeň -pňa</b>                      | degree                      |
| <b>otázka</b>                        | question                    | <b>ťažkosť</b>                          | difficulty                  |
| <b>ozvať/ozvem sa</b><br>< ozývať sa | to respond, get<br>in touch | <b>Vianoce f. pl.</b>                   | Christmas                   |
| <b>pesnička</b>                      | (little/nice)<br>song       |   |                             |

---

|                             |        |                                 |          |
|-----------------------------|--------|---------------------------------|----------|
| <b>vrecko, adj.</b>         | pocket | <b>východné</b>                 | eastern  |
| <b>vreckový</b>             |        | <b>Slovensko</b>                | Slovakia |
| <b>nechce sa nám</b>        |        | we don't feel like              |          |
| <b>niet takej pesničky,</b> |        | there's no song without an end, |          |
| <b>čo by konca nemala</b>   |        | all good things come to an end  |          |
| <b>pod šírym nebom</b>      |        | in the open air                 |          |
| <b>mám k tebe prosbu</b>    |        | I have a request for you.       |          |

# Grammar summary

This section contains reference tables for revision and further study with some additional information on nouns, adjectives, verbs and prepositions.

## Nouns and adjectives

The following revises the standard case forms of the most basic *noun* types accompanied by *adjectives* (soft type in brackets).

### ***Masculine/neuter***

- nom.* ten *pekný* (cudzí) *chlap*, *stôl* (*dom*); to *pekné* (cudzie) *mesto*  
*acc.* toho *pekného* (cudzieho) *chlapa*; *inanimate male and neuter*  
= nom.  
*gen.* od toho *pekného* (cudzieho) *chlapa*, *stola* (*domu*)  
*dat.* k tomu *peknému* (cudziemu) *chlapovi*, *stolu*  
*loc.* o tom *peknom* (cudzom) *chlapovi*, *stole*  
*ins.* s tým *pekným* (cudzím) *chlapom*, *stolom*

### ***Feminine***

- nom.* tá *pekná* (cudzia) *žena*  
*acc.* tú *peknú* (cudziu) *ženu*  
*gen.* od tej *peknnej* (cudzej) *ženy*  
*dat.* k tej *peknnej* (cudzej) *žene*  
*loc.* o tej *peknnej* (cudzej) *žene*  
*ins.* s tou *peknou* (cudzou) *ženou*

## **Plural**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| <i>nom.</i> | tí <i>pekní</i> (cudzí) <i>chlapi</i>   |
|             | tie <i>pekné</i> (cudzie) <i>stoly</i> ; <i>mestá</i> ; <i>ženy</i>                               |
| <i>acc.</i> | tých <i>pekných</i> (cudzích) <i>chlapov</i> ; <i>rest</i> = <i>nom.</i>                          |
| <i>gen.</i> | od tých <i>pekných</i> (cudzích) <i>chlapov</i> , <i>stolov</i> ; <i>miest</i> , <i>žien</i>      |
| <i>dat.</i> | k tým <i>pekným</i> (cudzím) <i>chlapom</i> , <i>stolom</i> ; <i>mestám</i> , <i>ženám</i>        |
| <i>loc.</i> | o tých <i>pekných</i> (cudzích) <i>chlapoch</i> , <i>stoloch</i> ; <i>mestách</i> , <i>ženach</i> |
| <i>ins.</i> | s tými <i>peknými</i> (cudzími) <i>chlapmi</i> , <i>stolmi</i> ; <i>mestami</i> , <i>ženami</i>   |

Remember also to follow the rhythmic law after long vowels: **krásny, krásneho** etc., if ‘soft’ then **domáci, domáceho, domáca, domácu** etc.

## **Nouns in more detail**

This section incorporates a number of other noun types into a more advanced summary for each gender.

### **(a) Masculine types**

#### **Singular**

|             | <i>Inanimate</i>   | <i>Human</i>           |
|-------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| <i>nom.</i> | stôl               | chláp, dedo/kolega     |
| <i>acc.</i> | = <i>nom.</i>      | = <i>gen.</i>          |
| <i>gen.</i> | od stola/domu      | od chlapa, deda/kolegu |
| <i>dat.</i> | k stolu            | k chlapovi             |
| <i>loc.</i> | o stole/roku/gauči | o chlapovi             |
| <i>ins.</i> | so stolom          | s chlapom              |

#### **Plural**

|             | <i>Inanimate</i> | <i>Human</i>               |
|-------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>nom.</i> | stoly/gauče      | chlapi/dedovia, kolegovia  |
| <i>acc.</i> | = <i>nom.</i>    | = <i>gen.</i>              |
| <i>gen.</i> | od stolov        | od chlapov                 |
| <i>dat.</i> | k stolom         | k chlapom                  |
| <i>loc.</i> | o stoloch        | o chlapoch                 |
| <i>ins.</i> | so stolmi/domami | s chlapmi/dedami, kolegami |

Animal nouns follow male human types in the singular but normally follow inanimate types in the plural.

Native surnames in **-o** have *acc./gen.* **-u:** **Botto – Bottu.** A few male human nouns have *dat./loc.* **-u:** **pán** ‘Mr’, **človek** ‘man’, **duch** ‘spirit’, **Boh** ‘God’, **čert** ‘devil’.

Various male human nouns have *pl.* **-ovia:** **otcovia, synovia.** Others have *pl.* **-ia**, including types ending **-an** and **-tel:** **Američania, priatelia** and **bratia.** Some masculines have *ins. pl.* **-ami** for ease of pronunciation: **domami, chlapcami.**

## (b) Neuter types

### *Singular*

|             |                |                    |             |
|-------------|----------------|--------------------|-------------|
| <i>nom.</i> | mesto          | pole, dievča       | námestie    |
| <i>acc.</i> | = <i>nom.</i>  |                    |             |
| <i>gen.</i> | od mesta       | od poľa, dievčaťa  | od námestia |
| <i>dat.</i> | k mestu        | k poľu, dievčaťu   | k námestiu  |
| <i>loc.</i> | o meste/jablku | o poli, dievčati   | o námestí   |
| <i>ins.</i> | s mestom       | s poľom, dievčaťom | s námestím  |

### *Plural*

|             |               |                      |              |
|-------------|---------------|----------------------|--------------|
| <i>nom.</i> | mestá         | polia/dievčatá       | námestia     |
| <i>acc.</i> | = <i>nom.</i> |                      |              |
| <i>gen.</i> | od miest      | od polí/dievčat      | od námestí   |
| <i>dat.</i> | k mestám      | k poliam/dievčatám   | k námestiam  |
| <i>loc.</i> | o mestách     | o poliach/dievčatách | o námestiah  |
| <i>ins.</i> | s mestami     | s poľami/dievčatami  | s námestiami |

Types **múzeum** and **rádio** also have *loc. -u* (**v múzeu, v rádiu**).

## (c) Feminine types

### *Singular*

|             |          |                   |                |
|-------------|----------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>nom.</i> | žena     | ulica/posteľ      | reštaurácia    |
| <i>acc.</i> | ženu     | ulicu/posteľ      | reštauráciu    |
| <i>gen.</i> | od ženy  | od ulice, posteľe | od reštaurácie |
| <i>dat.</i> | k žene   | k ulici           | k reštaurácií  |
| <i>loc.</i> | o žene   | o ulici           | o reštaurácií  |
| <i>ins.</i> | so ženou | s ulicou          | s reštauráciou |

## Plural

|             |               |                 |                 |
|-------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>nom.</i> | ženy          | ulice, postele  | reštaurácie     |
| <i>acc.</i> | = <i>nom.</i> |                 |                 |
| <i>gen.</i> | od žien       | od ulíc/postelí | od reštaurácií  |
| <i>dat.</i> | k ženám       | k uliciam       | k reštauráciám  |
| <i>loc.</i> | o ženách      | o uliciach      | o reštauráciách |
| <i>ins.</i> | so ženami     | s ulicami       | s reštauráciami |

Type **radosť** has *gen. sg* and *nom./acc. pl.* **-i** instead of **-e**. As well as nouns in **-osť** this type also includes miscellaneous nouns such as **noc -i** ‘night’, **vec -i** ‘thing’, **krv -i** ‘blood’. Nouns ending in a consonant + **-ňa** have *gen. pl.* **-í** (**spálňa – spální**).

## Verb types

Most verbs have forms which are predictable from their infinitives. Here are the main types, with present tense forms and the past form in **-l**.

### (a) á-types

**Volat** ‘to call’ is a typical **-at** verb:

|       |        |
|-------|--------|
| volám | voláme |
| voláš | voláte |
| volá  | volajú |

*volal*

**Bývať** ‘to live’ shortens **á** to **a** after a long vowel (rhythmic law):

|       |        |
|-------|--------|
| bývam | bývame |
| bývaš | bývate |
| býva  | bývajú |

*býval*

**Vraciať impf** ‘to return’ has a soft consonant before **-at**, after a short vowel. Others are **požičať pf** ‘to lend’ and **večerať** ‘to have supper’:

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| vraciam | vraciame |
| vraciaš | vraciate |
| vracia  | vracajú  |

*vracal*

**Mať** ‘to have’ is a regular **-at** verb:

|     |      |
|-----|------|
| mám | máme |
| máš | máte |
| má  | majú |

*mal*

## (b) í-types

**Robiť** ‘to do, work’, make is a typical -iť verb:

|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| <i>robím</i> | <i>robíme</i> |
| <i>robíš</i> | <i>robíte</i> |
| <i>robí</i>  | <i>robia</i>  |

*robil*

**Vrátiť** *pf* ‘to return’ shortens í to i after a long vowel (rhythmic law):

|               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| <i>vrátim</i> | <i>vrátim</i>  |
| <i>vrátiš</i> | <i>vrátite</i> |
| <i>vráti</i>  | <i>vrátia</i>  |

*vrátil*

**Vidieť** ‘to see’ is one of various basic verbs ending in -ieť:

|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| <i>vidím</i> | <i>vidíme</i> |
| <i>vidíš</i> | <i>vidíte</i> |
| <i>vidí</i>  | <i>vidia</i>  |

*videl*

## (c) e-types

**Kupovať** ‘to buy’ is a typical verb ending in -ovať:

|                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>kupujem</i> | <i>kupujeme</i> |
| <i>kupuješ</i> | <i>kupujete</i> |
| <i>kupuje</i>  | <i>kupujú</i>   |

*kupoval*

**Zabudnúť** *pf* ‘to forget’ is a typical verb ending in -núť:

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>zabudnem</i> | <i>zabudneme</i> |
| <i>zabudneš</i> | <i>zabudnete</i> |
| <i>zabudne</i>  | <i>zabudnú</i>   |

*zabudol, zabudla*

**Vládnúť** ‘to rule’, **vládnem** . . . **vládnú** shortens ú to u (rhythmic law).

**Ísť** ‘to go’ also belongs here. Its past tense form is irregular:

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>idem</i> | <i>ideme</i> |
| <i>ideš</i> | <i>idete</i> |
| <i>ide</i>  | <i>idú</i>   |

*(i)šiel, (i)šla*

**Môcť** ‘to be able, can’ is another e-type (-ú to -u: rhythmic law):

|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| <i>môžem</i> | <i>môžeme</i> |
| <i>môžeš</i> | <i>môžete</i> |
| <i>môže</i>  | <i>môžu</i>   |

*mohol, mohla*

## (d) ie-types

**Minúť** *pf* ‘to spend, miss’ is a typical ie-type verb with **-nút** after a vowel. Another verb like this is **spomenúť si, spomeniem si** *pf* ‘to remember’:

|               |                |              |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| <i>miniem</i> | <i>minieme</i> |              |
| <i>minieš</i> | <i>miniete</i> |              |
| <i>minie</i>  | <i>minú</i>    | <i>minul</i> |

Nearly all verbs ending in **-ctť, -stť, -ztť** are ie-types, e.g. **niesť** ‘to carry’:

|               |                |                       |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| <i>nesiem</i> | <i>nesieme</i> |                       |
| <i>nesieš</i> | <i>nesiete</i> |                       |
| <i>nesie</i>  | <i>nesú</i>    | <i>niesol, niesla</i> |

**Stučnieť** *pf* ‘to get fat’ shows an ie-type with infinitive **-niet**:

|                 |                     |                |
|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>stučniem</i> | <i>stučnieme</i>    |                |
| <i>stučnieš</i> | <i>stučniete</i>    |                |
| <i>stučnie</i>  | <i>stučnejú</i> (!) | <i>stučnel</i> |

A common individual verb of this type is **rozumieť** ‘to understand’:

|                 |                     |                |
|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>rozumiem</i> | <i>rozumieme</i>    |                |
| <i>rozumieš</i> | <i>rozumiete</i>    |                |
| <i>rozumie</i>  | <i>rozumejú</i> (!) | <i>rozumel</i> |

## Miscellaneous verbs

Learn the following verbs individually. Most are used elsewhere in the course, but some other basic verbs have been added to this list.

### (a) Miscellaneous á-types

|             |                                  |         |
|-------------|----------------------------------|---------|
| <b>-at'</b> | <b>čakať &gt; počkať, počkám</b> | to wait |
|             | <b>dať, dám &lt; dávať</b>       | to give |
|             | <b>hrať, hrám (sa)</b>           | to play |
|             | <b>mať, mám</b>                  | to have |
|             | <b>poznať, poznám</b>            | to know |
|             | <b>zdať sa, zdám sa</b>          | to seem |

## (b) Miscellaneous i-types

|              |                                 |                  |
|--------------|---------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>-iet'</b> | <b>bolieť, bolí</b>             | to hurt          |
|              | <b>letieť, letím</b>            | to fly           |
|              | <b>musieť, musím</b>            | to have to, must |
|              | <b>myslieť, myslím</b>          | to think         |
|              | <b>sedieť, sedím</b>            | to sit           |
|              | <b>vrvieť, vravím</b>           | to say           |
|              | <b>trpieť, trpím</b>            | to suffer        |
|              | <b>vidieť, vidím</b>            | to see           |
| <b>-at'</b>  | <b>bežať, bežím</b>             | to run           |
|              | <b>držať, držím</b>             | to hold          |
|              | <b>ležať, ležím</b>             | to lie           |
|              | <b>kričať, kričím</b>           | to shout         |
|              | <b>spáť, spím</b>               | to sleep         |
| <b>-át</b>   | <b>báť sa, bojím sa, bál sa</b> | to fear          |
|              | <b>stáť, stojím, stál</b>       | to stand         |

## (c) Miscellaneous e-types

|              |   |                         |
|--------------|---|-------------------------|
| <b>-núť'</b> | <b>dotknúť sa, dotknem sa, dotkol sa</b>  |                         |
|              | <b>&lt; dotýkať sa</b>                    | to touch                |
|              | <b>hnúť, hne, hnul &lt; hýbať, hýbem,</b> |                         |
|              | <b>hýbal (sa)</b>                         | to move                 |
|              | <b>vyhnúť sa &lt; vyhýbať sa +dat.</b>    | to avoid                |
|              | <b>zapnúť, zapnem, zapol &lt; zapínať</b> | to fasten, switch on    |
|              | <b>rozopnúť &lt; rozpínať</b>             | to unfasten             |
|              | <b>vypnúť &lt; vypínať</b>                | to switch off           |
| <b>-at'</b>  | <b>česať, češem &gt; učesať</b>           | to comb                 |
|              | <b>chápať, chápem &gt; pochopit'</b>      | to grasp,<br>understand |
|              | <b>písat, píšem &gt; napísat'</b>         | to write                |
|              | <b>plakať, plačem &gt; zaplakať</b>       | to cry, weep            |
|              | <b>poslať, pošlem &lt; posielat'</b>      | to send                 |
|              | <b>pozvať, pozvem &lt; pozývať</b>        | to invite               |
|              | <b>prijať, prijemem &lt; prijímať</b>     | to receive              |
|              | <b>ukázať, ukážem &lt; ukazovať</b>       | to show                 |
|              | <b>zakázať &lt; zakazovať</b>             | to forbid               |
|              | <b>začať, začнем &lt; začínať</b>         | to begin                |
|              | <b>stať sa, stanem sa &lt; stávať sa</b>  | to happen, become       |

|  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| <b>dostať &lt; dostávať</b>                | to get                 |
| <b>(z)ostat' &lt; (z)ostávať</b>           | to stay                |
| <b>prestať &lt; prestávať</b>              | to stop, cease         |
| <b>vstať &lt; vstávať</b>                  | to get up, stand up    |
| <b>-iat' diať sa, deje sa</b>              | to happen, be going on |
| <b>liať, lejem</b>                         | to pour                |
| <b>naliať &lt; nalievať</b>                | to pour out            |
| <b>priať, prajem</b>                       | to wish                |
| <b>siať, sejem</b>                         | to sow                 |
| <b>smiať sa, smejem sa &gt; zasmiať sa</b> | to laugh               |
| <b>vziať, vezmem, vzal (!) pf</b>          | to take                |
| <b>-iet' chcieť, chcem</b>                 | to want                |
| <b>chviesť sa, chvejem sa</b>              | to tremble             |
| <b>-it' biť, bijem</b>                     | to hit                 |
| <b>piť, pijem &gt; napiť sa, vypiť</b>     | to drink               |
| <b>šíť, šijem</b>                          | to sew                 |
| <b>žiť, žijem</b>                          | to live                |
| <b>-ut' počuť, počujem</b>                 | to hear                |
| <b>obuť, obujem &lt; obúvať (sa)</b>       | to put on (shoes)      |
| <b>zobuť &lt; zobúvať (sa)</b>             | to take off (shoes)    |
| <b>-yt' kryť, kryjem</b>                   | to cover               |
| <b>umyť, umyjem &lt; umývať</b>            | to wash                |
| <b>-ct' môcť, môžem, mohol/mohla</b>       | to be able, can        |
| <b>pomôcť &lt; pomáhať</b>                 | to help                |
| <b>-st' ísť, idem, (i)šiel/(i)šla</b>      | to go, come            |

## (d) Miscellaneous ie-types

|  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| <b>-at' brať, beriem &gt; zobrať</b>                 | to take                          |
| <b>pf also vziať, vezmem, vzal (!)</b>               |                                  |
| <b>hnať, ženiem (!), hnali</b>                       | to drive                         |
| <b>-iet' pozrieť, pozriem (sa) &lt; pozerať (sa)</b> | to look                          |
| <b>smieť, smiem</b>                                  | to be allowed to                 |
| <b>nesmieť</b>                                       | not to be allowed<br>to, mustn't |
| <b>mlieť, meliem</b>                                 | to grind                         |
| <b>zomlieť &lt; zomiel'ať</b>                        | to grind                         |
| <b>umrieť, umriem &lt; umierať</b>                   | to die                           |

|  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| <b>zavrieť, zavriem &lt; zavierať</b>      | to close                 |
| <b>rozumieť, rozumiem . . . rozumejú</b>   |                          |
| > <b>po-</b>                               | to understand            |
| <b>-ciť: obliecť, oblečiem, obliekol</b>   | to put on<br>(clothes)   |
| < <b>obliekať (sa)</b>                     |                          |
| <b>vyzliecť &lt; vyzliekať (sa)</b>        | to take off<br>(clothes) |
| <b>piecť, pečiem, piekol &gt; u-</b>       | to bake                  |
| <b>tiecť, tečie, tiekol</b>                | to flow                  |
| <b>utiecť &lt; utekať</b>                  | to run away              |
| <b>vliecť, vlečiem, vliekol</b>            | to drag                  |
| <b>-st'</b>                                |                          |
| <b>klásť, kladiem, kládol &gt; položiť</b> | to put, lay              |
| <b>niesť, nesiem, niesol</b>               | to carry                 |
| <b>pliesť, pletiem, plietol</b>            | to confuse, knit         |
| <b>rásť, rastiem, rástol</b>               | to grow                  |
| <b>triasť, trasiem, triasol</b>            | to shake                 |
| <b>viesť, vediem, viedol</b>               | to lead                  |
| <b>-zť'</b>                                |                          |
| <b>liezť, leziem, liezol</b>               | to climb, crawl          |
| <b>viezť, veziem, viezol</b>               | to convey                |

## (e) Irregular verbs

|               |                                |                                  |
|---------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>byť</b>    | <b>som, si, je</b>             | I am, you are,<br>s/he/it is     |
| <i>to be</i>  | <b>sme, ste, sú</b>            | we are, you are,<br>they are     |
|               | <b>nie som</b>                 | I am not                         |
|               | <b>niet +gen.</b>              | there isn't                      |
|               | <b>bol</b>                     | was, were                        |
|               | <b>budem, budeš, bude</b>      | I, you, s/he/it<br>shall/will be |
|               | <b>budeme, budete, budú</b>    | we, you, they<br>shall/will be   |
| <b>jest'</b>  | <b>jem, ješ, je</b>            | eat(s)                           |
| <i>to eat</i> | <b>jeme, jete, jedia</b>       |                                  |
|               | <b>jedol</b>                   | ate                              |
|               | <b>zjestť, zjem, zjedol pf</b> | eat up                           |
|               | <b>najestť sa pf</b>           | eat your fill                    |

|                |  |          |
|----------------|--|----------|
| <b>vedieť'</b> | <b>viem, vieš, vie</b>                               | know(s)  |
| <i>to know</i> | <b>vieme, viete, vedia</b>                           |          |
|                | <b>vedel</b>   | knew     |
|                | <b>povedať, poviem pf</b>                            | to tell  |
|                | <b>odpovedať, odpoviem pf</b>                        | to reply |
|                | <i>(impf of odpovedať is odpovedať, odpovedám!!)</i> |          |

## Prepositions in more detail

### (a) Basic prepositions

Here are some meanings of basic prepositions. Note how several taking *locative* or *instrumental* switch to *accusative* for particular meanings.

#### **Accusative**

|            |                        |   |
|------------|------------------------|---|
| <b>cez</b> | across, through        | <b>Prešiel cez ulicu.</b><br>He crossed the street.     |
|            |                        | <b>Prešiel cez tunel.</b><br>He went through the tunnel |
| <b>pre</b> | for (sake, benefit of) | <b>To je pre mňa.</b><br>This is for me.                |
|            | for, because of        | <b>Nevidím pre tmu.</b><br>I can't see for the dark.    |

#### **Genitive**

|            |                 |  |
|------------|-----------------|--|
| <b>bez</b> | without         | <b>Pijem kávu bez cukru.</b><br>I drink coffee without sugar.  |
| <b>do</b>  | into, to        | <b>Idem do mesta.</b><br>I'm going into/to town.               |
|            | until, till     | <b>Zostanem tu do januára.</b><br>I'll stay here till January. |
| <b>od</b>  | away from, from | <b>Odišla od okna.</b><br>She went away from the window.       |
|            | from (person)   | <b>Dostal list od Petra.</b><br>He got a letter from Peter.    |

|              |                          |  |
|--------------|--------------------------|--|
| <b>u</b>     | at (house, place of)     | <b>Bývam u tety.</b><br>I live at my aunt's.   |
| <b>z, zo</b> | out of<br>off, down from | <b>Vyšiel z izby.</b><br>He went out of the room.<br><b>Kniha spadla zo stola.</b><br>The book fell off the table. |
|              |                          |  |

**Dative**

|              |   |   |
|--------------|---|---|
| <b>k, ku</b> | towards, to<br>to (as far as)<br>to (house, place of) | <b>Ideš ku kostolu.</b><br>You go towards/to the church.<br><b>Ako sa dostanem k Dunaju?</b><br>How do I get to the Danube?<br><b>Idem k tete.</b><br>I'm going to my aunt's. |
| <b>proti</b> | against, opposite                                     | <b>Ste proti mne.</b><br>You are against me.  |

**Locative**

|           |                     |  |
|-----------|---------------------|--|
| <b>na</b> | on                  | <b>Kniha leží na stole.</b><br>The book is lying on the table.     |
|           | (+ acc.)<br>onto    | <b>Položil knihu na stôl.</b><br>He put the book on(to) the table. |
|           | for (purpose)       | <b>Čakám na električku.</b><br>I'm waiting for the tram.           |
|           | for (intended time) | <b>Som tu len na týždeň.</b><br>I'm here only for a week.          |
| <b>o</b>  | about (topic)       | <b>Hovoria o politike.</b><br>They're talking about politics.      |
|           | at (hour)           | <b>Prídem o druhéj.</b><br>I'll come at two.                       |
|           | (+ acc.)            |  |
|           | in (after time)     | <b>Prídem o chvíľu.</b><br>I'll come in a moment.                  |
|           | on, against         | <b>Opieral sa o stôl.</b><br>He was leaning on the table.          |

|              |                  |   |
|--------------|------------------|---|
|              | by (difference)  | <b>Si o rok starší ako ja.</b><br>You're ('by') a year older than me.   |
| <b>po</b>    | after            | <b>Po obedě čítal noviny.</b><br>After lunch he read the paper.         |
|              | along            | <b>Bežal po ulici.</b><br>He ran along the street.                      |
|              | about, around    | <b>Behala po záhrade.</b><br>She ran about the garden.                  |
|              | (+ acc.)         | <b>Sneh mu bol až po kolená.</b><br>The snow was right up to his knees. |
|              | as far as, up to | <b>Idem po mlieko.</b><br>I'm going for/to get some milk.               |
|              | for (to fetch)   | <b>Pršalo (po) celý deň.</b><br>It rained all day.                      |
|              | for, during      |   |
| <b>pri</b>   | near, by         | <b>Sedím pri okne.</b><br>I'm sitting by the window.                    |
| <b>v, vo</b> | in               | <b>Sedím v aute.</b><br>I'm sitting in the car.                         |
|              | in (month, etc.) | <b>V januári sneží.</b><br>In January it snows.                         |
|              | (+ acc.)         | <b>V pondelok.</b>  |
|              | on (day)         | On Monday.  |
|              | in (some verbs)  | <b>Neveríš v Boha?</b><br>You don't believe in God?                     |

### ***Instrumental***

|             |               |   |
|-------------|---------------|---|
|             | medzi between | <b>Medzi oknom a stolom.</b><br>Between the window and the table. |
|             | among(st)     | <b>Medzi kamarátkami.</b><br>Amongst friends.                     |
| <b>nad</b>  | above, over   | <b>Stál nad mestom.</b><br>He stood over the town.                |
| <b>pod</b>  | below, under  | <b>Stál pod hradom.</b><br>He stood below the castle.             |
| <b>pred</b> | in front of   | <b>Stál pred domom.</b>   |

|                 |                |   |
|-----------------|----------------|---|
|                 | before         | He stood in front of the house.<br><b>Pred vojnou bol doma.</b> |
|                 | ago            | Before the war he was at home.<br><b>Bol tu pred rokom.</b>     |
| <i>s, so</i>    | with           | He was here a year ago.<br><b>Idem tam s Petrom.</b>            |
| <i>za</i>       | behind, beyond | I'm going there with Peter.<br><b>Stojí za stromom.</b>         |
| (+ acc.)        |                | S/he is standing behind a tree.                                 |
| for (exchange)  |                | <b>Kúpil to za päť korún.</b>                                   |
| in (time taken) |                | He bought it for five crowns.<br><b>Urobím to za hodinu.</b>    |
| (+ gen.)        |                | I'll get it done in an hour.                                    |
| during          |                | <b>Za vojny bol v Amerike.</b>                                  |
|                 |                | During the war he was in America.                               |

Note also that **medzi**, **nad**, **pod**, **pred** and **za** are followed by the *accusative* when you mean ‘motion towards’:

**Spadol pod stôl.**

He fell under the table.

**Spadol medzi stoličky.**

He fell between the chairs.

**Po-** ‘along’ added to **medzi**, **nad**, **pod**, **pred** and **za** + *accusative* means ‘motion in the location’:

**Vták letel ponad dom.**

The bird flew over (‘along over’) the house.

## (b) Other prepositions

These less basic, but still common prepositions take the *genitive*:

|                      |                          |                  |               |
|----------------------|--------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <b>blízko</b>        | near                     | <b>ned'aleko</b> | not far from  |
| <b>d'aleko od</b>    | far from                 | <b>okolo</b>     | around, about |
| <b>mimo</b>          | outside                  | <b>okrem</b>     | apart from    |
| <b>namiesto</b>      | instead of               |                  |               |
| <b>na rozdiel od</b> | unlike, as distinct from |                  |               |
| <b>počas</b>         | during                   |                  |               |
| <b>podľa</b>         | according to, along      |                  |               |
| <b>popri</b>         | along by, alongside      |                  |               |

---

|                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| <b>pomocou</b>   | with the help of |
| <b>uprostred</b> | in the middle of |
| <b>vedľa</b>     | next to          |

A few others take the *dative*:

|                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| <b>kvôli</b>   | for the sake of          |
| <b>napriek</b> | despite                  |
| <b>naproti</b> | opposite                 |
| <b>vd'aka</b>  | thanks to                |
| <b>voči</b>    | towards, with respect to |

# Key to exercises

The answers given are not of course always the only possible ones. Word order may also vary (remember, last words carry more emphasis).

## Lesson 1

**1**

1 Dobrý deň. (Ja) som Jozef. 2 Teší ma. 3 (Vy) ste Slovák/  
Slovenka? 4 Nie. (Ja) som Angličan/Angličanka. 5 Viera čaká  
vonku.

**2**

1 Ste Američanka? Are you (an) American (woman)? 2 Je Viera  
Slovenka? Is Viera (a) Slovak (woman)? 3 Máte kufor? Do you  
have a suitcase? 4 Ste/Si vonku? Are you outside? 5 (Vy) ste Jana?  
Are you Jana?

**3**

1 Náš hrad je pekný. 2 Dunaj nie je modrý. 3 Mám nové auto.  
4 Voda je čistá. 5 Staré mesto je krásne/pekné.

**4**

špinavý, veľký, vľavo, nie, krásny/pekný, starý

**5**

1 Viera is Slovak. Viera nie je Slovenka. 2 They're waiting outside.  
Nečakajú vonku. 3 I live here. Nebývam tu. 4 I'm English. Nie  
som Angličan.

**6**

1 Dobre. Mám sa dobre. 2 Nie. Nie som Slovák/Slovenka.  
3 Volám sa (John/Jane Brown). 4 Áno. Bratislava je pekné mesto.  
5 Nie. Dunaj nie je čistý. 6 Volá sa (Štefan Horák). 7 Áno, je  
starý/Nie, nie je starý, je mladý.

**7**

Ako sa máte? Máte auto? Je tu Štefan? Do videnia.

**Lesson 2****1**

1 Hrá sa. 2 Fajčí a čaká na obed. 3 Je doma. 4 Varí obed. 5 Učí  
sa. 6 Sedí doma, číta, počúva rádio, alebo spí.

**2**

1 Fajčíš/Fajčíte? 2 Kde je Igor? 3 Spíš/Spíte? 4 Počúvaš/Počúvate  
rádio? 5 Ako sa voláte?

**3**

1 Môj kufor, moje auto, moja sestra 2 tvoja rieka, tvoj obed, tvoje  
rádio 3 naše mesto, naša rieka, náš hrad 4 vaša matka, váš učiteľ,  
váš taxík

**4**

1 Nie, nemám rád/rada vodu. 2 Nie, nehrám futbal. 3 Nie, nemám  
rád/rada šport. 4 Nie, neplávam. 5 Nie, nie som lenivý/lenivá.  
6 Nie, nie som chorý/chorá. 7 Nie, nemusím fajčiť.

**5**

1 Áno, musím sa učiť. 2 Áno, viem po anglicky. 3 Áno, rozumiem po nemecky. 4 Áno, Evička vie variať. 5 Áno, hovorím dobre po nemecky. 6 Áno, viem hrať tenis. 7 Áno, musíme hrať nejaký šport.

**6**

dve sestry, dva obedy, dve autá, dva listy, dva taxíky, dve matky

**Lesson 3****1**

1 Vidím rieku. I see the river. 2 Varím obed/večeru. I'm cooking lunch/supper. 3 Nemáme vodu. We don't have (any) water. 4 Nemajú učiteľa. They don't have a teacher. 5 Nepoznajú Igora. They don't know Igor. 6 Vidíte brata? Do you see (my) brother?

**2**

1 Mám brata. 2 Nemám sestru. 3 Eva nemá otca. 4 Nemajú matku. 5 Poznáš/poznáte Evu? 6 Poznáš/poznáte Jozefa? 7 Pozná Eva Pavla?

**3**

1 Do you run? Áno, behám./Nie, nebehám. 2 Do you swim? Áno, plávam./Nie, neplávam. 3 Do you like water? Áno, mám vodu rád/rada./Nie, nemám vodu rád/rada. 4 Are you a sportsman/sportswoman? Áno, som športovec/športovkyňa./Nie, nie som športovec/športovkyňa. 5 Do you go for walks? Áno, chodím na prechádzky./Nie, nechodím na prechádzky. 6 Do you play football? Áno, hrám futbal./Nie, nehrám futbal. 7 Are you lazy? Áno, som lenivý/lenivá./Nie, nie som lenivý/lenivá. 8 Do you know Bratislava well? Áno, poznám Bratislavu dobre./Nie, nepoznám dobre Bratislavu.

**4**

1 To je dobrá voda. That is good water. 2 Ivan má dobrého učiteľa. Ivan has a good teacher. 3 Eva nemá správnu adresu. Eva doesn't

have the correct address. 4 Poznáte pána Vilikovského? Do you know Mr Vilikovský. 5 Máte peknú výslovnosť. You have nice pronunciation. 6 Viera má anglického otca. Viera has an English father. 7 Ondrej má slovenskú matku/matku Slovenku. Ondrej has a Slovak mother. 8 Koho hľadáš? Who(m) are you looking for? 9 Janko hľadá niekoho. Janko is looking for someone.

**5**

1 Áno. 2 Nie. 3 Nie. 4 Nie. 5 Nie.

**Lesson 4****1**

1 Nie. 2 Nie. 3 Nie. 4 Áno. 5 Nie.

**2**

1 Nie. Jana varí obed./Obed varí Jana. 2 Áno. 3 Nie. Jana ide do samoobsluhy./Do samoobsluhy ide Jana. 4 Nie. Peter študuje v Bratislave ekonómiu. 5 Nie. Jana študuje v Prahe medicínu.

**3**

pracujem/robím, fajčíš, hľadajú, dávame, hrajú, plávate, varíme, spia, idem, upratujú, študujeme

**4**

1 do Prešova, v Prešove 2 do Trnavy, v Trnave 3 do mesta, v meste  
 4 do samoobsluhy, v samoobsluhe 5 do Nitry, v Nitre 6 v Martine,  
 do Martina 7 v Komárne, do Komárna

**5**

1 Prosím si zmrzlinu. 2 Prosím si pepsikolu. 3 Prosím si pohár mlieka. 4 Prosím si šálku kávy. 5 Prosím si kus chleba. 6 Prosím si pohár vody.

**6**

1 do hotela 2 do záhrady 3 do parku 4 v Oxforde 5 nemá zmrzlinu 6 kávu 7 píše list 8 si kupuje knihu

**Lesson 5****1**

1 Máte syr, čaj, kávu? 2 Nemáte pivo, víno, vajíčko, rybu?  
3 Prosím si omeletu, biele víno.

**2**

1 Nie. Janko ide do mesta. 2 Nie. Janko ide k bratovi. 3 Nie. Viera chce íť do kina. 4 Nie. Film je o politike a o prezentovi. 5 Nie. Peter nechce mäso. Chce vajíčko alebo syr. 6 Nie. Chce červené víno./Peter červené víno chce.

**3**

1 Varím matke obed. I cook mother lunch. 2 Pomáham Pavlovi. I help Pavol. 3 Ideme k Jozefovi na večeru. We're going to Jozef's for supper. 4 Hovoríme o politike. We're talking about politics. 5 Jana hovorí o Jurajovi. Jana is talking about Juraj.

**4**

1 Nechcem čaj, chcem kávu. 2 Evička nechce rybu. 3 Chceme íť do kina. 4 Čo si prajete/želáte/dáte na pitie? 5 Káva je na stole. 6 Otec hovorí o Igorovi. 7 Niekedy matke pomáhame. 8 Ideme ku Kataríne. 9 Pamätaš/Pamätáte si jej meno?

**5**

1 Je v parku. 2 Pracuje v múzeu. 3 Hovoria o politike, o literatúre, o umení. 4 Pani Rybárová je doma, nemôže pracovať, lebo je chorá, ale hrá veľmi pekne na klavíri. 5 Nie, ale hrá na gitare a rada spieva.

**6**

1 Zora hrá na gitare. Zora plays the guitar. 2 Bývam v hoteli. I'm living in a hotel. 3 Eva sedí na gauči. Eva is sitting on the settee. 4 Múzeum je na námestí. The museum is on the square. 5 Pavol dáva šálku na koberec. Pavol puts the cup on the carpet. 6 Šálka je na koberci. The cup is on the carpet. 7 Ak chceš, môžeš plávať. You can swim if you want. 8 Viem, že Viera vie písat. I know that Viera can write. 9 Nemôžeme ísť na koncert. We can't go to the concert. 10 Chceme ísť do kina. We want to go to the cinema.

**Lesson 6****1**

1 Do you go to work by car? – Nie, chodím autobusom. 2 Where is your flat? – Náš byt je na námestí za kostolom. 3 Where is the church? – Kostol je pred školou. 4 And where is the school? – Škola je medzi kinom a riekom. 5 How do you go to Prague? – Chodíme do Prahy vlakom. 6 Are you travelling alone? – Nie, cestujem s otcom a matkou. 7 How do you like it here? – Veľmi sa mi tu páči. 8 What would you like? – Čaj s mliekom, prosím, a s cukrom. 9 Yes please? – Prosím si spiatočný lístok s miestenkou do Prešova.

**2**

1 Chalupa je medzi školou a námestím. 2 Dedina je ďaleko od Prešova, lebo nie je ďaleko od Bratislavы. 3 Pije kávu bez cukru a s mliekom. 4 Peter cestuje s bratom a so sestrou. 5 Včera boli v Žiline a dnes idú do Prešova.

**3**

1 Hľadal som sestru. I was looking for my sister. 2 V lete si neštudoval(a). In the summer you didn't study. 3 Čo ste robili na jar? What did you do in spring? 4 Pavol išiel do kina. Pavol went to the cinema. 5 Otec bol v krčme. Father was in the bar/tavern. 6 Pozeral som televíziu. I was watching TV. 7 V zime hrali šach. In winter they played chess. 8 Študoval som medicínu. I studied medicine. 9 Matka nemala byt. Mother didn't have a flat. 10 Na jeseň smecestovali. In the autumn we travelled.

**4**

1 I drank coffee. Pijem kávu. 2 Eva waited for the train. Eva čaká na vlak. 3 Pavol wasn't at home. Pavol nie je doma. 4 Sister was tired. Sestra je unavená. 5 The school was on the square. Škola je na námestí. 6 Juraj was studying. Juraj sa učí. 7 They went to bed/to sleep. Idú spať. 8 Father didn't have a sister. Otec nemá sestru.

**5**

Náš dom je/bol na námestí medzi školou a riekou. Môj otec tam chodí/chodil autom, ale sestra chodí/chodila niekedy aj vlakom. Our house is/was on the square between the school and the river. My father goes/went there by car, but my sister goes/went sometimes also by train.

**6**

1 Prší. Je mi zima. 2 Je pekne. Slunko svieti. 3 Je zima. Sneží. 4 Je oblačno/zatiahnuto, ale horúco. 5 Je veterno, ale je mi teplo. 6 Je hmlisto a mrzne.

**Lesson 7****1**

1 bravčový rezeň a zemiakový šalát 2 párok v rožku s horčicou  
 3 rybu a chlieb s maslom 4 zeleninovú polievku, rybu a chlieb so syrom 5 kurča s ryžou a zmrzlinu 6 fazuľku s vajíčkom a rožok s džemom

**2**

1 ... v menze ... ako v reštaurácii 2 ... do kaviarne ... kávu  
 ... pohárik vína ... 3 na ulici ... s horčicou

**3**

1 Jedia/jedli v hoteli alebo v reštaurácii. 2 Obedujeme/obedovali sme v kaviarni. 3 Potom večeriame/sme večerali doma. 4 Na raňajky jem/som jedol chlieb so syrom alebo s džemom. 5 Pijem/pil

som kávu a čaj s cukrom a s mliekom. 6 Reštaurácia je/bola dobrá, hoci je/bola aj pomerne drahá.

## 4

Jozef je vonku. Včera pršalo. Sedel doma, čítal si noviny a počúval rádio. Dnes chcel ísť von. Teraz je v meste. Išiel do Carltonu. Má v kaviarni schôdzku s kamarátkou. Je to Angličanka. Volá sa Andrea. Jozef ju učí slovenčinu.

## 5

1 Sedela v knižnici. She was sitting in the library. 2 Je hore v spálni. She's upstairs in the bedroom. 3 Janko je v posteli. Janko's in bed. 4 Otec bol v kuchyni. Father was in the kitchen. 5 Pozeral televíziu. He was watching TV. 6 Janko si oblieka sveter. Janko puts on his sweater. 7 Jozef si umýva ruky. Jozef washes his hands. 8 Eva si vyzlieka kabát. Eva takes off her coat. 9 Viera si zobúva topánky. Viera takes off her shoes. 10 Igor si obúva topánky. Igor puts on his shoes.

## Lesson 8

### 1

uvariť, vypiť, zaplatiť, zjestť, urobiť, napísat'

### 2

kupovať/kúpiť, dávať/dať, pozývať/pozvať, čítať/prečítať,  
d'akovať/pod'akovat'

### 3

1 Igor čítal román. Igor was reading a novel. 2 Zuzka prečítala list. Zuzka has read the letter. 3 Mišo zjedol strašne veľa. Mišo has eaten an awful lot. 4 Eva vypila fľašu vína. Eva has drunk a bottle of wine. 5 Mišo a Eva pili celý deň. Mišo and Eva were drinking all day. 6 Brat uvaril naozaj chutnú večeru. My brother has cooked a really tasty supper. 7 Sestra urobila jednu veľkú chybu. My sister has made one big mistake. 8 Otec mu napíše pekný list. Father will write him a nice letter. 9 Zajtra mu

poďakujem za tú knihu. Tomorrow I'll thank him for that book.  
 10 Mohol/Mohla by som hovoriť s pani Vilikovskou? Could I speak  
 to Mrs Vilikovská? 11 Chcel(a) by som hovoriť s pani Bednárovou.  
 I would like to speak to Mrs Bednárová.

**4**

– Haló? Pani Bednárová? – Yes, speaking. Who's calling? – Peter/Viera. Mohol/Mohla by som hovoriť s pánom Bednárom? – Unfortunately he's not at home. He's in Vienna. – Aha, rozumiem. Kedy sa vráti, pani Bednárová? – He'll return on Monday. Should I give him a message? – Ehm . . . nie. Nie je to veľmi dôležité. Chcel(a) by som sa s ním stretnúť. Zavolám mu pozajtra, v pondelok večer. Nebude vám to prekážať? – No, that's all right. I'll tell him you called. – Ďakujem vám pekne. Prepáčte, že som vás obťažoval. – It doesn't matter/You're welcome. Goodbye. – Do videnia.

**5**

1 Viera otvorila okno. 2 Eva zatvorila okno. 3 Pavol si obliekol nohavice. 4 Eva si obliekla sveter. 5 Pavol si vyzliekol košeľu. 6 Včera dostał pekný list. 7 Vstal zavčasu a zjedol rožok s maslom. 8 Prišli včera a odišli dnes. 9 Nebudú doma celý deň.

**Lesson 9****1**

1 Anna stratila cestovný pas a peňaženku. 2 Sadla si do kúta vľavo pri okne. 3 Prišiel tam mladý chlapec v bielom tričku. 4 Policajná stanica je v modernej budove hned vedľa starej pošty. 5 Anna má matku Angličanku a otca Slováka.

**2**

1 Elena má čiernu tašku. Elena has a black bag. 2 Juraj má biele tričko. Juraj has a white T-shirt. 3 Vľavo sedí pani v červenej sukni. On the left sits a lady in a red skirt. 4 Vpravo stojí pán v hnedom svetri. On the right stands a man in a brown sweater. 5 Anna čaká v tom modrom aute. Anna is waiting in that blue car. 6 Jozef býva v tom krásnom žltom dome. Jozef lives in that beautiful yellow house.

**3**

1 Doľava na hlavnej ulici 2 Naproti veľkému obchodnému domu.  
 3 V starej budove vedľa pošty. 4 Hned' za rohom pred starým kostolom. 5 V zadnej miestnosti v kúte vľavo. 6 V tej malej ulici naproti policajnej stanici 7 Prejdete ulicu, potom idete doprava.  
 8 Stanicu? Nie je to ďaleko, idete doľava, potom (prejdete) cez most

**4**

O kom hovorila Viera? Hovorila o Pavlovi. S kým hovorila? Hovorila s učiteľom. Nevie o Pavlovi nič. Nikto nevie o učiteľovi nič. Býva niekde v Petržalke, ale nikdy o ničom nehovorí. Viera hovorí veľmi rýchlo, niekedy hovorí veľmi dlho.

- Ideš niekam, Viera?
- Nie, dnes nejdem nikam.

**5**

1 Prepáčte, ja som vás v prvej chvíli nespoznal(a). 2 To sme sa dlho nevideli! 3 Ani ste sa veľmi nezmenili. 4 Trocha som stučnel(a). 5 To nie je pravda! Vyzeráte dobre. 6 Poznám váš článok o Českej republike. 7 Teraz ma veľmi zaujíma politická situácia v strednej Európe, najmä na Slovensku.

## **Lesson 10**

**1**

1 Počkajte chvíľu! 2 Podťe ďalej a sadnite si! 3 Vezmite si knihu!  
 4 Nebojte sa! 5 Nebudťe tak nervózny/nervózna! 6 Nechodťte!  
 7 Nehnevajte sa! 8 Zapíšte si adresu! 9 Zajtra mi zavolajte!  
 10 Slúbte, že mi zavoláte!

**2**

1 Prepáč, nevyrušujem? Môžem ísť ďalej? 2 Počkaj chvíľu!  
 3 Vypi to! 4 Už by si mal(a) ísť domov. 5 Pozri sa, Viera, prečo mi vykáš? 6 Daj si so mnou ešte pohárik! 7 Ležal(a) si na posteli.  
 8 Lahol/Lahla si si na posteľ. 9 Prepáč!

**3**

čítaj/te! read! pi/te! drink! miluj/te! love! daj/te! give! nedávaj/te!  
 don't give! napíš/te! write! povedz/te! tell! zjedz/te! eat! prestaň/te!  
 stop! vyber/te! choose! ľahni/te si! lie down!

**4**

1 Slováci, Česi, Maďari, Angličania, učitelia, bratia, otcovia,  
 synovia – Slovaks, Czechs, Hungarians, English, teachers, brothers,  
 fathers, sons. 2 Slovenky, Češky, Maďarky, Angličanky, učiteľky,  
 matky, sestry, dcéry – *all female*: Slovaks, Czechs, Hungarians,  
 English, teachers, mothers, sisters, daughters. 3 stoly, nože, vidličky,  
 lyžice, taniere – tables, knives, forks, spoons, plates. 4 pekné  
 kravaty, veľké poháre, krásne mestá, biele saká, čierne klobúky –  
 nice ties, big glasses, beautiful towns, white jackets, black hats.

**5**

1 Kupujete anglické, české alebo maďarské autobusy? 2 Vybral  
 nejaké pekné pohľadnice. 3 Tieto staré domy majú krásne záhrady.  
 4 Máte rád/rada moderné budovy? 5 Mám rád/rada staré hrady/  
 zámky, kostoly, múzeá a koncerty. 6 Adriana má rada kaviarne,  
 vinárne a drahé reštaurácie. 7 Potrebujem tri známky na listy do  
 Anglicka. 8 Jeho kamaráti/priatelia čítajú americké romány.  
 9 Majú radi talianske filmy a nemecké autá.

**6**

1 Janko má dve autá. Janko has two cars. 2 Títo traja americkí  
 študenti nie sú hlúpi. These three American students are not stupid.  
 3 Mám štyroch bratov a jedného syna. I have four brothers and  
 one son. 4 Karol má dvoch učiteľov slovenčiny. Karol has two male  
 teachers of Slovak. 5 Jozef má dve učiteľky slovenčiny. Jozef  
 has two female teachers of Slovak. 6 To sú veľmi staré a  
 osklivé/škaredé džínsy. These are very old and ugly jeans. 7 Karol  
 pracoval tri roky v Bratislave. Karol worked three years in  
 Bratislava. 8 Títo dvaja bratia boli dobrí priatelia. These two  
 brothers were good friends. 9 Tieto dve sestry sú veľmi dobré  
 priateľky. These two sisters are very good friends.

## Lesson 11

**1**

1 Štyri kilá zemiakov. 2 Štvrt kila masla. 3 Tri litre mlieka. 4 Kilo pomarančov 5 Dvadsať deka syra. 6 Pätnásť deka bryndze. 7 Pol kila marhúľ. 8 Kilo jahôd. 9 Desať deka šunky. 10 Dve kilá jablk.

**2**

1 Šesť banánov, osem pomarančov a sedem broskýň. 2 Dvanásť fliaš (fľašiek) piva a päť fliaš bieleho vína. 3 Päť Slovákov a šestnásť Angličanov. 4 Desať týždňov a jedenásť mesiacov. 5 Päť slov a štyri slová.

**3**

1 tri koruny, štyri koruny, dve koruny. 2 päť korún, štrnásť, šestnásť, dvadsaťštyri, štyridsať, šesťdesiat, tridsať päť, osemdesiat-jeden, deväťdesiatdeväť, devätnásť korún. 3 päťsto korún, tristo, dvestopäťdesiat sedem, deväťstoosemdesiatdva, tritisík, dvetisíc stoštyridsaťšesť.

**4**

1 Šesť vajíčok 2 Päť litrov mlieka. 3 Dvadsať deka kávy. 4 Dve kilá paradajok 5 Šesť žemiel. 6 Päť rožkov.

**5**

1 Zostali tam desať nocí. They stayed there ten nights.  
 2 Zostaneme tam osem dní. We'll stay there eight days. 3 Má osem polí. He has eight fields. 4 V Bratislave je veľa kaviarní. In Bratislava there are lots of cafés. 5 Náš dom má dve kúpeľne. Our house has two bathrooms. 6 Majú šesť detí. They have six children. 7 Poznám len zopár ľudí. I know only a couple of people. 8 Mám dosť málo kamarátov. I have rather few friends. 9 Mám veľa času. I have lots of time.

**6**

- 1 Máme veľa žiakov, niekoľko Američanov slovenského pôvodu a zopár Angličanov, spolu osemnásť ľudí. 2 Pán Švantner má skupinu začiatočníkov, desať Talianov, osem Maďarov a sedem Francúzov. 3 Väčšinou sú to ženy: štyri Talianky, šest Maďarieiek a šesť Francúzok – veľa začiatočníkov ale málo pokročilých. 4 Koľko je hodín? – Je presne sedem hodín, už mali začať. 5 Čo máš/máte v tej aktovke? – Asi štyri knihy, desať zošitov a kilo zemiacov.

**Lesson 12****1**

- 1 Sú štyri hodiny. 2 Sú tri hodiny. 3 Je jedenásť hodín. 4 Je deväť hodín. 5 Je polnoc.

**2**

- 1 When did he come? – Prišiel o jednej. 2 At what time did he leave? – Odišiel o druhej. 3 When did they arrive? – Prišli o ôsmej. 4 When did they leave? – Odišli o polnoci. 5 When were they here? – Boli tu od tretej do deviatej. 6 When did she arrive? – Prišla okolo štvrtej.

**3**

- 1 Hľadajú ma/ťa. They are looking for me/you. 2 Táto kniha je pre mňa/teba. This book is for me/you. 3 Hovorili často o mne/o tebe. They often spoke about me/about you. 4 Stoja za mnou/tebou. They are standing behind me/you. 5 Idú ku mne/k tebe. They are coming towards me/you. 6 Kto mi/ti to povedal? Who told me/you that? 7 Chcela ma/ťa poprosiť o jednu vec. She wanted to ask me/you for one (particular) thing. 8 Nechcel ísť so mnou/s tebou. He didn't want to go with me/you.

**4**

- 1 Nevideli nás. They didn't see us. 2 Nepomáhali vám? Didn't they help you? 3 Koľko je vás? How many are there of you? 4 Chlapec môže hrať s nami. The boy can play with us. 5 Moment, hned' vám

to poviem. Just a moment, I'll tell you right away. 6 Tento list je pre nás. This letter is for us.

## **5**

1 Je štvrt na šesť. 2 Je trištvrté na päť. 3 Je pol šiestej. 4 Odišli o pol desiatej. 5 Prišli o pol tretej. 6 Vlak odchádza o štvrt na dvanásť. 7 O pol druhej sme zastavili pred hotelom.

## **6**

1 Máte/Nemáte voľné izby? 2 Je nás šesť. 3 Sme dvaja. 4 Potrebujeme tri dvojlôžkové izby, so sprchou. 5 Potrebujeme jednu dvojlôžkovú izbu, s kúpeľnou. 6 Sú raňajky zahrnuté v cene? 7 Dobre, berieme to.

## **Lesson 13**

### **1**

1 Vidím ju. I see her. 2 Pomáham jej. I help her. 3 Idem s ňou. I'm going with her. 4 Hovorili sme o nej. We were speaking about her. 5 Hľadám ju. I'm looking for her.

### **2**

1 Nemám ho rada. I don't like him. 2 Telefonujem mu. I'm phoning him. 3 Išla s ním na koncert. She went with him to a concert. 4 Nerád hovoril o ňom. He didn't like talking about him. 5 Strelili sme ho pred divadlom. We met him in front of the theatre.

### **3**

1 Zvyčajne chodí vlakom. 2 Včera išla autobusom. 3 Často chodí do kina. 4 Dnes ide do divadla. 5 V pondelok išiel na koncert. 6 Pôjdete so mnou na diskotéku?

### **4**

1 Vidíte ich? Do you see them? 2 Hovorili sme práve o nich. We were just talking about them. 3 Zatelefonovala im. She telephoned them. 4 Išli k nim na večeru. They went to their place for

supper. 5 Dostali sme od nich pekný list. We got a nice letter from them.

## 5

1 Vošli do domu. 2 Vlak už odišiel. 3 Rozišli sa pred divadlom.  
 4 Janko vošiel do knižnice. 5 Viera obišla okolo divadla a prešla  
 cez most. 6 Našli sme peknú vináreň. 7 Chlapec podišiel k oknu/k  
 obloku.

## Lesson 14

### 1

1 Táto blúzka je lacnejšia. 2 Tieto gombíky sú lepšie. 3 Tento sveter je drahší ako ten modrý. 4 Biela blúzka sa mi najviac páči, má najkrajší strih. 5 Tieto košeľe sú teplejšie, z kvalitnejšej látky. 6 Táto košela je mi malá, potrebujem väčšie číslo. 7 Táto košela má kratšie rukávy.

### 2

1 Eva je najmladšia. Eva is the youngest. 2 Otec je najstarší. Father is the oldest. 3 Zuzana je moja najlepšia kamarátka. Zuzana is my best friend. 4 Igor je najsilnejší, ale Peter je najrýchlejší. Igor is the strongest, but Peter is the fastest. 5 Môj kufor je najťažší a tvoja aktovka je najľahšia. My suitcase is the heaviest and your briefcase is the lightest. 6 Táto ulica je najkratšia a najužšia. This street is the shortest and narrowst. 7 Tvoje auto je najnovšie. Your car is the newest. 8 Toto mesto je najstaršie a najkrajšie. This town is the oldest and most beautiful.

### 3

1 Ivan je hlúpejší ako ja. Ivan is more stupid than me. 2 Mária je staršia ako Viera. Mária is older than Viera. 3 Pán Rojko je bohatší ako pán Novák. Mr Rojko is richer than Mr Novák. 4 Evička je menšia ako ja. Evička is smaller than me. 5 Pavol je väčší ako ja. Pavol is bigger than me.

**4**

1 Býva v Trenčianskych Tepliciach. S/he lives in Trenčianske Teplice. 2 Jej brat študuje v Košiciach. Her brother studies in Košice. 3 Jej matka býva v Nových Zámkoch. Her mother lives in Nové Zámky. 4 Jeho otec býva v Topoľčanoch. His father lives in Topoľčany. 5 Jeho dcéra býva v Piešťanoch. His daughter lives in Piešťany. 6 Ján Hollý býval v Maduniciach. Ján Hollý lived in Madunice.

**5**

1 Išli sme do Košíc. We went to Košice. 2 Jej otec je z Topoľčian. Her father is from Topoľčany. 3 Ideme do Piešťan. We are going to Piešťany. 4 Idú do Trenčianskych Teplíc. They are going to Trenčianske Teplice. 5 Jeho sestra je z Nových Zámkov. His sister is from Nové Zámky.

**6**

1 Hovorili sme o tých amerických študentoch. We were talking about those American students. 2 Ide s kamarátmi/priateľmi do divadla. S/he is going with friends to the theatre. 3 Varí sestrám obed. S/he is cooking her/his sisters lunch. 4 Píše bratom krátky list. S/he is writing her/his brothers a short letter. 5 Ubytovanie objednáva v cestovných kanceláriách. S/he books accommodation in travel agencies. 6 Kupuje knihy o starých mestách a hradoch/zámkoch. S/he buys books about old towns and castles.

**7**

1 Dnes letím do Bratislavы. 2 Nerád lietam. 3 Vždy nosí krásne košele. 4 Dnes nesieš/nesiete kufor. 5 Zvyčajne nosíš/nosíte aktovku alebo tašku. 6 Často behá v parku. 7 Dnes beží do práce/roboty.

**Lesson 15****1**

1 Keby som mal čas, cestoval by som po svete. If I had money I'd travel about/around the world. 2 Keby si nemal/ste nemali peniaze,

čo by si robil(a)/by ste robili? If you didn't have (any) money, what would you do? 3 Preložili by ste/Preložil(a) by si mi toto slovo? Would you translate this word for me? 4 Nemohla by prísť zajtra? Couldn't she come tomorrow? 5 Neviem, či Viera príde. I don't know if Viera will come.

**2**

1 Mačka je v mojej izbe. 2 Klúč je v tvojom/vo vašom vrecku.  
 3 Môj kabát je v tvojom/vo vašom aute. 4 Tvoje/vaše časopisy sú na mojej stoličke. 5 Poznáš/Poznáte našich amerických a anglických kolegov? 6 Hovorila o tvojich/vašich priateľoch/kamarátoch. 7 Hovorila o svojich priateľoch/kamarátoch. 8 Hovorí o jej priateľoch/kamarátoch. 9 Nechal(a) som svoju knihu na tvojom/vašom stole.

**3**

1 Čia je to kniha? To je Irenina kniha. 2 Čie sú to topánky? To sú bratove topánky. 3 Čí je to bicykel? To je sestrin bicykel. 4 Čie je to auto? To je Igorovo auto. 5 Čie sú to perá? To sú strýkove perá.

**4**

1 Je štrnásťeho januára. 2 Je piateho mája. 3 Je dvadsiateho prvého októbra. 4 Je ôsmeho septembra. 5 Je tridsiateho marca. 6 Je dvadsiateho deviateho augusta.

**5**

1 Chcela, aby som išiel/išla s ňou. 2 Povedal mi, aby som si kúpil(a) novú košeľu. 3 Radili nám, aby sme predali dom. 4 Bojím sa, aby som nestratil(a) zamestnanie. 5 Chcem, aby mi dali väčšiu izbu. 6 Potrebuje auto, aby mohla cestovať po Slovensku.

**Lesson 16****1**

prekvapený ‘surprised’, kúpený ‘bought’, napísaný ‘written’, prečítaný ‘read’, milovaný ‘loved’, stratený ‘lost’, varený

'boiled/cooked', oholený 'shaved', zabudnutý 'forgotten', pozvaný 'invited', balený 'wrapped', zatvorený 'closed', korunovaný 'crowned', zmenený 'changed', objednaný 'booked/ordered'.

## 2

okno 'window', dom 'house', list 'letter/leaf', ruka 'hand', kus 'piece', slovo 'word', ulica 'street', kniha 'book', pes 'dog', trochu 'a bit', roh 'horn/corner', pivo 'beer'.

## 3

- 1 Všetky dievčatá sú v knižnici.
- 2 Všetci chlapci sú v autobuse.
- 3 Ako sa to píše?
- 4 Kde sa predávajú lístky do divadla?
- 5 Knižnica sa zatvára o štvrtaj.
- 6 Hľadali sme vo všetkých izbách.

## 4

cestujúci travelling, organizujúci organizing, študujúci studying, čítajúci reading, volajúci calling, spievajúci singing, robiaci doing/making, chodiaci walking/going, bežiaci running, sediaci sitting, ležiaci lying, pijúci drinking, spiaci sleeping, vedúci leading/manager, nesúci carrying

## 5

robiť, sedieť, vidieť, byť, jestť, mať, spať

## 6

- 1 Pred štyrmi rokmi. Four years ago.
- 2 Po dvoch rokoch. After two years.
- 3 Čítam troje novín. I read three newspapers.
- 4 Mám len jedny nohavice. I have only one pair of trousers.
- 5 Chodím do roboty sedemnástkou. I go to work on the number seventeen (tram/bus).
- 6 Bývam na osmičke. I'm living/staying in room eight.

# Slovak–English glossary

This glossary covers the dialogues, texts and most of the language points. Noun genders are only given if unpredictable. Some genitives in **-a/-u** or *f.* **-i** are added for the same reason, or plural **-e** to indicate a soft noun. Perfective verbs are shown by **>** or **<**.

|                      |  |                       |                          |
|----------------------|--|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>a</b>             | and                                      | <b>Anglicko</b>       | England                  |
| <b>aby to</b>        | in order to/that                         | <b>anglicko-</b>      | English–Slovak           |
| <b>adresa</b>        | address                                  | <b>slovenský</b>      |                          |
| <b>aha</b>           | ah!                                      | <b>anglický, -y</b>   | English                  |
| <b>ahoj</b>          | hi, hello; bye                           | <b>Angličan, -ka</b>  | Englishman,<br>-woman    |
| <b>aj</b>            | also (= in<br>addition)                  | <b>angličtina</b>     | English language         |
| <b>ak</b>            | if                                       | <b>ani</b>            | even                     |
| <b>akadémia</b>      | academy                                  | <b>ani ... ani</b>    | neither... nor           |
| <b>ako</b>           | as, like (as if),<br>than                | <b>apríl -a</b>       | April                    |
| <b>ako?</b>          | how?                                     | <b>asi</b>            | probably, about          |
| <b>ako dlho?</b>     | how long?                                | <b>aspoň</b>          | at least                 |
| <b>aktovka</b>       | briefcase                                | <b>august -a</b>      | August                   |
| <b>akurát, je mi</b> | it's an exact fit                        | <b>auto</b>           | car                      |
| <b>aký? adj.</b>     | what? what kind<br>of? what ...<br>like? | <b>autobus -u/-a</b>  | bus                      |
| <b>ale</b>           | but, however                             | <b>autobusová</b>     | bus station              |
| <b>alebo</b>         | or                                       | <b>stanica</b>        |                          |
| <b>alkoholik</b>     | an alcoholic                             | <b>autor, autorka</b> | author                   |
| <b>americký</b>      | American                                 | <b>až</b>             | to the point of,<br>only |
| <b>Američan, -ka</b> | an American                              | <b>áno</b>            | yes                      |
| <b>Amerika</b>       | America                                  | <b>babka</b>          | granny                   |
|                      |  | <b>balík -a</b>       | parcel                   |
|                      |  | <b>balíť &gt; za-</b> | to wrap                  |

|                                       |                            |                          |                           |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| banán -a/-u                           | banana                     | bol, boli                | was, were <i>see byť</i>  |
| banka                                 | bank                       | boliet'                  | to hurt                   |
| bankár                                | banker                     | bonboniéra               | box of chocolates         |
| bankovka                              | banknote                   |                          |                           |
| bar -u                                | bar                        | bozkať > po-             | to kiss                   |
| básnik                                | poet                       | bože!                    | God!, <i>see boh</i>      |
| báť sa/bojím sa                       | to fear                    | bralo                    | crag, rock                |
| batožina                              | luggage                    | brat, pl. bratia         | brother                   |
| baviť                                 | to amuse                   | brať/beriem >            | to take                   |
| bavlna                                | cotton                     | zobrať, vziať            |                           |
| bažant                                | pheasant                   | Bratislava, adj.         | Bratislava                |
| beháť                                 | to run, <i>see bežat'</i>  | -vský                    |                           |
| belasý                                | (light) blue               | bravčové (mäso)          | pork                      |
| Beskydy – Beskýd f. pl.               | the Beskids                | bravčový adj.            | pork                      |
| bez + gen.                            | without                    | breh -u                  | shore, bank               |
| bezmäsity                             | meatless                   | Británia, Veľká          | Great Britain             |
| bežať + behať                         | to run                     | britský                  | British                   |
| béžový                                | beige                      | broskyňa                 | peach                     |
| bicykel -kla, pl. -e                  | bicycle                    | bryndza -e               | soft sheep's milk cheese  |
| Biele Karpaty – Bielych Karpát f. pl. | the White Carpathians      | bryndzové halušky f. pl. | cheese gnocchi            |
| bielizeň -zne f.                      | underwear, bedlinen        | budem                    | I will be, <i>see byť</i> |
| biely                                 | white                      | budík -a                 | alarm-clock               |
| bilión -a                             | billion                    | budova                   | building                  |
| biliónty                              | billionth                  | budúci                   | next, coming, future      |
| blázon -zna                           | madman                     | bud' ... alebo bud'!     | either ... or be!         |
| blízko                                | near, nearby               | bufet -u                 | snack-bar, buffet         |
| blondínka                             | a blonde                   | bunda                    | anorak, wind-cheater      |
| blúzka                                | blouse                     | búrka                    | thunderstorm              |
| bodka                                 | dot, full stop             | by                       | would                     |
| boh – boha, dat./ loc. -u/-ovi        | God                        | byt -u                   | flat, apartment           |
| pl. bohovia                           |                            | byť                      | to be                     |
| bohatší                               | richer                     | bývať                    | to live                   |
| bohatý                                | rich                       | bývať freq.              | to be                     |
| bohužiaľ                              | unfortunately, regrettably | celkom                   | quite, entirely           |
|                                       |                            | celok -iku               | whole (piece)             |

|                              |                            |                  |                           |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| celý                         | the whole                  | čiarka           | comma                     |
| cena                         | price                      | čiernobiely      | black-and-white           |
| ceruzka                      | pencil                     | čierny           | black                     |
| cesta                        | road, journey              | čím              | see čo                    |
| cestovať                     | to travel                  | činnosť          | activity                  |
| cestovný adj.                | travel                     | číslo            | number, size              |
| -á kancelária                | travel office              | čistý            | clean, pure               |
| -ý pas                       | passport                   | čítať > pre-     | to read                   |
| -ý poriadok                  | timetable                  | čítareň -rne f.  | reading room              |
| cestujúci                    | passenger                  | čízma            | boot                      |
| cez + acc.                   | across, through,<br>during | článok -nku      | article                   |
| cezeň                        | through it                 | človeče!         | man!                      |
| cigaretta                    | cigarette                  | človek pl. ľudia | person                    |
| cisár                        | emperor                    | čo? – čoho?      | what?                     |
| cítiť                        | to feel                    | čo najskôr       | as soon as<br>possible    |
| citrón -a                    | lemon                      | čoho             | see čo                    |
| cudzí                        | foreign                    | čokoláda         | chocolate                 |
| cukor -kru                   | sugar                      | čom, čomu        | see čo                    |
| čaj -u                       | tea                        | čoskoro          | soon                      |
| čajník -a                    | teapot                     | čudný            | strange, odd              |
| čakať > počkať               | to wait                    | čudovať sa       | to be amazed              |
| čas -u                       | time                       | dá sa            | it is possible            |
| časopis -u                   | magazine                   | dačo – dačoho    | something                 |
| často                        | often                      | dajaký           | some kind of              |
| čašník, čašníčka             | waiter, waitress           | dakde            | somewhere                 |
| čau                          | hi, bye                    | dakedy           | sometimes                 |
| Čech, pl. Česi;<br>f. Češka  | a Czech                    | dakovat' > po-   | to thank                  |
| červený                      | red                        | dákujem          | thank you                 |
| česať/češem > u-             | to comb                    | dakto – dakoho   | someone                   |
| Česká republika              | the Czech<br>Republic      | dáky             | some or other             |
| Česko-                       | Czechoslovakia             | dalej            | further                   |
| Slovensko/<br>Československo |                            | dáleko           | far, far away             |
| český, -y                    | Czech                      | další            | another, a<br>further     |
| Češka                        | a female Czech             | dáma, adj.       | lady, ladies'             |
| čeština                      | Czech language             | dámsky           |                           |
| či                           | whether, if                | darček -a        | present, gift             |
| čí, čia, čie                 | whose?                     | dáť < dávať      | to give, put              |
| čiapka                       | cap                        | dátum -mu        | date                      |
|                              |                            | dávať            | to give, put, see<br>dat' |

|                   |                        |               |  |
|-------------------|------------------------|---------------|--|
| dážď – dažďa      | rain                   | dnu           | inside, in                                       |
| dáždnik -a        | umbrella               | do + gen.     | into/to, until, till                             |
| dcéra             | daughter               | do videnia    | goodbye  |
| december -bra     | December               | dobre         | well, good, fine                                 |
| deci              | decilitre              | dobrú chuf!   | good appetite!                                   |
| dedina            | village                | dobrú noc!    | good night!                                      |
| dedo, dedko       | grandfather            | dobrý         | good   |
| dejiny -ín f. pl. | history                | dobrý deň!    | hello! ( <i>lit.</i> good day!)                  |
| delené + ins.     | divided by             | dokonca (aj)  | even   |
| deka              | decagram<br>(10 grams) | dol'ava       | to the left                                      |
| deň – dňa, vo     | day                    | dolár -a      | dollar   |
| dne, pl. dni      |                        | dolu/dole     | down,<br>downstairs                              |
| – dní             |                        | dom -u        | house  |
| desať             | ten                    | dóm -u        | cathedral  |
| desiaty           | tenth                  | doma          | at home  |
| deti -tí, -čom,   | children               | domček -a     | little house                                     |
| -čoch, -čmi       |                        | domov         | (to) home  |
| pl. of dieťa      |                        | doň, doňho    | into him, it                                     |
| deväť             | nine                   | doobeda       | in the morning<br>( <i>lit.</i> before<br>lunch) |
| deväťdesiat, -ty  | ninety, -ieth          | doprava       | to the right                                     |
| devätnásť, -sty   | nineteen(th)           | dosť          | enough, rather,<br>quite                         |
| deväťročný        | 9-year-old             | dostať        | to get   |
| deviaty           | ninth                  | < dostávať    |  |
| dieťa -aťa,       | child                  | dostať sa     | to get (to a<br>place)                           |
| pl. deti          |                        | došiel        | see <b>dôjsť</b>                                 |
| dievča -aťa,      | girl                   | dovolenka     | holiday  |
| pl. dievčatá      |                        | dovoliť       | to allow   |
| diplomat          | diplomat               | < dovol'ovať  |  |
| diplom -u, adj.   | diploma                | dovoliť si pf | to afford  |
| -ový              |                        | dôjsť/dôjdem, | to reach   |
| diskotéka         | disco                  | došiel pf     |  |
| divadelný adj.    | theatre                | dôležitý      | important  |
| divadlo           | theatre                | dôvod -u      | reason   |
| dlážka            | floor                  | dráhý/-ší     | dear/er  |
| dlho              | for a long time        | drez -u       | sink   |
| dlhší             | longer                 | drobné pl.    | change   |
| dlhý              | long                   |               |  |
| dlženie -žňa      | acute sign             |               |  |
| dnes              | today                  |               |  |
| dnešný            | today's                |               |  |
| dni -í pl. of deň | days                   |               |  |

|  |                            |                          |                      |
|--|----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>drogéria</b>                          | chemist's                  | <b>exkurzia</b>          | excursion            |
| <b>druhý</b>                             | other, second              | <b>fabrika</b>           | factory              |
| <b>dub -a</b>                            | oak                        | <b>fajčiť</b>            | to smoke             |
| <b>dúfať</b>                             | to hope                    | <b>fajn</b>              | fine                 |
| <b>Dunaj -a</b>                          | river Danube               | <b>fakulta</b>           | faculty              |
| <b>dva, f./n. dve</b>                    | two                        | <b>na fakulte</b>        | at the faculty       |
| <b>dvadsať,</b>                          | twenty, -ieth              | <b>fantastický</b>       | fantastic            |
| <b>dvadsiaty</b>                         |                            | <b>farár</b>             | vicar, parish priest |
| <b>dvaja</b>                             | two (male)                 | <b>farba</b>             | colour               |
| <b>dvakrát</b>                           | twice                      | <b>farebný adj.</b>      | colour               |
| <b>dvanásť, -sty</b>                     | twelve, twelfth            | <b>Fatra, Malá</b>       | the Low Fatra        |
| <b>dvere – dverí/ dvier,</b>             | door                       | <b>Fatra, Veľká</b>      | the High Fatra       |
| <b>dver(a)mi f. pl.</b>                  |                            | <b>fazuľka</b>           | beans                |
| <b>dvesto, dvojstý</b>                   | two hundred, -th           | <b>február -a</b>        | February             |
| <b>dvoch</b>                             | two, <i>see dva, dvaja</i> | <b>fiala</b>             | violet               |
| <b>dvojlôžková izba</b>                  | double room                | <b>fialový</b>           | purple, violet       |
| <b>dvojstý</b>                           | two-hundredth              | <b>fíha</b>              | goodness!            |
| <b>dvom, dvoma</b>                       | two, <i>see dva, dvaja</i> | <b>filharmonia</b>       | Philharmonic         |
| <b>džem -u</b>                           | am                         | <b>film -u</b>           | film                 |
| <b>džínsy – džíns/ džínsov</b> f./m. pl. | jeans                      | <b>flaša, -ka</b>        | bottle               |
| <b>džús -u</b>                           | juice                      | <b>fontána</b>           | fountain             |
| <b>ehm</b>                               | uhm                        | <b>fotka</b>             | photo                |
| <b>ekonómia</b>                          | economics                  | <b>fotograf, -ka</b>     | photographer         |
| <b>elegantný/-nejší</b>                  | (more) elegant             | <b>fotografia</b>        | photograph           |
| <b>električka</b>                        | tram                       | <b>Francúz, -ka</b>      | Frenchman/woman      |
| <b>ementál -u, adj. -sky</b>             | Emmental                   | <b>Francúzsko</b>        | France               |
| <b>ešte</b>                              | still, even (-er)          | <b>francúzsky</b>        | French               |
| <b>ešte jeden</b>                        | 'still one', another       | <b>francúština</b>       | French               |
| <b>ešte ne-/nie</b>                      | not yet                    | <b>fúkať</b>             | to blow              |
| <b>ešte niečo</b>                        | something else             | <b>futbal -u</b>         | football             |
| <b>ešte raz</b>                          | again, once more           | <b>garáž -e f.</b>       | garage               |
| <b>ešte stále</b>                        | still                      | <b>gauč -a</b>           | settee, couch        |
| <b>Európa</b>                            | Europe                     | <b>gitara</b>            | guitar               |
| <b>evanjelický</b>                       | Lutheran                   | <b>góľ -u</b>            | goal                 |
| <b>existovať</b>                         | to exist                   | <b>golier -a, pl. -e</b> | collar               |
|  |                            | <b>gombík -a</b>         | button               |
|  |                            | <b>gotický</b>           | Gothic               |
|  |                            | <b>hádam</b>             | probably, I guess    |
|  |                            | <b>hádať sa</b>          | to quarrel           |
|  |                            | <b>hádzat/hádzem</b>     | <i>see hodiť</i>     |

|                                       |                         |  |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| <b>hala</b>                           | hall                    | <b>horší</b>                               | worse                                 |
| <b>halier -a, pl. -e</b>              | heller (100 = koruna)   | <b>horúci, -o</b>                          | hot                                   |
| <b>haló</b>                           | hello (on phone)        | <b>host', pl. hostia</b>                   | guest                                 |
| <b>hej</b>                            | yes (colloquial)        | <b>hostinec -nca</b>                       | pub, inn                              |
| <b>herec -rca</b>                     | actor, actress          | <b>hotel -a, loc. -i,</b><br><i>pl. -y</i> | hotel                                 |
| <b>herečka</b>                        |                         | <b>hovädzí adj.</b>                        | beef                                  |
| <b>historický</b>                     | historical              | <b>hovädzie (mäso)</b>                     | beef                                  |
| <b>hlad -u, hladný</b>                | hunger, hungry          | <b>hovoriť</b>                             | to speak                              |
| <b>hladať</b>                         | to look for             | <b>hrad -u</b>                             | castle                                |
| <b>hlava</b>                          | head                    | <b>hranolky -ov</b>                        | chips                                 |
| <b>hlávkový šalát</b>                 | lettuce salad           | <i>m. pl.</i>                              |                                       |
| <b>hlavný</b>                         | main                    | <b>hrať (sa)</b>                           | to play                               |
| <b>hlíbka</b>                         | depth                   | <b>hŕiba</b>                               | heap, pile, load                      |
| <b>hlboký</b>                         | deep                    | <b>Hron -a</b>                             | river Hron                            |
| <b>hlbší</b>                          | deeper                  | <b>hrubý/-ší</b>                           | thick/er                              |
| <b>hlúpy</b>                          | stupid                  | <b>hrud' -de f.</b>                        | chest                                 |
| <b>hmla</b>                           | mist, fog               | <b>hudba</b>                               | music                                 |
| <b>hmlisto</b>                        | misty                   | <b>hustý</b>                               | thick                                 |
| <b>hned'</b>                          | at once,<br>immediately | <b>hviezda</b>                             | star                                  |
| <b>hnedý</b>                          | brown                   | <b>hydina</b>                              | poultry                               |
| <b>hnevať sa</b>                      | to be angry             | <b>chalupa</b>                             | cottage                               |
| <b>ho</b>                             | him/it, <i>see on</i>   | <b>chata</b>                               | chalet                                |
| <b>hocí</b>                           | although                | <b>chce sa mi</b>                          | I feel like                           |
| <b>hodina -y</b>                      | hour, classes           | <b>chcel by</b>                            | would like                            |
| <b>hodinky -niek</b><br><i>f. pl.</i> | watch                   | <b>chcieť/chcem</b>                        | to want                               |
| <b>hodiť &lt; hádzat'</b>             | to throw                | <b>chladnička</b>                          | fridge                                |
| <b>hádžem</b>                         |                         | <b>chladno, -ý</b>                         | cool, cold                            |
| <b>hodiť sa</b>                       | to be suitable          | <b>chlap</b>                               | man, guy, bloke                       |
| <b>hodváb -u, adj.</b>                | silk                    | <b>chlapče!</b>                            | lad! boy!                             |
| <b>hodvábny</b>                       |                         | <b>chlapec -pca</b>                        | boy, lad                              |
| <b>hokej -a</b>                       | ice-hockey              | <b>chlieb – chleba</b>                     | bread                                 |
| <b>holiaci strojček</b>               | shaver                  | <b>chod'(te)!</b>                          | go!                                   |
| <b>holiť (sa) &gt; o-</b>             | to shave                | <b>chodievať freq.</b>                     | to go                                 |
| <b>hora</b>                           | mountain                | <b>chodiť</b>                              | to walk, go, <i>see</i><br><b>ísť</b> |
| <b>horčica</b>                        | mustard                 | <b>chorý</b>                               | ill, sick                             |
| <b>hore</b>                           | up, upstairs            | <b>chrbát – chrhta</b>                     | back                                  |
| <b>Hornád -u</b>                      | river Hornád            | <b>chudobný</b>                            | poor                                  |
| <b>horný</b>                          | upper                   | <b>chudý</b>                               | thin                                  |
| <b>horský hotel</b>                   | mountain hotel          | <b>chuť -ti f.</b>                         | appetite                              |
|                                       |                         | <b>chutný</b>                              | tasty                                 |

|                            |  |                         |                           |
|----------------------------|--|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>chvíľa -le</b>          | while  | <b>jedenásť, -sty</b>   | eleven(th)                |
| <b>chyba</b>               | mistake  | <b>jediný</b>           | the only, sole            |
| <b>chystať sa</b>          | to prepare to go                               | <b>jedlo gen. pl.</b>   | food, dish                |
| <b>chytiť pf.</b>          | to catch                                       | <b>jedál</b>            |                           |
| <b>iba</b>                 | only   | <b>jednoduchý</b>       | simple                    |
| <b>idea dat./loc. idei</b> | idea   | <b>jednolôžková</b>     | single room               |
| <b>idem</b>                | I go <i>see íst'</i>                           | <b>izba</b>             |                           |
| <b>ide o + acc.</b>        | it concerns                                    | <b>jednosmerný</b>      | one-way ticket            |
| <b>igelitová taška</b>     | plastic bag                                    | <b>lístok</b>           |                           |
| <b>ich</b>                 | their; them, <i>see oni</i>                    | <b>jedol</b>            | ate <i>see jest'</i>      |
| <b>im</b>                  | to/for them, <i>see oni</i>                    | <b>jeho</b>             | his possessive;           |
|                            |  | <b>jej</b>              | him, <i>see on</i>        |
|                            |  |                         | her possessive;           |
| <b>inteligentný</b>        | intelligent                                    |                         | her, <i>see ona</i>       |
| <b>internát -u</b>         | hall of residence                              | <b>jemu</b>             | to/for him, <i>see on</i> |
| <b>interview n.</b>        | interview                                      | <b>jesen' -ne f.</b>    | autumn                    |
| <b>iný</b>                 | other  | <b>jesenný adj.</b>     | autumn                    |
| <b>inžinier, -ka</b>       | engineer                                       | <b>jest'/jem, jedol</b> | to eat                    |
| <b>Ipeľ – Ipľa</b>         | river Ipeľ                                     |                         |                           |
| <b>íst'/idem + chodit'</b> | to go  | <b>ju</b>               | her/it                    |
| <b>isteže</b>              | certainly                                      | <b>juh -u, južný</b>    | south, southern           |
| <b>istý</b>                | certain, <b>ten istý</b><br>the same           | <b>júl -a</b>           | July                      |
| <b>išiel, išla</b>         | went, <i>see íst'</i>                          | <b>jún -a</b>           | June                      |
| <b>izba</b>                | room   | <b>k, ku + dat.</b>     | to ('s house),<br>towards |
| <b>ja</b>                  | I  | <b>kabát -a</b>         | coat                      |
| <b>jablko</b>              | apple  | <b>kabínka</b>          | cabin, cubicle            |
| <b>jahoda</b>              | strawberry                                     | <b>kam</b>              | where to?                 |
| <b>január -a</b>           | January  | <b>kamarát, -ka</b>     | friend                    |
| <b>jar -i f.</b>           | spring   | <b>Kanada</b>           | Canada                    |
| <b>jarný adj.</b>          | spring   | <b>Kanad'án, -ka</b>    | a Canadian                |
| <b>jasný</b>               | clear  | <b>kanadský</b>         | Canadian                  |
| <b>jazero, jazierko</b>    | lake, little lake                              | <b>kancelária</b>       | office                    |
| <b>jazyk -a</b>            | language, tongue                               | <b>kapor -pra</b>       | carp                      |
| <b>je</b>                  | is, <i>see byť</i> ;<br>eats, <i>see jest'</i> | <b>kapusta</b>          | cabbage                   |
|                            |  | <b>karfiol -u</b>       | cauliflower               |
|                            |  | <b>Karpaty –</b>        | the Carpathians           |
| <b>jedálen -rne f.</b>     | dining-room                                    | <b>Karpát f. pl.</b>    |                           |
| <b>jedálny lístok</b>      | menu   | <b>karta</b>            | card                      |
| <b>jedávať</b>             | to eat habitually                              | <b>katolícky</b>        | Catholic                  |
| <b>jeden, jedna,</b>       | one  | <b>káva</b>             | coffee                    |
| <b>    jedno</b>           |  | <b>kaviareň -rne f.</b> | café                      |

|                                   |                                    |  |                           |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| <b>každý</b>                      | each, every                        | <b>koniec -nca</b>                         | end                       |
| <b>kde</b>                        | where                              | <b>kopec -pca</b>                          | hill                      |
| <b>keby</b>                       | if                                 | <b>koruna</b>                              | crown                     |
| <b>ked'</b>                       | when                               | <b>korunovať sa</b>                        | to be crowned             |
| <b>kedy</b>                       | when?                              | <b>kosť -ti f.</b>                         | bone                      |
| <b>kedysi</b>                     | once (upon a time)                 | <b>kostol -a</b>                           | church                    |
| <b>kilo</b>                       | kilogram                           | <b>košeľa -le</b>                          | shirt                     |
| <b>kilometer -tra, pl. -tre</b>   | kilometre                          | <b>Košice -íc f. pl.</b>                   | Košice                    |
| <b>kino</b>                       | cinema                             | <b>košík -a</b>                            | basket                    |
| <b>klavír -a, loc. -i, pl. -y</b> | piano                              | <b>kožený adj.</b>                         | leather                   |
| <b>klobása</b>                    | sausage                            | <b>krájať &gt; po-</b>                     | to slice                  |
| <b>klobúk -a</b>                  | hat                                | <b>krajec -jca</b>                         | slice                     |
| <b>kľúč -a</b>                    | key                                | <b>krajinka</b>                            | landscape (picture)       |
| <b>kňaz</b>                       | priest                             | <b>krajší</b>                              | more beautiful, prettier  |
| <b>kniha</b>                      | book                               | <b>kráľ</b>                                | king                      |
| <b>kníhkupectvo</b>               | bookshop                           | <b>krásne, je</b>                          | it's lovely               |
| <b>knižka</b>                     | (little) book                      | <b>krásny, krajší</b>                      | beautiful, more beautiful |
| <b>knižnica</b>                   | library, bookcase                  | <b>krát, -krát</b>                         | times                     |
| <b>koberec -rca</b>               | carpet                             | <b>krátiť</b>                              | to shorten                |
| <b>cockovaný</b>                  | checked                            | <b>krátko</b>                              | for a short time          |
| <b>koho</b>                       | who(m)? <i>see</i> <b>kto</b>      | <b>krátky</b>                              | short                     |
| <b>kohútik -a</b>                 | tap, faucet                        | <b>kratší</b>                              | shorter                   |
| <b>kolega, kolegynia</b>          | colleague                          | <b>kravata</b>                             | tie                       |
| <b>kolenko</b>                    | knee                               | <b>krčma</b>                               | pub, tavern               |
| <b>koľkého je dnes?</b>           | what's the date?                   | <b>krém -u</b>                             | cream                     |
| <b>koľkej? o</b>                  | at what time?                      | <b>kreslo</b>                              | armchair                  |
| <b>koľko?</b>                     | how                                | <b>kričať</b>                              | to shout                  |
|                                   | much/many?                         | <b>Kriváň -a</b>                           | Kriváň                    |
| <b>koľko je hodín?</b>            | what time is it?                   | <b>kríž -a</b>                             | cross                     |
| <b>kom</b>                        | who, <i>see</i> <b>kto</b>         | <b>krk -u</b>                              | neck                      |
| <b>komu</b>                       | to/for whom, <i>see</i> <b>kto</b> | <b>bolí ma v krku</b> I have a sore throat |                           |
| <b>koňak -u</b>                   | cognac, brandy                     | <b>krok -a/-u</b>                          | step, pace                |
| <b>koncert -u</b>                 | concert                            | <b>krv -i f.</b>                           | blood                     |
| <b>koncertná sieň</b>             | concert hall                       | <b>kto? – koho?</b>                        | who?                      |
| <b>koncom + gen.</b>              | at the end of                      | <b>ktorý</b>                               | who, which                |
| <b>konečná stanica/ zastávka</b>  | terminus                           | <b>ktorý?</b>                              | which?                    |
| <b>konferencia</b>                | conference                         | <b>kufor -fra, pl. -fre</b>                | suitcase                  |

|  |                     |  |  |
|--|---------------------|--|--|
| <b>ku = k</b>                            | towards             | <b>les -a</b>                              | forest                                 |
| <b>kuchár, kuchárka</b>                  | cook                | <b>letecky</b>                             | (by) airmail                           |
| <b>kuchyňa -ne</b>                       | kitchen             | <b>letenka</b>                             | air ticket                             |
| <b>kuchynský kút</b>                     | kitchenette         | <b>letisko</b>                             | airport                                |
| <b>kultúra</b>                           | culture             | <b>letný adj.</b>                          | summer                                 |
| <b>kúpalisko</b>                         | bathing-place       | <b>letieť/letím</b>                        | to fly                                 |
| <b>kúpať sa/</b>                         | to bathe            | <b>+ lietať</b>                            |  |
| <b>kúpem sa</b>                          |                     | <b>leto</b>                                | summer                                 |
| <b>kúpeľňa -ne</b>                       | bathroom            | <b>ležať/ležím</b>                         | to lie                                 |
| <b>kúpiť</b>                             | to buy              | <b>liek -u</b>                             | medicine                               |
| <b>&lt; kupovať (si)</b>                 |                     | <b>lietadlo</b>                            | plane                                  |
| <b>kupovať</b> to buy                    | <i>see kúpiť</i>    | <b>lietať</b>                              | to fly, <i>see letieť</i>              |
| <b>kurča -aťa,</b><br><i>pl. -atá n.</i> | chicken             | <b>list -u/-a</b>                          | letter, leaf                           |
| <b>kúrenie</b>                           | heating             | <b>lístok -tka</b>                         | ticket                                 |
| <b>kus -a</b>                            | piece               | <b>jedálny lístok</b>                      | menu                                   |
| <b>o kus</b>                             | a bit (-er)         | <b>liter -tra, pl. -tre</b>                | litre                                  |
| <b>kúsok -ska</b>                        | piece               | <b>literatúra</b>                          | literature                             |
| <b>kút -a</b>                            | corner              | <b>literárnovedný</b>                      | of literary<br>studies                 |
| <b>kvalitný/-ejší</b>                    | good/better-quality | <b>Londýn -a</b>                           | London                                 |
| <b>kvetina</b>                           | flower              | <b>ľud -u</b>                              | the people                             |
| <b>kým</b>                               | while               | <b>ľudia -dí, -d'om,<br/>-d'och, -d'mi</b> | people, <i>pl. of</i><br><i>m. pl.</i> |
| <b>kým</b>                               | <i>see kto</i>      |  | <b>človek</b>                          |
| <b>kytica</b>                            | bouquet             | <b>ľudový adj.</b>                         | folk                                   |
| <b>lacný/-ejší</b>                       | cheap/er            | <b>ľutovať</b>                             | to be sorry                            |
| <b>ľahký</b>                             | light, easy         | <b>luxusný</b>                             | luxury                                 |
| <b>ľahnúť si/</b><br><i>ľahne si pf</i>  | to lie down         | <b>lýceum -cea n.</b>                      | lycée, college                         |
| <b>ľahší</b>                             | lighter, easier     | <b>lyžiar, -ka</b>                         | skier                                  |
| <b>lampa</b>                             | lamp                | <b>lyžica</b>                              | spoon                                  |
| <b>lanovka</b>                           | cable-car           | <b>ma</b>                                  | <i>me, see ja</i>                      |
| <b>láska</b>                             | love                | <b>mača -aťa, pl.<br/>-atá</b>             | kitten                                 |
| <b>láskavo</b>                           | kindly              | <b>mačka</b>                               | cat                                    |
| <b>láskavý</b>                           | kind                | <b>Maďar,</b><br><b>Maďarka</b>            | a Hungarian                            |
| <b>látka</b>                             | material, fabric    | <b>mad'arčina</b>                          | Hungarian                              |
| <b>lebo</b>                              | because             | <b>Maďarsko</b>                            | Hungary                                |
| <b>lekár, lekárka</b>                    | doctor              | <b>mad'arský, -y</b>                       | Hungarian                              |
| <b>lekáreň -rne f.</b>                   | pharmacy            | <b>magistrála</b>                          | trunk road                             |
| <b>len</b>                               | only                | <b>máj -a</b>                              | May                                    |
| <b>lenivý</b>                            | lazy                | <b>make-up</b>                             | make-up                                |
| <b>lepší, lepšie</b>                     | better              |  |  |

|                      |                                     |                         |                          |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>mal</b>           | had, should<br>have, <i>see mať</i> | <b>meno</b>             | name                     |
| <b>mal by</b>        | ought to, <i>see mať</i>            | <b>menší</b>            | smaller                  |
| <b>Malá Fatra</b>    | the Low Fatra                       | <b>menza</b>            | refectory                |
| <b>Malé Karpaty</b>  | the Little                          | <b>mesiac -a</b>        | month, moon              |
| <b>- Malých</b>      | Carpathians                         | <b>mestečko</b>         | little town              |
| <b>Karpát f. pl.</b> |                                     | <b>mesto</b>            | town                     |
| <b>maliarstvo</b>    | painting                            | <b>meškanie</b>         | delay                    |
| <b>maličkost'</b>    | a trifle                            | <b>mať meškanie</b>     | to be late               |
| <b>maličký</b>       | tiny little                         | <b>meškať</b>           | to be delayed/<br>late   |
| <b>málo</b>          | little, few                         | <b>mi</b>               | <i>to/for me, see on</i> |
| <b>malý/menší</b>    | small/er                            | <b>mier -u, adj.</b>    | peace ·                  |
| <b>mama, mami,</b>   | mum                                 | <b>mierový</b>          |                          |
| <b>mamka</b>         |                                     | <b>miestenka</b>        | seat reservation         |
| <b>manžel</b>        | husband, <i>pl.</i> -ia<br>couple   | <b>miestnosť</b>        | room                     |
| <b>manželka</b>      | wife                                | <b>miesto</b>           | place, space, job        |
| <b>marec -rca</b>    | March                               | <b>miliarda</b>         | thousand million         |
| <b>marhuľ'a -le</b>  | apricot                             | <b>miliardtý</b>        | thousand-                |
| <b>maslo</b>         | butter                              | <b>milionár, -ka</b>    | millionth                |
| <b>mať</b>           | to have; should/<br>be supposed to  | <b>milión -a</b>        | millionaire              |
| <b>mať rád/rada</b>  | to like, love                       | <b>miliónty</b>         | million                  |
| <b>mať radšej</b>    | to prefer                           | <b>milovať</b>          | millionth                |
| <b>mať sa</b>        | to be (feeling)                     | <b>milý</b>             | to love                  |
| <b>Matej Korvín</b>  | Matthias<br>Corvinus                | <b>mimoriadne</b>       | dear                     |
| <b>matka</b>         | mother                              | <b>minca</b>            | extraordinarily          |
| <b>mávať freq.</b>   | to have                             | <b>minerálka</b>        | coin                     |
| <b>máváť</b>         | to wave                             | <b>minimálne</b>        | mineral water            |
| <b>mäkčeň -a</b>     | soft sign                           |                         | minimally, at            |
| <b>mäkký/mäksí</b>   | soft/er                             |                         | least                    |
| <b>mäsiar, -ka</b>   | butcher                             | <b>minulý</b>           | last, past               |
| <b>mäsiarstvo</b>    | butcher's                           | <b>mínus</b>            | minus                    |
| <b>mäso</b>          | meat                                | <b>minút/minie,</b>     | to spend, pass,          |
| <b>medicína</b>      | medicine                            | <b>minul &lt; míňať</b> | miss                     |
| <b>medzi + ins.</b>  | between,<br>among                   | <b>minuta</b>           | minute                   |
| <b>medzitým</b>      | meanwhile                           | <b>mladý/ší</b>         | young/er                 |
| <b>menej</b>         | less                                | <b>mliečny bar</b>      | milk bar                 |
| <b>meniť &gt; z-</b> | to change                           | <b>mlieko</b>           | milk                     |
|                      |                                     | <b>mňa, mne</b>         | me, <i>see ja</i>        |
|                      |                                     | <b>mnoho</b>            | many, much               |
|                      |                                     | <b>mnou</b>             | me, <i>see ja</i>        |
|                      |                                     | <b>moderný</b>          | modern                   |
|                      |                                     | <b>modrý</b>            | blue                     |

|                                     |                                      |                         |                          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>mohol</b>                        | was able, <i>see</i><br><b>môct'</b> | <b>nachádzať sa</b>     | to be found/<br>situated |
| <b>mohol by</b>                     | could, <i>see</i><br><b>môct'</b>    | <b>naj-</b>             | most, -est               |
| <b>moja, moje</b>                   | my, <i>see</i> <b>môj</b>            | <b>najmä</b>            | especially               |
| <b>mokka</b>                        | mocca                                | <b>najskôr</b>          | most likely              |
| <b>mokro</b>                        | damp                                 | <b>našiel</b>           | to find                  |
| <b>moment</b>                       | (just) a moment                      | <b>&lt; nachádzať</b>   |                          |
| <b>Morava</b>                       | Moravia                              | <b>najviac</b>          | most                     |
| <b>na Morave</b>                    | in Moravia                           | <b>nakoniec</b>         | finally, in the end      |
| <b>Morava</b>                       | river Morava                         | <b>nákup -u</b>         | shopping,<br>purchase    |
| <b>most -a</b>                      | bridge                               | <b>nakúpiť</b>          | to shop                  |
| <b>mozog -zgu</b>                   | brain                                | <b>&lt; nakupovať</b>   |                          |
| <b>možno</b>                        | maybe                                | <b>nákupná taška</b>    | shopping bag             |
| <b>možnosť</b>                      | possibility                          | <b>naliat/nalejem</b>   | to pour out              |
| <b>môct'/môžem,</b><br><b>mohol</b> | to be able, can<br>my                | <b>&lt; nalievať</b>    |                          |
| <b>môj, moja, moje</b>              | frost                                | <b>nám</b>              | us, <i>see</i> <b>my</b> |
| <b>mráz – mrazu</b>                 | carrot(s)                            | <b>námostie</b>         | square                   |
| <b>mrkva</b>                        | to freeze                            | <b>nami</b>             | us, <i>see</i> <b>my</b> |
| <b>mrznúť</b>                       | to him, <i>see</i> <b>on</b>         | <b>namiesto + gen.</b>  | instead of               |
| <b>mu</b>                           | wise                                 | <b>naň</b>              | onto, for him/it         |
| <b>múdry</b>                        | flour                                | <b>naňho</b>            | onto, for him            |
| <b>múka</b>                         | to have to, must                     | <b>naobedovať</b>       | have dinner              |
| <b>musieť</b>                       | museum                               | <b>sa pf</b>            |                          |
| <b>múzeum -zea n.</b>               | performing                           | <b>naopak</b>           | on the contrary          |
| <b>múzický adj.</b>                 | man, husband                         | <b>naozaj</b>           | really                   |
| <b>muž</b>                          | we, us                               | <b>nápad -u</b>         | idea                     |
| <b>my – nás</b>                     | soap                                 | <b>napínavý</b>         | exciting                 |
| <b>mydlo</b>                        | to think                             | <b>napísat'/napišem</b> | to write                 |
| <b>myslieť/myslím</b><br>(si)       | mouse                                | <b>&lt; písat'</b>      |                          |
| <b>myš -i f.</b>                    | on                                   | <b>napiť/napijem</b>    | to have a drink          |
| <b>na + loc.</b>                    | onto, for; for<br>(time ahead)       | <b>sa pf</b>            |                          |
| <b>na + acc.</b>                    | cooked in butter                     | <b>napokon</b>          | finally                  |
| <b>na masle</b>                     | above                                | <b>napríklad</b>        | for example              |
| <b>nad + ins.</b>                   | to hurry                             | <b>naproti + dat.</b>   | opposite                 |
| <b>náhlisť sa</b>                   | angry, cross                         | <b>naraňajkovat'</b>    | to have                  |
| <b>nahnevaný</b>                    | by chance, maybe                     | <b>sa pf</b>            | breakfast                |
| <b>náhodou</b>                      | to find, <i>see</i> <b>nájsť</b>     | <b>národ -a</b>         | nation                   |
| <b>nachádzať</b>                    |                                      | <b>narodenie</b>        | birth                    |
|                                     |                                      | <b>narodeniny -ín</b>   | birthday                 |
|                                     |                                      | <i>f. pl.</i>           |                          |

|                                    |                            |                               |                           |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>narodiť sa</b> <i>pf</i>        | to be born                 | <b>Nemeč, Nemka</b>           | a German                  |
| <b>národný</b>                     | national                   | <b>Nemecko</b>                | Germany                   |
| <b>nás</b>                         | us, <i>see my</i>          | <b>nemecký, -y</b>            | German                    |
| <b>nasadnúť</b> <i>pf</i>          | to board, get on           | <b>nemocnica</b>              | hospital                  |
| <b>naspäť</b>                      | back                       | <b>nemohol</b>                | couldn't, <i>see</i>      |
| <b>nástupište</b>                  | station platform           |                               | <b>môcť</b>               |
| <b>náš, naša, naše</b>             | our                        | <b>nemožný</b>                | impossible                |
| <b>naučiť sa</b> <i>pf</i>         | to learn, <i>see</i>       | <b>nemu</b>                   | him/it <i>see on</i>      |
|                                    | <b>učiť sa</b>             | <b>nenávidieť</b>             | to hate                   |
| <b>naučiť</b> <i>pf</i>            | to teach, <i>see</i>       | <b>neporiadok</b> <b>-dku</b> | disorder                  |
|                                    | <b>učiť</b>                | <b>nerád</b>                  | doesn't like              |
| <b>navečerať</b> <i>sa pf</i>      | to have supper             | <b>nervózny</b>               | nervous, tense            |
| <b>návrh</b> <b>-u</b>             | proposal                   | <b>nesiem</b>                 | I carry, <i>see niesť</i> |
| <b>návšteva</b>                    | a visit                    | <b>neskoro</b>                | late                      |
| <b>navštíviť</b> <                 | to visit                   | <b>neskorší</b>               | later                     |
| <b>navštěvovat'</b>                |                            | <b>neskôr</b>                 | later                     |
| <b>názor</b> <b>-u, podľa</b>      | in my view                 | <b>nesmieť/</b>               | not to be                 |
| <b>môjho</b> <b>-u</b>             |                            | <b>nesmiem</b>                | allowed,<br>mustn't       |
| <b>nazvať/nazvem</b>               | to be called               | <b>nešiel, nešla</b>          | didn't go, <i>see íst</i> |
| <b>sa &lt; nazývať</b>             |                            | <b>netrpezlivý</b>            | impatient                 |
| <b>sa</b>                          |                            | <b>nezamestnaný</b>           | unemployed                |
| <b>ne-</b>                         | not                        | <b>než</b>                    | than                      |
| <b>ne acc.</b>                     | them, <i>see ony</i>       | <b>nič – ničoho</b>           | nothing                   |
| <b>nebo</b> <b>-a, loc. -i</b>     | sky                        | <b>nič sa nestalo</b>         | don't mention it          |
| <b>nebude</b>                      | he won't be                | <b>nie</b>                    | no, not                   |
| <b>ned'aleko</b> + gen.            | not far from               | <b>niečo – niečoho</b>        | something                 |
| <b>nedalo</b> <i>sa</i>            | it wasn't<br>possible      | <b>niekam</b>                 | (to) somewhere            |
| <b>nedávno</b>                     | recently                   | <b>niekde</b>                 | somewhere                 |
| <b>nedel'a</b> <b>-le</b>          | Sunday                     | <b>niekedy</b>                | sometimes                 |
| <b>neho</b>                        | him/it, <i>see on</i>      | <b>niekoho</b>                | someone, <i>see</i>       |
| <b>nech</b>                        | let ...                    |                               | <b>niekto</b>             |
| <b>nech sa páči</b>                | please, help<br>yourself   | <b>niekoľko</b>               | several                   |
| <b>nechať</b><br>< <b>nechávať</b> | to leave, let              | <b>niekoľko ráz</b>           | several times             |
| <b>nechce sa mi</b>                | I don't feel like          | <b>niekoľkokrát</b>           | several times             |
| <b>nej</b>                         | her/it, <i>see ona</i>     | <b>niekto – niekoho</b>       | somebody                  |
| <b>nejaký</b>                      | some, any                  | <b>niektorý</b>               | some                      |
| <b>nejst'/nejdem</b>               | not to go, <i>see íst'</i> | <b>niest'/nesiem,</b>         | to carry                  |
|                                    |                            | <b>riesol + nosiť'</b>        |                           |
| <b>nemčina</b>                     | German                     | <b>niet</b>                   | there isn't               |
|                                    | language                   | <b>nich</b>                   | them, <i>see oni</i>      |
|                                    |                            | <b>nikam</b>                  | to nowhere                |

|   |                                     |                           |  |
|---|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| <b>nikde</b>                            | nowhere                             | <b>obed -a</b>            | lunch (midday meal)                    |
| <b>nikdy</b>                            | never                               | <b>obedovať &gt;</b>      | to have lunch                          |
| <b>nikto – nikoho,</b><br><b>nikomu</b> | nobody                              | <b>naobedovať sa</b>      |  |
| <b>ním</b>                              | him/it, <i>see on</i>               | <b>obchádzať</b>          | to go round, <i>see obísť</i>          |
| <b>nim, nimi</b>                        | them, <i>see oni</i>                | <b>obchod -u</b>          | shop, trade                            |
| <b>nízky</b>                            | low                                 | <b>obchodný dom</b>       | department store                       |
| <b>nížší</b>                            | lower                               | <b>obidva</b>             | both                                   |
| <b>no</b>                               | well, um, (mild)<br>but             | <b>obídvať</b>            | both (male)                            |
| <b>noc -i f.</b>                        | night                               | <b>obišť/obídem,</b>      | to go round                            |
| <b>dobrú noc!</b>                       | good night!                         | <b>obišiel &lt;</b>       |  |
| <b>nočný adj.</b>                       | night                               | <b>obchádzať</b>          |  |
| <b>nočný stolík</b>                     | bedside table                       | <b>objednaný</b>          | reserved,<br>ordered                   |
| <b>noha</b>                             | leg                                 | <b>objednať</b>           | to order, book                         |
| <b>nohavice -íc f. pl.</b>              | trousers                            | <b>&lt; objednávať</b>    |  |
| <b>pančuchové</b>                       | tights                              | <b>oblačno</b>            | cloudy                                 |
| <b>nohavičky</b>                        | knickers                            | <b>oblečenie</b>          | clothes                                |
| <b>-čiek f. pl.</b>                     |                                     | <b>oblek -u</b>           | suit                                   |
| <b>ňom</b>                              | him/it, <i>see on</i>               | <b>obliecť/obliečiem,</b> | to put on                              |
| <b>normálny</b>                         | normal                              | <b>obliekol</b>           | (clothes)                              |
| <b>nos -a</b>                           | nose                                | <b>&lt; obliekať</b>      |  |
| <b>nosiť</b>                            | to carry, wear,<br><i>see niesť</i> | <b>obliekať</b>           | to put on, <i>see obliecť</i>          |
| <b>ňou</b>                              | her/it, <i>see ona</i>              | <b>obloha</b>             | sky                                    |
| <b>november -bra</b>                    | November                            | <b>oblok -a</b>           | window                                 |
| <b>novinár, -ka</b>                     | journalist                          | <b>oblúbený</b>           | favourite                              |
| <b>noviny -ín f. pl.</b>                | newspaper                           | <b>obrátiť sa pf</b>      | to turn (self)                         |
| <b>novší</b>                            | newer                               | <b>obraz -u</b>           | picture                                |
| <b>nový</b>                             | new                                 | <b>obsadený</b>           | occupied                               |
| <b>nožnice -íc f. pl.</b>               | scissors                            | <b>obťažovať</b>          | to bother,<br>disturb                  |
| <b>nôž – noža</b>                       | knife                               | <b>obut'/obujem</b>       | to put on<br>(shoes)                   |
| <b>ňu</b>                               | her/it, <i>see ona</i>              | <b>&lt; obúvať</b>        |  |
| <b>nudiť sa</b>                         | to be bored                         | <b>obuv -i f.</b>         | footwear                               |
| <b>núdzový východ</b>                   | emergency exit                      | <b>obúvať</b>             | to put on<br>(shoes), <i>see obut'</i> |
| <b>o + loc.</b>                         | about (theme),<br>at (o'clock)      | <b>obyčajne</b>           | usually                                |
| <b>o + acc.</b>                         | in (a period of<br>time)            | <b>obyčajný</b>           | ordinary                               |
| <b>oba, obe, obaja</b>                  | both, <i>see obidva</i>             | <b>obývačka</b>           | living room                            |
| <b>obálka</b>                           | envelope                            |                           |  |
| <b>obávať sa</b>                        | to fear                             |                           |  |

|   |                                  |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| <b>oko</b>  | dad                              | <b>okolo + gen.</b>                       | around                           |
| <b>očakávať</b>   | to expect, await                 | <b>október -bra</b>                       | October                          |
| <b>oči -í pl. of oko</b>  | eyes                             | <b>okuliare -ov pl.</b>                   | spectacles                       |
| <b>od, odo + gen.</b>   | from, away from                  | <b>olej -a</b>                            | oil                              |
| <b>odborný</b>  | specialist,<br>technical         | <b>omáčka</b>                             | sauce, gravy                     |
| <b>oddych -u</b>  | rest, leisure                    | <b>omeleta</b>                            | omelette                         |
| <b>odevy -ov m. pl.</b>   | clothes                          | <b>on, ona</b>                            | he, she                          |
| <b>odchádzať</b>  | to go away, <i>see<br/>odísť</i> | <b>oni</b>                                | they                             |
| <b>odchod -u</b>  | departure                        | <b>ono</b>                                | it                               |
| <b>odísť/odídem,</b><br><b>odišiel &lt;</b><br><b>odchádzat'</b>              | to go away                       | <b>ony</b>                                | they (non-male)                  |
| <b>odkaz -u</b>   | message                          | <b>opakováť &gt; z-</b>                   | to repeat                        |
| <b>odkázať pf</b>   | to give a<br>message             | <b>opálený</b>                            | sunburnt                         |
| <b>odkiaľ</b>   | where from?                      | <b>opäť</b>                               | again                            |
| <b>odletieť</b><br><b>&lt; odlietať</b>                                       | to fly off                       | <b>opitý</b>                              | drunk                            |
| <b>odmietnuť</b><br><b>&lt; odmietať</b>                                      | to refuse                        | <b>opýtať sa pf</b><br><i>of pýtať sa</i> | to ask                           |
| <b>odpoved' -de f.</b>  | a reply                          | <b>oranžový adj.</b>                      | orange                           |
| <b>odpovedať/</b><br><b>odpoviem pf</b>                                       | to reply                         | <b>organizovať</b>                        | to organise                      |
| <b>odpovedať/</b><br><b>odpovedám</b>   | to reply                         | <b>osem</b>                               | eight                            |
| <b>odrazu</b>   | suddenly                         | <b>osemdesiat, -ty</b>                    | eighty, -ieth                    |
| <b>odtial'</b>  | from there                       | <b>osemnásť, -sty</b>                     | eighteen(th)                     |
| <b>odtiaľto</b>   | from here                        | <b>osoba</b>                              | person                           |
| <b>odviezť/</b><br><b>odveziem,</b><br><b>odviezol</b><br><b>&lt; odvážať</b> | to drive/take<br>away            | <b>osobne</b>                             | personally                       |
| <b>ohlásiť &lt;</b><br><b>ohlasovať</b>                                       | to report                        | <b>osprchovať sa</b><br><i>pf</i>         | to have a<br>shower              |
| <b>oholíť (sa), pf</b><br><i>of holíť</i>                                     | to shave                         | <b>ostať &lt; ostávať</b>                 | to remain, be left               |
| <b>okamžite</b>   | immediately                      | <b>ošklivý, -o</b>                        | ugly, nasty                      |
| <b>okienko</b>  | little window                    | <b>oštiepok -pka</b>                      | a sheep's milk<br>cheese         |
| <b>okno</b>   | window                           | <b>otázka</b>                             | question                         |
| <b>oko, pl. oči -í</b>  | eye                              | <b>otec – otca,</b><br><i>pl. otcovia</i> | father                           |
|   |                                  | <b>otecko</b>                             | dad                              |
|   |                                  | <b>otvárať</b>                            | to open, <i>see<br/>otvorit'</i> |
|   |                                  | <b>otvoriť</b><br><i>&lt; otvárať</i>     | to open                          |
|   |                                  | <b>oveľa</b>                              | much (+ -er)                     |
|   |                                  | <b>ovocie</b>                             | fruit                            |
|   |                                  | <b>Oxford -u</b>                          | Oxford                           |
|   |                                  | <b>ozvať/ozvem</b>                        | to respond, get                  |
|   |                                  | <b>sa &lt; ozývať sa</b>                  | in touch                         |

|                          |                          |                              |                         |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>ôsmy</b>              | eighth                   | <b>pavúk</b>                 | spider                  |
| <b>páčiť sa</b>          | to please                | <b>päť</b>                   | five                    |
| <b>palác -a</b>          | palace                   | <b>päťdesiat, -ty</b>        | fifty, -ieth            |
| <b>pamätať si</b>        | to remember              | <b>pätnásť, -sty</b>         | fifteen(th)             |
| > za- + acc.             |                          | <b>päťsto, päťstý</b>        | five hundred, -th       |
| <b>pamätať sa na</b>     | to remember              | <b>peceň -čna</b>            | loaf                    |
| + acc.                   |                          | <b>pečený</b>                | roast                   |
| <b>pamätný</b>           | commemorative            | <b>pečivo</b>                | bread/rolls             |
| <b>pán</b>               | Mr, man                  | <b>pekár, -ka</b>            | baker                   |
| <b>pančucháče</b>        | tights                   | <b>pekáreň -rne f.</b>       | bakery                  |
| -ov m. pl.               |                          | <b>pekne</b>                 | nicely                  |
| = pančuchové             |                          | <b>je pekne</b>              | it's nice               |
| <b>nohavice</b>          |                          | <b>pekný</b>                 | nice, pretty,<br>lovely |
| <b>pančuchy</b>          | stockings                | <b>peňaženka</b>             | purse                   |
| -úch f. pl.              |                          | <b>peniaze –</b>             | money                   |
| <b>pane</b>              | sir!                     | <b>peňazí m. pl.</b>         |                         |
| <b>pane bože!</b>        | Lord God!                | <b>pepsikola</b>             | Pepsi Cola              |
| <b>pani</b>              | Mrs                      | <b>pera, gen. pl.</b>        | lip                     |
| <b>pani, acc. paniu,</b> | lady                     | <b>peri/pier</b>             |                         |
| gen./dat./loc.           |                          | <b>percento, gen.</b>        | per cent                |
| <b>panej,</b>            |                          | <b>pl. percent</b>           |                         |
| <b>ins. paňou,</b>       |                          | <b>pero</b>                  | pen                     |
| <b>pl. panie -í</b>      |                          | <b>pes – psa</b>             | dog                     |
| <b>pánsky</b>            | men's                    | <b>pesnička</b>              | (little/nice) song      |
| <b>papier -a, pl. -e</b> | paper                    | <b>peši, pešo</b>            | on foot                 |
| <b>paprika, adj.</b>     | paprika, pepper          | <b>pevnosť</b>               | fort                    |
| -ový                     |                          | <b>piatok -tka/-u</b>        | Friday                  |
| <b>pár</b>               | a couple                 | <b>piaty</b>                 | fifth                   |
| <b>paradajka, adj.</b>   | tomato                   | <b>pieseň -sne f.</b>        | song                    |
| -ový                     |                          | <b>Piešťany -án m.</b>       | Piešťany                |
| <b>Pariž -a</b>          | Paris                    | <i>pl.</i>                   |                         |
| <b>park -u</b>           | park                     | <b>písanie</b>               | writing                 |
| <b>parkovať &gt; za-</b> | to park                  | <b>písat'/píšem &gt; na-</b> | to write                |
| <b>parkovisko</b>        | car-park, parking<br>lot | <b>pit'/pijem &gt; vy-</b>   | to drink                |
| <b>parlament -u</b>      | parliament               | <b>pitie, na</b>             | for a drink             |
| <b>párok -rka</b>        | frankfurter              | <b>pivečko</b>               | (nice) beer             |
| <b>pas -u</b>            | passport                 | <b>pivo</b>                  | beer                    |
| <b>pás -a/-u</b>         | belt, waist              | <b>platíť &gt; za-</b>       | to pay                  |
| <b>páskovaný</b>         | striped                  | <b>plávať</b>                | to swim                 |
| <b>pasta, zubná</b>      | toothpaste               | <b>pleče, pl.</b>            | shoulder                |
| <b>patriť</b>            | to belong                | <b>plecia – pliec</b>        |                         |

|  |                                     |                                   |                                      |
|--|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>pleso</b>                                 | mountain lake                       | <b>pokladnica</b>                 | till, cash desk,                     |
| <b>plienka</b>                               | nappy, diaper                       |                                   | box office,                          |
| <b>plno</b>                                  | full                                |                                   | safe                                 |
| <b>plný</b>                                  | full                                | <b>pokrájať &lt;</b>              | to slice                             |
| <b>přuhavo, je</b>                           | it's nasty<br>(weather)             | <b>krájať</b>                     |                                      |
| <b>plus</b>                                  | plus                                | <b>pokročilý</b>                  | advanced                             |
| <b>po + loc.</b>                             | after, along,<br>about, over        | <b>pol</b>                        | half                                 |
| <b>po + acc.</b>                             | for, to fetch                       | <b>pole</b>                       | field                                |
| <b>po (slovensky)</b>                        | in (Slovak)                         | <b>Poliak, Poľka</b>              | a Pole                               |
| <b>počasie</b>                               | the weather                         | <b>policajná stanica</b>          | police-station                       |
| <b>počkať pf</b>                             | to wait, <i>see</i><br><b>čakať</b> | <b>polievka</b>                   | soup                                 |
| <b>počuť/počujem</b>                         | to hear                             | <b>politický</b>                  | political                            |
| <b>počuť</b>                                 | it's audible,<br>I hear             | <b>politik, politička</b>         | politician                           |
| <b>počúvať</b>                               | to listen to                        | <b>politika</b>                   | politics                             |
| <b>pod + ins.</b>                            | under, beneath                      | <b>polícia, na -ii</b>            | police, at the<br>police             |
| <b>pod'(te)!</b>                             | come!                               | <b>polnoc -i f.</b>               | midnight                             |
| <b>pod'(te) d'alej!</b>                      | come in!                            | <b>polovica</b>                   | half                                 |
| <b>pod'akovat' &lt;</b>                      |                                     | <b>Poľsko</b>                     | Poland                               |
| <b>d'akovat'</b>                             | to thank                            | <b>poľský, -y</b>                 | Polish                               |
| <b>podat'</b>                                | to be served                        | <b>poľština</b>                   | Polish language                      |
| <b>&lt; podávať sa</b>                       |                                     | <b>poludnie</b>                   | midday                               |
| <b>podchod -u</b>                            | subway                              | <b>Polyesterový</b>               | Polyester                            |
| <b>podíšť/podídem,</b><br><b>podíšiel pf</b> | to go up to                         | <b>pomáhať</b>                    | to help, <i>see</i><br><b>pomôcť</b> |
| <b>podkolienky</b>                           | knee-length                         | <b>pomalší</b>                    | slower                               |
| <b>-nok f. pl.</b>                           | stockings, socks                    | <b>pomalý</b>                     | slow                                 |
| <b>podl'a + gen.</b>                         | according to                        | <b>pomaly</b>                     | slowly                               |
| <b>podlaha</b>                               | floor                               | <b>pomaranč -a</b>                | an orange                            |
| <b>podnikateľ, -ka</b>                       | businessman,<br>entrepreneur        | <b>pomarančový</b><br><i>adj.</i> | orange                               |
| <b>podoba</b>                                | form                                | <b>pomerne</b>                    | fairly, relatively                   |
| <b>podpísat'</b>                             | to sign                             | <b>pomník -a</b>                  | memorial<br>(statue)                 |
| <b>&lt; podpisovať</b>                       |                                     | <b>pomoc -i f.</b>                | help                                 |
| <b>podstata</b>                              | basis                               | <b>pomôcť /</b>                   | to help                              |
| <b>v podstate</b>                            | basically                           | <b>pomôžem,</b>                   |                                      |
| <b>pohár -a pl. -e</b>                       | glass                               | <b>pomohol</b>                    |                                      |
| <b>pohárik -a</b>                            | (small) glass                       | <b>&lt; pomáhať</b>               |                                      |
| <b>pohľadnica</b>                            | postcard                            | <b>ponáhľať sa</b>                | to hurry                             |
|  |                                     | <b>pondelok -lka,</b>             | Monday                               |
|  |                                     | <b>v pondelok</b>                 | on Monday                            |

|                         |                                  |                         |  |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <b>ponosovať sa na</b>  | complain about                   | <b>pozajtra</b>         | the day after  |
| <b>ponožky -žiek</b>    | socks                            |                         | tomorrow   |
| <i>f. pl.</i>           |                                  |                         |  |
| <b>poobede</b>          | in the afternoon,<br>after lunch | <b>pozdrav -u</b>       | greeting   |
|                         |                                  | <b>pozdraviť</b>        | to greet   |
|                         |                                  | < <b>pozdravovať</b>    |  |
| <b>Poprad -u</b>        | Poprad                           | <b>pozerať</b>          | to watch, look at  |
| <b>poprosiť o</b>       | ask for                          | <b>poznať</b>           | to know (e.g.<br>person, place)                          |
| + acc. <                |                                  |                         |  |
| <b>prosiť</b>           |                                  | <b>poznať</b>           | to get to know   |
|                         |                                  | < <b>poznávať</b>       |  |
| <b>populárny</b>        | popular                          | <b>pozor -u</b>         | care, attention  |
| <b>poradíť &lt;</b>     | to advise                        | <b>pozor!</b>           | watch out!<br>attention!                                 |
| <b>radíť</b>            |                                  |                         |  |
| <b>poriadok -dku</b>    | order                            | <b>dávať si pozor</b>   | to take care   |
| <b>cestovný</b>         | timetable                        | <b>pozriet/pozriem,</b> | to look at   |
| <b>poriadok</b>         |                                  | <b>pozri(te)! (si)</b>  |  |
| <b>porozprávať</b>      | to have a talk                   | <i>pf + acc.</i>        |  |
| <b>sa pf</b>            |                                  | (sa) <b>na + acc.</b>   | to take a look   |
| <b>posad'(te) sa pf</b> | take a seat                      | <b>pf</b>               | at, look at  |
| <b>poschodie</b>        | floor, storey                    | <b>pozvať/pozvem</b>    | to invite  |
| <b>poskytnúť</b>        | to offer                         | < <b>pozývať</b>        |  |
| < <b>poskytovať</b>     |                                  | <b>pozývať</b>          | see <b>pozvať</b>  |
| <b>poslat'/pošleť</b>   | to send                          | <b>požiadať &lt;</b>    | to request   |
| < <b>posielat'</b>      |                                  | <b>žiadať</b>           |  |
| <b>posledný</b>         | last                             | <b>požičať/</b>         | to lend  |
| <b>postavený</b>        | built                            | <b>požičiam</b>         |  |
| <b>postaviť vodu</b>    | to put on water                  | < <b>požičiavať</b>     |  |
| <i>pf</i>               |                                  | <b>požičať/</b>         | to borrow  |
| <b>postel' -le f.</b>   | bed                              | <b>požičiam si</b>      |  |
| <b>pošta</b>            | post office                      | < <b>požičiavať si</b>  |  |
| <b>na pošte</b>         | at the post office               | <b>pôjdem</b>           | I will go, see <b>ísť</b>                                |
| <b>potom</b>            | then                             | <b>pôsobiť &gt; za-</b> | to influence   |
| <b>potraviny -ín</b>    | food, grocer's                   | <i>na + acc.</i>        |  |
| <i>f. pl.</i>           |                                  | <b>pôvod -u</b>         | origin   |
| <b>potrebovať/</b>      | to need                          | <b>pôvodne</b>          | originally   |
| <b>potrebujem</b>       |                                  | <b>práca -e</b>         | work   |
| <b>povedať/</b>         | to say, tell                     | <b>pracovať/</b>        | to work  |
| <b>poviem pf</b>        |                                  | <b>pracujem</b>         |  |
| <b>povedzme</b>         | let's say                        | <b>práčka</b>           | washing machine  |
| <b>povedz(te)!</b>      | tell! say!                       | <b>prádlo</b>           | underwear, bed-<br>linen, 'correct'<br>= <b>bielizeň</b> |
| <b>poviem</b>           | see <b>povedať</b>               |                         |  |
| <b>povinné čítanie</b>  | compulsory/set<br>reading        |                         |  |

|                                     |                                     |                         |                              |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Praha</b>                        | Prague                              | <b>prechádzať sa</b>    | to walk                      |
| <b>praktický</b>                    | practical                           | <b>prechádzka</b>       | a walk                       |
| <b>pravda, pravda?</b>              | truth, true?                        | <b>prejsť/prejdem,</b>  | to cross, go                 |
| <b>mať pravdu</b>                   | to be right                         | <b>prešiel</b>          | across/through               |
| <b>pravdaže</b>                     | of course                           | <b>&lt; prechádzať</b>  |                              |
| <b>práve</b>                        | just, just now                      | <b>prekážať</b>         | to obstruct/be a<br>nuisance |
| <b>pravidlo</b>                     | rule                                | <b>preklad -u</b>       | a translation                |
| <b>právo na + acc.</b>              | a right to                          | <b>prekladanie</b>      | translating, <i>see</i>      |
| <b>pravý</b>                        | true                                | <b>prekladať</b>        | <b>prekladať</b>             |
| <b>prázdniny -ín f. pl.</b>         | holidays                            |                         | to translate, <i>see</i>     |
| <b>prázdny</b>                      | empty                               |                         | <b>preložiť</b>              |
| <b>pre + acc.</b>                   | for (benefit of)                    | <b>prekvapíť</b>        | to surprise                  |
| <b>preč</b>                         | away                                | <b>&lt; prekvapovať</b> |                              |
| <b>precítať &lt; čítať</b>          | to read                             | <b>prekvapujúci</b>     | surprising                   |
| <b>prečo</b>                        | why?                                | <b>preložiť</b>         | to translate                 |
| <b>pred + ins.</b>                  | in front of,<br>before, ago         | <b>&lt; prekladat'</b>  |                              |
| <b>predaj -a</b>                    | sale                                | <b>preňho</b>           | for him                      |
| <b>predajňa -ne</b>                 | shop                                | <b>prepáč(te)!</b>      | sorry! excuse<br>me!         |
| <b>predať</b>                       | to sell                             | <b>preplnený</b>        | over-full,<br>crowded        |
| <b>&lt; predávať</b>                |                                     | <b>presne</b>           | exactly                      |
| <b>predavač, -ka</b>                | sales assistant                     | <b>prešťahovať</b>      | to move house                |
| <b>predávať impf<br/>of predat'</b> | to sell                             | <b>sa pf</b>            |                              |
| <b>predjedlo</b>                    | starter                             | <b>prestať/prestane</b> | to stop (doing)              |
| <b>prednášať</b>                    | to lecture                          | <b>&lt; prestávať</b>   |                              |
| <b>prednáška</b>                    | a lecture                           | <b>prestavaný</b>       | rebuilt                      |
| <b>predný</b>                       | front                               | <b>prestúpiť &lt;</b>   | to change                    |
| <b>predpoved'</b>                   | forecast                            | <b>prestupovať</b>      | (trains, buses<br>etc.)      |
| <b>-de f.</b>                       |                                     | <b>Prešov -a</b>        | Prešov                       |
| <b>počasia</b>                      | weather forecast                    | <b>Prešporok -rka</b>   | Pressburg                    |
| <b>predsa len</b>                   | anyway, after all                   | <b>preto</b>            | therefore, so,<br>that's why |
| <b>predsieň -ne f.</b>              | hallway                             | <b>pretože</b>          | because                      |
| <b>predstaviť</b>                   | to introduce                        | <b>prezident, -ka</b>   | president                    |
| <b>&lt; predstavovať</b>            |                                     | <b>prchký</b>           | short-tempered               |
| <b>predvčerom</b>                   | day before<br>yesterday             | <b>pri + loc.</b>       | beside, near                 |
| <b>prechádzať</b>                   | to go across/<br>through <i>see</i> | <b>priamo</b>           | straight, directly           |
|                                     | <b>prejsť</b>                       | <b>priať si/</b>        | to wish                      |
|                                     |                                     | <b>prajem si</b>        |                              |

|                             |                    |   |                       |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|---|-----------------------|
| <b>priateľ, -ka</b>         | friend             | <b>proste</b>                           | simply                |
| <b>priateľsky</b>           | in a friendly way  | <b>proti + dat.</b>                     | against               |
| <b>priateľu!</b>            | pal!               | <b>prsia – pŕs n.pl.</b>                | chest                 |
| <b>pribehnúť</b>            | to run up          | <b>prsník -a</b>                        | breast<br>(woman's)   |
| < <b>pribiehať</b>          |                    |   |                       |
| <b>pribuzný, -á</b>         | a relative         | <b>prst -a</b>                          | finger, toe           |
| <b>príde</b>                | <i>see prísť</i>   | <b>pršať/prší</b>                       | to rain               |
| <b>prichádzať</b>           | to come, arrive    | <b>prvý</b>                             | first                 |
| <i>impf of</i> <b>prísť</b> |                    | <b>psi/psy</b>                          | dogs, <i>see pes</i>  |
| <b>príchod -u</b>           | arrival            | <b>pstruh</b>                           | trout                 |
| <b>príklad -u</b>           | example            | <b>pulóver -vra,</b><br><i>pl. -vre</i> | pullover              |
| <b>príliš</b>               | too                |   |                       |
| <b>Primaciálny</b>          | Primate's          | <b>pult -u</b>                          | counter, bar          |
| <b>priniesť/</b>            | to bring           | <b>pyžama</b>                           | pyjamas               |
| <b>prinesiem</b>            |                    | <b>pýtať sa &gt; o-/z-</b>              | to ask                |
| < <b>prinášať</b>           |                    | + gen.                                  | someone               |
| <b>pripomínať</b>           | to commemorate     | <b>na + acc.</b>                        | about                 |
| <b>pripraviť &lt;</b>       | to prepare         | <b>rád, rada</b>                        | glad, + verb: like    |
| <b>pripravovať</b>          |                    |   | -ing                  |
| <b>prirodzene</b>           | naturally          | <b>mať rád</b>                          | to like               |
| <b>prísný</b>               | strict, severe     | <b>rado sa stalo</b>                    | glad to oblige        |
| <b>prísť/prídem,</b>        | to come, arrive    | <b>rada</b>                             | advice                |
| <b>prišiel &lt;</b>         |                    | <b>rádio</b>                            | radio                 |
| <b>prichádzať</b>           |                    | <b>radiť &gt; po-</b>                   | to advise             |
| <b>pristať/pristane</b>     | to suit, fit       | <b>radnica</b>                          | town-hall             |
| <i>pf</i>                   |                    | <b>radosť</b>                           | joy                   |
| <b>prišiel</b>              | <i>see prísť</i>   | <b>radšej</b>                           | better,               |
| <b>privéťa</b>              | too much           |   | preferably            |
| <b>priviesť</b>             | to bring           | <b>mať radšej</b>                       | to prefer             |
| < <b>privádzsať</b>         | (leading)          | <b>rak</b>                              | crayfish              |
| <b>priviezť</b>             | to bring (by       | <b>Rakúsko</b>                          | Austria               |
| < <b>privážať</b>           | vehicle)           | <b>rakúsky</b>                          | Austrian              |
| <b>problém -u</b>           | problem            | <b>Rakúšan, -ka</b>                     | an Austrian           |
| <b>profesor</b>             | professor, teacher | <b>rameno</b>                           | <i>correct</i> upper  |
| <b>prosba</b>               | request            |   | arm; <i>incorrect</i> |
| <b>prosím (ťa, vás)</b>     | please             |   | shoulder              |
| <b>prosím?</b>              | can I help?        |   | = <b>plece</b>        |
|                             | pardon?            | <b>raňajkovat' &gt;</b>                 | to breakfast          |
| <b>prosím si</b>            | please may I       | <b>naraňajkovat' sa</b>                 |                       |
|                             | have               |   |                       |
| <b>prosit' &gt; po- o</b>   | to ask for         | <b>raňajky -jok</b>                     | breakfast             |
| + acc.                      |                    | <i>f. pl.</i>                           |                       |
|                             |                    | <b>ráno</b>                             | morning               |

|                               |                             |   |                              |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| <b>raz gen. pl. ráz</b>       | time, once,                 | <b>rozviest'</b> /  | to get divorced              |
| <b>niekoľko ráz</b>           | several times               | <b>rozviedol sa</b>                                       |                              |
| <b>recepčný/-á</b>            | receptionist                | <i>pf</i>   |                              |
| <b>reč -i f.</b>              | speech, language            | <b>rožok -žka or</b>                                      | crescent-shape/              |
| <b>rekreačný</b>              | recreational                | <b>rožtek -a</b>  | pointed roll                 |
| <b>republika</b>              | republic                    | <b>rôzny</b>  | various                      |
| <b>reštaurácia</b>            | restaurant                  | <b>ruka</b>   | hand                         |
| <b>rezeň -zňa</b>             | schnitzel                   | <b>rukavica</b>   | glove                        |
| <b>rezervovaný</b>            | reserved                    | <b>rukáv -a</b>   | sleeve                       |
| <b>riad -u</b>                | the dishes                  | <b>Rus, Ruska</b>   | a Russian                    |
| <b>rieka</b>                  | river                       | <b>Rusko</b>  | Russia                       |
| <b>rímsky</b>                 | Roman                       | <b>ruský, -y</b>  | Russian                      |
| <b>robievať freq.</b>         | to do, make,<br>work        | <b>ruština</b>  | Russian                      |
| <b>robiť</b>                  | to do, make,<br>work        | <b>rúž -u</b>   | lipstick                     |
| <b>robotá</b>                 | work                        | <b>ruža</b>   | rose                         |
| <b>rock -u, adj.<br/>-ový</b> | rock music                  | <b>ružový</b>   | pink                         |
| <b>ročné obdobie</b>          | season                      | <b>ryba, adj. rybaci</b>                                  | fish                         |
| <b>ročník -a</b>              | year (of studies)           | <b>rýchlo</b>   | quickly                      |
| <b>rodičia -ov</b>            | parents                     | <b>ryža</b>   | rice                         |
| <b>starí</b>                  | grandparents                | <b>s, so + ins.</b>                                       | with                         |
| <b>rodina</b>                 | family                      | <b>sa – seba</b>  | self                         |
| <b>roh -u, za -om</b>         | corner, round<br>the corner | <b>sadnúť/sadol,</b><br><b>sadni(te)!</b><br><i>si pf</i> | to sit down, get<br>on (bus) |
| <b>rok -a/-u</b>              | year                        | <b>sako</b>   | jacket                       |
| <b>rola</b>                   | role                        | <b>saláma</b>   | salami                       |
| <b>román -u</b>               | novel                       | <b>samoobsluha</b>  | self-service,<br>supermarket |
| <b>rovnaký</b>                | the same                    | <b>samozrejme</b>   | of course                    |
| <b>rovný</b>                  | straight, exact             | <b>sandál -a, pl. -e</b>                                  | sandal                       |
| <b>rozhodne</b>               | definitely                  | <b>sám, sama</b>  | alone, self                  |
| <b>rozhodnutie</b>            | decision                    | <b>seba, sebe, sebou</b>                                  | self, <i>see sa</i>          |
| <b>rozhodnúť &lt;</b>         | to decide                   | <b>sedávať freq.</b>                                      | to sit                       |
| <b>rozhodovať (sa)</b>        |                             | <b>sedem</b>  | seven                        |
| <b>rozísť sa, rozišli</b>     | they parted                 | <b>sedemdesiat, -ty</b>                                   | seventy, -ieth               |
| <b>sa pf</b>                  |                             | <b>sedemnásť, -sty</b>                                    | seventeen(th)                |
| <b>rozmeniť &lt;</b>          | to give change              | <b>sedieť</b>   | to sit                       |
| <b>rozmieňať</b>              | for                         | <b>sekunda</b>  | a second                     |
| <b>rozprávať (sa)</b>         | to talk, chat               | <b>sem</b>  | here (motion<br>towards)     |
| <b>rozumieť/-iem</b>          | to understand               | <b>semester -tra,</b><br><i>pl. -e</i>                    | semester                     |
| <b>... -ejú</b>               |                             |   |                              |

|  |                                |                           |                        |
|--|--------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>seminár -a, pl. -e</b>              | seminar,<br>seminary           | <b>sladiť &gt; o-</b>     | to sweeten             |
| <b>september -bra</b>                  | September                      | <b>slávny</b>             | famous                 |
| <b>servus</b>                          | 'servant', hi/<br>hello, bye   | <b>slečna</b>             | Miss                   |
| <b>sestra</b>                          | sister                         | <b>slipy -ov m. pl.</b>   | briefs                 |
| <b>sever -u, severný</b>               | north, northern                | <b>slivovica</b>          | plum brandy            |
| <b>severne od</b>                      | north from<br>+ gen.           | <b>slnečno</b>            | sunny                  |
| <b>sezóna</b>                          | season                         | <b>slnko</b>              | the sun                |
| <b>schody -ov</b><br><i>m. pl.</i>     | stairs, steps                  | <b>sloboda</b>            | freedom                |
| <b>dolu schodmi</b>                    | down the<br>stairs             | <b>slovenský</b>          | Slav, Slavonic         |
| <b>schôdzka</b>                        | meeting                        | <b>Slovák, pl. -ci</b>    | a Slovak               |
| <b>schudnúť /</b><br><b>schudol pf</b> | to get thin                    | <b>slovenčina</b>         | Slovak language        |
| <b>si</b>                              | to/for self                    | <b>Slovenka</b>           | Slovak woman           |
| <b>si</b>                              | you are, <i>see byť</i>        | <b>Slovensko</b>          | Slovakia               |
| <b>síce ... ale</b>                    | albeit ...<br>however          | <b>na Slovensku</b>       | in Slovakia            |
| <b>sídisko</b>                         | housing estate                 | <b>slovenský, -y</b>      | Slovak                 |
| <b>sídlo</b>                           | seat,<br>headquarters          | <b>slovník -a</b>         | dictionary             |
| <b>siedmy</b>                          | seventh                        | <b>slovo</b>              | word                   |
| <b>sieň -ne f.</b>                     | hall                           | <b>služba</b>             | service, duty          |
| <b>silný</b>                           | strong                         | <b>sľúbit'</b>            | to promise             |
| <b>situácia</b>                        | situation                      | <b>&lt; sľubovať'</b>     |                        |
| <b>sivý</b>                            | grey                           | <b>smäd -u,</b><br>+ acc. | thirst, thirsty        |
| <b>skala, adj.</b>                     | rock, rocky                    | <b>smädný</b>             |                        |
| <b>skalnatý</b>                        |                                | <b>sme</b>                | we are, <i>see byť</i> |
| <b>sklamaný</b>                        | disappointed                   | <b>smerom na</b>          | in the direction       |
| <b>skoro, skorý</b>                    | early                          | <b>+ of</b>               |                        |
| <b>skôr</b>                            | rather, more<br>(like); sooner | <b>smiešny</b>            | funny                  |
| <b>skriňa -ne</b>                      | closet, cupboard               | <b>smieť/smiem</b>        | to be allowed,<br>may  |
| <b>skupina</b>                         | group                          | <b>Smokovec -vca</b>      | Starý Smokovec         |
| <b>skutočne</b>                        | actually, really               | <b>smutne</b>             | sad(s)                 |
| <b>skúška</b>                          | exam                           | <b>smutný</b>             | sad                    |
| <b>skvelý</b>                          | splendid,<br>excellent         | <b>snažiť sa</b>          | to try                 |
| <b>slabý, slabší</b>                   | weak, weaker                   | <b>sneh -u</b>            | snow                   |
|  |                                | <b>snežiť</b>             | to snow                |
|  |                                | <b>so = s</b>             | with                   |
|  |                                | <b>sobota</b>             | Saturday               |
|  |                                | <b>socha</b>              | statue                 |
|  |                                | <b>sol' – soli f.</b>     | salt                   |
|  |                                | <b>som</b>                | I am, <i>see byť</i>   |
|  |                                | <b>spadnúť pf</b>         | to fall down           |
|  |                                | <b>spať/spím</b>          | to sleep               |
|  |                                | <b>spálňa -ne</b>         | bedroom                |

|                            |                            |                                  |   |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>spávať</b> <i>freq.</i> | to sleep                   | <b>stať</b> <i>sa/stane</i>      | to happen,<br>become                      |
| <b>spevák, spevačka</b>    | singer                     | <b>sa &lt; stávať sa</b>         |   |
| <b>spi(te)!</b>            | sleep! <i>see spať</i>     | <b>stáť/stojím</b>               | to stand, to cost                         |
| <b>spiatočný lístok</b>    | return ticket              | <b>ste</b>                       | you are, <i>see byť</i>                   |
| <b>spievať &gt; za-</b>    | to sing                    | <b>stena</b>                     | wall                                      |
| <b>spisovateľ, -ka</b>     | writer                     | <b>sto, stý</b>                  | hundred, -th                              |
| <b>spisovný</b>            | standard literary          | <b>stolička</b>                  | chair                                     |
| <b>spodky -ov</b>          | underpants                 | <b>stolík -a</b>                 | little table                              |
| <i>m. pl.</i>              |                            | <b>storocie</b>                  | century                                   |
| <b>spodná bielizeň</b>     | underwear                  | <b>stôl – stola</b>              | table                                     |
| <b>Spojené štátyn</b>      | United States              | <b>strácať</b>                   | <i>see stratíť</i>                        |
| <i>m. pl.</i>              |                            | <b>strana</b>                    | side                                      |
| <b>spokojný</b>            | contented                  | <b>strašne</b>                   | terribly                                  |
| <b>spoločný</b>            | common, shared             | <b>strašný</b>                   | terrible, awful                           |
| <b>spolu</b>               | together,<br>altogether    | <b>stratíť &lt; strácať</b>      | to lose                                   |
| <b>spolužiak/-žiačka</b>   | fellow-student             | <b>strážiť</b>                   | to guard                                  |
| <b>spomenúť/</b>           | to remember                | <b>stred -u</b>                  | the middle,<br>centre                     |
| <b>spomeniem</b>           |                            | <b>streda</b>                    | Wednesday                                 |
| <i>&lt; spomínať si</i>    |                            | <b>stredisko</b>                 | centre                                    |
| <b>sporák -a</b>           | cooker                     | <b>stredná škola</b>             | secondary school                          |
| <b>spoznať</b>             | to recognise               | <b>stredný</b>                   | central, middle                           |
| <i>&lt; spoznávať</i>      |                            | <b>strecha</b>                   | roof                                      |
| <b>správa</b>              | report, news               | <b>stretať sa</b>                | to meet, <i>see</i><br><b>stretnúť sa</b> |
| <b>správny</b>             | correct, right             | <b>stretávať sa</b> <i>freq.</i> | to meet                                   |
| <b>sprcha</b>              | shower                     | <b>stretnúť/stretol</b>          | to meet                                   |
| <b>spýtať sa &lt;</b>      | to ask                     | <i>sa &lt; stretávať sa</i>      |   |
| <b>pýtať sa</b>            |                            | <b>strenutie</b>                 | meeting                                   |
| <b>srdce</b>               | heart                      | <b>strih -u</b>                  | cut                                       |
| <b>srdečný</b>             | cordial                    | <b>stroj -a</b>                  | machine                                   |
| <b>stačiť</b>              | to be enough               | <b>strojček -a</b>               | appliance                                 |
| <b>stále</b>               | still, constantly,<br>keep | <b>holiaci strojček</b>          | shaver                                    |
| <b>stály</b>               | constant, steady           | <b>strom -u</b>                  | tree                                      |
| <b>stanica</b>             | station                    | <b>stromček -a</b>               | (little) tree                             |
| <b>policajná</b>           | police station             | <b>strop -u</b>                  | ceiling                                   |
| <b>železničná</b>          | railway station            | <b>strýko, strýc</b>             | uncle                                     |
| <b>stará mama</b>          | granny                     | <b>stučnieť pf</b>               | to grow fat                               |
| <b>stará matka</b>         | grandmother                | <b>stupeň -pňa</b>               | degree                                    |
| <b>staromódny</b>          | old-fashioned              | <b>stý</b>                       | hundredth                                 |
| <b>starý/-ší</b>           | old/er                     | <b>stýkať sa</b>                 | to be in touch                            |
| <b>starý otec</b>          | grandfather                | <b>sú</b>                        | they are, <i>see byť</i>                  |

|                           |                           |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>súhlasiť</b>           | to agree                  | <b>šoférovať</b>          | to drive                 |
| <b>sucho</b>              | dry                       | <b>špinavý</b>            | dirty                    |
| <b>sukňa -ne</b>          | skirt                     | <b>šport -u</b>           | sport                    |
| <b>sused, suseda</b>      | neighbour                 | <b>športovať</b>          | to play sport            |
| <b>súčasný</b>            | contemporary              | <b>športovec -vca</b>     | sportsman                |
| <b>súrne</b>              | urgently                  | <b>športovkyňa</b>        | sportswoman              |
| <b>sútok -u</b>           | confluence                | <b>šťastie</b>            | luck, happiness          |
| <b>svätý</b>              | Saint                     | <b>mať šťastie</b>        | to be lucky              |
| <b>svedčí vám</b>         | it suits you              | <b>šťastný</b>            | happy                    |
| <b>svet -a</b>            | world                     | <b>šeňa -aťa, pl.</b>     | puppy                    |
| <b>sveter -tra, pl.</b>   | sweater                   | <b>-atá</b>               |                          |
| <b>-tre</b>               |                           | <b>štít -u/-a</b>         | peak, shield,<br>gable   |
| <b>svetlo</b>             | light                     | <b>štŕnásť, -sty</b>      | fourteen(th)             |
| <b>svetlý/-ejší</b>       | light/er-coloured         | <b>štrngnúť pf</b>        | to clink glasses         |
| <b>svietiť</b>            | to shine                  | <b>študent, -ka</b>       | student                  |
| <b>svieži</b>             | fresh                     | <b>študovať/</b>          | to study                 |
| <b>svoj</b>               | one's own                 | <b>študujem</b>           |                          |
| <b>symbol -u</b>          | symbol                    | <b>štvorstý</b>           | four-hundredth           |
| <b>syn, pl. synovia</b>   | son                       | <b>štvrť</b>              | quarter                  |
| <b>syr -a</b>             | cheese                    | <b>štvrťhodina</b>        | quarter of an<br>hour    |
| <b>šach -u/šachy pl.</b>  | chess                     | <b>štvrtok -tka</b>       | Thursday                 |
| <b>šalát -u</b>           | salad                     | <b>štvrty</b>             | fourth                   |
| <b>šál -u</b>             | scarf                     | <b>štyri – štyroch</b>    | four                     |
| <b>šálka</b>              | cup                       | <b>štyridsať,</b>         | forty, -ieth             |
| <b>šampón -u</b>          | shampoo                   | <b>štyridsiaty</b>        |                          |
| <b>šaty – šiat f. pl.</b> | clothes, woman's<br>dress | <b>štyristo, štvorstý</b> | four hundred,<br>-th     |
| <b>šedivý</b>             | grey                      | <b>šunka</b>              | ham                      |
| <b>šest'</b>              | six                       | <b>ta</b>                 | to there, <i>see tam</i> |
| <b>šesťdesiat, -ty</b>    | sixty, -ieth              | <b>ťa</b>                 | you, <i>see ty</i>       |
| <b>šesťnásť, -sty</b>     | sixteen(th)               | <b>tá</b>                 | that, <i>see ten</i>     |
| <b>šestročný</b>          | 6-year-old                | <b>tabak -u</b>           | tobacco                  |
| <b>šiel</b>               | went, <i>see íst'</i>     | <b>tabul'a -le</b>        | plaque, tablet           |
| <b>šiesty</b>             | sixth                     | <b>ťahať</b>              | to pull, tug             |
| <b>široký/širší</b>       | wide/r                    | <b>tak</b>                | so, about                |
| <b>šíry</b>               | wide open                 | <b>tak d'alej</b>         | so on                    |
| <b>škaredý</b>            | ugly                      | <b>tak veľ'a</b>          | so many                  |
| <b>škoda</b>              | a pity                    | <b>takmer</b>             | almost                   |
| <b>škola</b>              | school                    | <b>takto</b>              | this way, like<br>this   |
| <b>školský rok</b>        | school year               |                           |                          |
| <b>Škótsko</b>            | Scotland                  |                           |                          |
| <b>šla, šli</b>           | went, <i>see íst'</i>     |                           |                          |

|                              |  |                           |                           |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>taký</b>                  | so + <i>adj.</i> , such,<br>this kind of | <b>telo</b>               | body                      |
| <b>taký istý</b>             | the same (kind<br>of)                    | <b>temer</b>              | almost                    |
| <b>takýto</b>                | this kind of,<br>such                    | <b>ten, tá, to</b>        | that                      |
| <b>takže</b>                 | so that, so . . .                        | <b>tenis -u</b>           | tennis                    |
| <b>talent -u</b>             | talent                                   | <b>tenký/tenší</b>        | thin/ner                  |
| <b>Talian, Talianka</b>      | an Italian                               | <b>tento, táto, toto</b>  | this                      |
| <b>taliančina</b>            | Italian language                         | <b>tentoraz</b>           | this time                 |
| <b>Taliánsko</b>             | Italy                                    | <b>Teplice -íč f. pl.</b> | Trenčianske<br>Teplice    |
| <b>taliánsky, -y</b>         | Italian                                  | <b>teplo</b>              | warm(th)                  |
| <b>tam</b>                   | there                                    | <b>teplý/-ejší</b>        | warm/er                   |
| <b>tamten, tamtá,</b>        | that                                     | <b>teraz</b>              | now                       |
| <b>tamto</b>                 |  | <b>teší ma</b>            | pleased to meet<br>you    |
| <b>tanier -a</b>             | plate                                    | <b>tešiť &gt; po-</b>     | to please                 |
| <b>taška</b>                 | bag                                      | <b>tešiť sa na</b>        | to look forward<br>to     |
| <b>tatarská omáčka</b>       | Tartar sauce                             | <b>téma</b>               | theme                     |
| <b>tátó</b>                  | this, <i>see tento</i>                   | <b>teta</b>               | aunt                      |
| <b>tatranský adj.</b>        | Tatra                                    | <b>ti</b>                 | to/for you, <i>see ty</i> |
| <b>Tatry -tier f. pl.</b>    | the Tatras                               | <b>tí, tie</b>            | those, <i>see ten</i>     |
| <b>ťava</b>                  | camel                                    | <b>tielko</b>             | (under)vest               |
| <b>taxík -a</b>              | taxi                                     | <b>tiež</b>               | also (= likewise)         |
| <b>ťažkosť</b>               | difficulty                               | <b>tiež ne-</b>           | also not, not . . .       |
| <b>ťažký</b>                 | heavy, difficult                         |                           | either                    |
| <b>ťažší</b>                 | heavier, more<br>difficult               | <b>ticho!</b>             | quiet!                    |
| <b>teba, tebe,</b>           | you, <i>see ty</i>                       | <b>tichý</b>              | quiet                     |
| <b>tebou</b>                 |  | <b>tisíc, -i</b>          | thousand, -th             |
| <b>teda</b>                  | then (= in that<br>case)                 | <b>tma</b>                | darkness, dark            |
| <b>tej(to)</b>               | <i>see ten(to)</i>                       | <b>tmavý/-ší</b>          | dark(er)                  |
| <b>tel'a -at'a, pl. -atá</b> | calf                                     | <b>to</b>                 | that, <i>see ten</i>      |
| <b>tel'ací adj.</b>          | veal                                     | <b>to, že</b>             | the fact that             |
| <b>tel'acie (mäso)</b>       | veal                                     | <b>toho/tohto,</b>        | <i>see ten(to)</i>        |
| <b>telefonovať</b>           | to telephone                             | <b>tomu(to),</b>          |                           |
| > za-                        |  | <b>tom(to)</b>            |                           |
| <b>telefón -u</b>            | telephone                                | <b>toľko!</b>             | so much/many!             |
| <b>pri -e</b>                | speaking                                 | <b>topánky -nok</b>       | shoes                     |
| <b>telefónne číslo</b>       | phone number                             | <i>f. pl.</i>             |                           |
| <b>televízia</b>             | television                               | <b>Topoľčany</b>          | Topoľčany                 |
| <b>televízor -a</b>          | TV set                                   | <b>-ian m. pl.</b>        |                           |
|                              |  | <b>totiž</b>              | that's to say, you<br>see |

|                                  |                      |  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| <b>tou</b>                       | that, <i>see ten</i> | <b>tých(to) tým(to)</b> , <i>see ten(to)</i> |
| <b>traja</b>                     | three (male)         | <b>tými(to)</b>                              |
| <b>tráva</b>                     | grass                | <b>tykať si</b> to say 'ty'                  |
| <b>treba</b>                     | it's necessary       | <b>typický</b> typical                       |
| <b>Trenčín -a</b>                | Trenčín              | <b>týždeň -dňa</b> week                      |
| <b>trenírky -rok f. pl.</b>      | boxer shorts         | <b>u + gen.</b> at ('s house)                |
| <b>tretí</b>                     | third                | <b>ubytovanie</b> accommodation              |
| <b>trh -u</b>                    | market               | <b>učebnica</b> textbook                     |
| <b>na trhu</b>                   | at the market        | <b>učesať pf</b> to comb, <i>see česať</i>   |
| <b>tri</b>                       | three                | <b>učiť &gt; na-</b> to teach                |
| <b>tričko</b>                    | T-shirt              | <b>učiť sa</b> to study                      |
| <b>tridsať, tridsiaty</b>        | thirty, -ieth        | <b>učiť sa &gt; na-</b> to learn             |
| <b>trieda</b>                    | class                | <b>učiteľ, -ka</b> teacher                   |
| <b>trikrát</b>                   | three times          | <b>údeniny -ín f. pl.</b> smoked meats       |
| <b>trinásť, -sty</b>             | thirteen(th)         | <b>údolie</b> valley                         |
| <b>tristo, trojstý</b>           | three hundred, -th   | <b>uhorka, adj.</b> cucumber                 |
| <b>trisťvrte na</b>              | a quarter to         | <b>uhorkový</b>                              |
| <b>troch</b>                     | <i>see tri</i>       | <b>Uhorsko</b> (old) Hungary                 |
| <b>trochu/trocha</b>             | a little             | <b>uhorský adj.</b> (old) Hungarian          |
| <b>trojstý</b>                   | three-hundredth      | <b>uchô, pl. uši</b> ear                     |
| <b>trom, troma/i</b>             | <i>see tri</i>       | <b>– uší</b>                                 |
| <b>trošku/troška</b>             | a little             | <b>ujde to</b> it's OK, not bad              |
| <b>trpieť</b>                    | to suffer            | <b>ujſť/ujde, uſiel</b> to get away,         |
| <b>trvanlivý</b>                 | durable              | <b>uſiel mi ...</b> I missed ...             |
| <b>trvať</b>                     | to last              | <b>uko, ujko</b> maternal uncle              |
| <b>tu</b>                        | here                 | <b>ukázať/ukážem</b> to show                 |
| <b>tú(to)</b>                    | <i>see ten(to)</i>   | <b>&lt; ukazovať</b>                         |
| <b>tučný</b>                     | fat                  | <b>ulica</b> street                          |
| <b>tuhý</b>                      | hard                 | <b>ulička</b> little street                  |
| <b>tuná</b>                      | over here            | <b>úloha</b> task, role                      |
| <b>tunel -a, loc. -i, pl. -y</b> | tunnel               | <b>umelec -ica, umelkyňa</b> artist          |
| <b>turista, -ka</b>              | tourist              | <b>umenie</b> art                            |
| <b>turistický adj.</b>           | tourist              | <b>umrieť/umrie</b> to die                   |
| <b>tušíť</b>                     | to guess, sense      | <b>&lt; umierať</b>                          |
| <b>túra</b>                      | hike                 | <b>umyť/umyjem</b> to wash                   |
| <b>tvár -e/-i f.</b>             | face                 | <b>&lt; umývat (sa)</b>                      |
| <b>voj</b>                       | your                 | <b>umývadlo</b> washbasin, sink              |
| <b>ty – ťa/teba</b>              | you sg               | <b>umývať</b> to wash, <i>see umyť</i>       |

|                           |                                      |                        |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>unavený</b>            | tired                                | <b>váš, vaša, vaše</b> | your                     |
| <b>univerzita</b>         | university                           | <b>vážený</b>          | respected, dear          |
| <b>na univerzite</b>      | at university                        | <b>vážne</b>           | seriously                |
| <b>univerzitný adj.</b>   | university                           | <b>vážny</b>           | serious                  |
| <b>úplne</b>              | entirely,<br>completely              | <b>väčší</b>           | bigger                   |
| <b>upratovať/upracem</b>  | to tidy                              | <b>väčinou</b>         | mostly                   |
| <b>&lt; upratovať</b>     |                                      | <b>väčšmi</b>          | more                     |
| <b>upratovanie</b>        | tidying-up                           | <b>včera</b>           | yesterday                |
| <b>upratovať</b>          | to tidy, <i>see</i>                  | <b>včerajší</b>        | yesterday's              |
|                           | <b>upratovať</b>                     | <b>vd'aka</b>          | thanks                   |
| <b>upraviť</b>            | to put in order                      | <b>vec -i f.</b>       | thing                    |
| <b>&lt; upravovať</b>     |                                      | <b>večer -a</b>        | evening                  |
| <b>určite</b>             | definitely                           | <b>večera -e</b>       | dinner, supper           |
| <b>urobiť pf of</b>       | to do, make                          | <b>večeram &gt;</b>    |                          |
| <b>robiť</b>              |                                      | <b>navečerať sa</b>    | to have supper           |
| <b>úschovňa</b>           | left-luggage office                  | <b>veda</b>            | science                  |
| <b>úspech -u</b>          | success                              | <b>vedecký</b>         | scientific,              |
| <b>ústa – úst n. pl.</b>  | mouth                                | <b>vedia</b>           | scholarly                |
| <b>ústav -u</b>           | institute                            | <b>vediem</b>          | they know, <i>see</i>    |
| <b>ústredné kúrenie</b>   | central<br>heating                   | <b>vedieť/viem ...</b> | <b>vedieť</b>            |
| <b>uši -í pl. of ucho</b> | ears                                 | <b>vedia</b>           | I lead, <i>see viesť</i> |
| <b>utorok -rka</b>        | Tuesday                              | <b>vedľ'a + gen.</b>   | to know, to              |
| <b>uvariť &lt; variť</b>  | to cook                              | <b>vedúci, -a</b>      | know how                 |
| <b>uvidieť pf</b>         | to see/catch<br>sight of             | <b>ved'</b>            | next to                  |
| <b>úzky</b>               | narrow                               | <b>vegetarián, -ka</b> | manager(ess)             |
| <b>už</b>                 | now, already                         | <b>vel'a</b>           | after all                |
| <b>užší</b>               | narrower                             | <b>Veľká Británia</b>  | a vegetarian             |
| <b>v, vo + loc.</b>       | in                                   | <b>Veľká Fatra</b>     | a lot                    |
| <b>v, vo + acc.</b>       | on (day of<br>week), into            | <b>veľký, väčší</b>    | Great Britain            |
| <b>Váh -u</b>             | river Váh                            | <b>veľmi</b>           | the High Fatra           |
| <b>vajíčko</b>            | egg                                  | <b>veľvyslanectvo</b>  | big, bigger              |
| <b>vám</b>                | to/for you, <i>see</i><br><b>vy</b>  | <b>veselý</b>          | very                     |
| <b>vami</b>               | (by) you, <i>see vy</i>              | <b>veterno</b>         | embassy                  |
| <b>varený</b>             | boiled                               | <b>vetra</b>           | happy, merry             |
| <b>variť &gt; u-</b>      | to cook                              | <b>veziem</b>          | windy                    |
| <b>vás</b>                | you, of you, <i>see</i><br><b>vy</b> | <b>vezmem</b>          | <i>see vietor</i>        |
|                           |                                      | <b>vezmi(te) si!</b>   | I convey, <i>see</i>     |
|                           |                                      |                        | <b>viezť</b>             |
|                           |                                      |                        | I'll take <i>see</i>     |
|                           |                                      |                        | <b>vziať</b>             |
|                           |                                      |                        | take!, <i>see vziať</i>  |

|   |   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| <b>veža, gen. pl.</b>                         | tower                                   | <b>vlak -u</b>   | train                                  |
| <b>veží</b>                                   |   | <b>vlani</b>   | last year                              |
| <b>vchádzať</b>                               | to enter, <i>see</i><br><b>vojsť</b>    | <b>vlastne</b>   | actually, in fact                      |
| <b>vchod -u</b>                               | entrance                                | <b>vlastný</b>   | own                                    |
| <b>viac, viacej</b>                           | more                                    | <b>vlasy -ov m. pl.</b>  | hair                                   |
| <b>viac-menej</b>                             | more or less                            | <b>vľavo</b>   | on the left                            |
| <b>viackrát</b>                               | several times                           | <b>vlek -u</b>   | ski-lift                               |
| <b>Vianoce -noc f. pl.</b>                    | Christmas                               | <b>vlnený</b>  | woollen                                |
| <b>vianočný adj.</b>                          | Christmas                               | <b>vnučka</b>  | granddaughter                          |
| <b>vidavat' freq.</b>                         | to see                                  | <b>vnuk</b>  | grandson                               |
| <b>vidiek -a</b>                              | the country                             | <b>vo = v</b>  | in                                     |
| <b>vidieť/vidím</b>                           | to see                                  | <b>voda</b>  | water                                  |
| <b>vidieť</b>                                 | it's visible, you<br>can see            | <b>vodiť</b>   | to lead, <i>see</i><br><b>viesť</b>    |
| <b>vidlička</b>                               | fork                                    | <b>vojna</b>   | war                                    |
| <b>vidno</b>                                  | it's visible, you<br>can see            | <b>vojst'/vojdem,</b><br><b>vošiel &lt;</b><br><b>vchádzať</b> | to enter                               |
| <b>Viedeň -dne f.</b>                         | Vienna                                  | <b>vokáň -a</b>  | circumflex                             |
| <b>viedol</b>                                 | led, <i>see</i> <b>viesť</b>            | <b>volat' &gt; za-</b>   | to call, phone                         |
| <b>viem</b>                                   | I know, <i>see</i><br><b>vedieť</b>     | <b>volat' sa</b>   | to be called                           |
| <b>viesť/vediem,</b><br><b>viedol + vodil</b> | to lead                                 | <b>volejbal -u</b>   | volleyball                             |
| <b>viesť auto</b>                             | to drive a car                          | <b>volný</b>   | free, vacant                           |
| <b>vieš</b>                                   | you know, <i>see</i><br><b>vedieť</b>   | <b>von</b>   | out (motion out)                       |
| <b>vietor – vetra</b>                         | wind                                    | <b>vonku</b>   | outside                                |
| <b>viezol</b>                                 | drove, took, <i>see</i><br><b>viesť</b> | <b>vopred</b>  | in advance                             |
| <b>viezť/veziem,</b><br><b>viezol + vozíť</b> | to convey, take                         | <b>vozíť</b>   | to convey, <i>see</i><br><b>viesť</b>  |
| <b>víkend -u</b>                              | weekend                                 | <b>vôbec</b>   | at all                                 |
| <b>vila</b>                                   | villa                                   | <b>vôbec ne-</b>   | not at all                             |
| <b>vináreň -rne f.</b>                        | winebar                                 | <b>vpravo</b>  | on the right                           |
| <b>vínečko</b>                                | (nice) wine                             | <b>vracat' (sa)</b>  | to return, <i>see</i><br><b>vrátiť</b> |
| <b>víno</b>                                   | wine                                    | <b>vraj</b>  | apparently, they<br>say                |
| <b>visieť</b>                                 | to hang                                 | <b>vrátane + gen.</b>  | including                              |
| <b>vítam!</b>                                 | welcome!                                | <b>vrátiť &lt; vracat'/</b><br><b>vraciam</b>                  | to return, give<br>back                |
| <b>vítat' &gt; pri-u-</b>                     | to welcome                              | <b>vrátiť sa &lt;</b><br><b>vracat' sa</b>                     | to return, go/<br>come back            |
| <b>vizitka</b>                                | business card                           | <b>vrátnik</b>   | porter                                 |
|   |   | <b>vravieť</b>   | to say                                 |

|   |                              |  |                                  |
|---|------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| <b>vŕba</b>   | willow                       | <b>vypíť/vypijem</b>                                   | to drink, <i>pf of piť</i>       |
| <b>vrecko, adj.</b>   | pocket                       | <b>vypíť si pf</b>                                     | to have a drink                  |
| <b>vreckový</b>   |                              | <b>vyprážaný</b>                                       | fried                            |
| <b>vstať/vstanem</b>  | to get up                    | <b>vyrušovať</b>                                       | to disturb                       |
| <b>&lt; vstávať</b>   |                              | <b>vyskúšať si pf</b>                                  | to try on/out                    |
| <b>vstávať</b>  | to get up, <i>see vstať</i>  | <b>výslovnosť</b>                                      | pronunciation                    |
| <b>vstup -u</b>   | entry                        | <b>vysoká škola</b>                                    | = university                     |
| <b>však</b>   | however; isn't it? agree?    | <b>vysoko</b>  | high up                          |
| <b>všetci, všetky,</b><br><i>sg všetok</i>                  | all                          | <b>Vysoké Tatry</b><br>– <b>Vysokých Tatier f. pl.</b> | the High Tatras                  |
| <b>všetko</b>   | everything                   | <b>vysoký/vyšší</b>                                    | high(er)                         |
| <b>vták</b>   | bird                         | <b>vystúpiť</b><br>< <b>vystupovať</b>                 | to perform, to step out          |
| <b>vtedy</b>  | then, at that time           | <b>vyše</b>  | more than                        |
| <b>vy – vás</b>   | you <i>pl./sg formal</i>     | <b>vyšší</b>   | higher, <i>see vysoký</i>        |
| <b>výber -u</b>   | selection                    | <b>výťah -u</b>  | lift, elevator                   |
| <b>vyberať</b>  | to choose, <i>see vybrať</i> | <b>vytvoriť</b><br>< <b>vytvárať</b>                   | to create                        |
| <b>vyberte si!</b>  | choose!, <i>see vybrať</i>   | <b>vývar -u</b>  | consommé                         |
| <b>výborný</b>  | excellent                    | <b>vyzerať</b>   | to look<br>(appearance)          |
| <b>vybrať/vyberie</b><br>< <b>vyberať</b>                   | to choose                    | <b>vyzliecť/vyzliekol</b><br>< <b>vyzliekať</b>        | to take off<br>(clothes)         |
| <b>vydať &lt; vydávať</b>                                   | to publish                   | <b>vyzliekať</b>                                       | to take off, <i>see vyzliecť</i> |
| <b>výhľad na</b><br>+ acc.                                  | view of                      | <b>vzdelávanie</b>                                     | educating,<br>training           |
| <b>vyhrať</b><br>< <b>vyhrávať</b>                          | to win                       | <b>vzduch -u</b>                                       | air                              |
| <b>východ -u, na -e</b>                                     | exit; east, in the east      | <b>vziať/vezmem,</b><br><b>vzal &lt; brať</b>          | to take                          |
| <b>východný</b>   | eastern                      | <b>vždy, vždycky</b>                                   | always                           |
| <b>vyjsť/vyjdem,</b><br><b>vyšiel</b><br>< <b>vychádzat</b> | to go out                    | <b>WC /vétsé/</b>                                      | WC, <i>see also záchod</i>       |
| <b>vykať si</b>   | to say 'vy'                  | <b>z, zo + gen.</b>                                    | out of, from                     |
| <b>výlet -u</b>   | excursion, trip              | <b>za + ins.</b>                                       | behind, beyond                   |
| <b>vynikajúci</b>   | marvellous                   | <b>za + acc.</b>                                       | for (e.g.<br>payment)            |
| <b>výnimka</b>  | exception                    | <b>zabalíť &lt;</b><br><b>balíť</b>                    | to wrap                          |
| <b>vypadnúť pf</b>  | to fall out                  |  |                                  |

|                         |                                  |                           |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>zabudnúť</b>         | to forget                        | <b>zapôsobiť &lt;</b>     | to influence         |
| < <b>zabúdať</b>        |                                  | <b>pôsobiť</b>            |                      |
| <b>zabudnutý</b>        | forgotten                        | <b>zasa, zase</b>         | again                |
| <b>začať/začnem</b>     | to begin                         | <b>zaspať/zaspí pf</b>    | to fall asleep       |
| < <b>začínať</b>        |                                  | <b>zastaviť &lt;</b>      | to stop              |
| <b>začiatočník,</b>     | beginner                         | <b>zastavovať (sa)</b>    |                      |
| <b>-nička</b>           |                                  | <b>zastávka</b>           | bus/tram stop        |
| <b>začiatok -tku</b>    | beginning                        | <b>zatiahnuto</b>         | overcast             |
| <b>začínať</b>          | to begin, <i>see</i>             | <b>zatial'</b>            | so far,<br>meanwhile |
|                         | <b>začať</b>                     |                           |                      |
| <b>zadný</b>            | back                             | <b>zatial' čo</b>         | while                |
| <b>zadok -dku</b>       | backside                         | <b>zatvárať</b>           | to close, <i>see</i> |
| <b>záhrada</b>          | garden                           |                           | <b>zavtoriť</b>      |
| <b>zahraničie</b>       | abroad                           | <b>zatvorený</b>          | closed               |
| <b>zahrnutý</b>         | included                         | <b>zatvoriť</b>           | to close, shut       |
| <b>záchod -a/-u</b>     | toilet, WC                       | < <b>zatvárať</b>         |                      |
| <b>zájsť/zájdem,</b>    | to go (call in                   | <b>záujem -jmu o</b>      | interest in          |
| <b>zašiel pf</b>        | somewhere),<br>set (of sun etc.) | + acc. (!)                |                      |
| <b>zajtra</b>           | tomorrow                         | <b>zaujímať</b>           | to interest          |
| <b>zajtrajší adj.</b>   | tomorrow's                       | <b>zaujímavý</b>          | interesting          |
| <b>zákaz -u</b>         | prohibition                      | <b>zavčasu</b>            | early                |
| <b>zakázaný</b>         | forbidden                        | <b>zavolať pf of</b>      | to call, phone       |
| <b>zakázať/zakáže</b>   | to forbid                        | <b>volat'</b>             |                      |
| < <b>zakazovať</b>      |                                  | <b>zavše</b>              | from time to<br>time |
| <b>zakaždým</b>         | each/every time                  | <b>zazvonit' &lt;</b>     | to ring              |
| <b>zákusok -ska</b>     | desert, cake                     | <b>zvonit'</b>            |                      |
| <b>založiť</b>          | to found                         | <b>zbierka</b>            | collection           |
| < <b>zakladat'</b>      |                                  | <b>zdať sa</b>            | to seem              |
| <b>zaľúbený</b>         | in love                          | <b>zdravie</b>            | health               |
| <b>zamestnanie</b>      | employment                       | <b>na zdravie</b>         | cheers!              |
| <b>zámock -mku</b>      | chateau, castle                  | <b>zelenina, adj.</b>     | vegetable            |
| <b>západ -u</b>         | west, setting (of<br>sun)        | -ový                      |                      |
| <b>na západe</b>        | in the west                      | <b>zelený</b>             | green                |
| <b>západný</b>          | western                          | <b>zemiak -a, adj.</b>    | potato               |
| <b>zaparkovať &lt;</b>  | to park                          | -ový                      |                      |
| <b>parkovať</b>         |                                  | <b>zima</b>               | winter, cold         |
| <b>zapísat'/zapíšem</b> | to note down                     | <b>zimný adj.</b>         | winter               |
| < <b>zapisovať</b>      |                                  | <b>zísť/zídem, zišiel</b> | to go down           |
| <b>zaplatiť &lt;</b>    | to pay                           | < <b>schádzat'</b>        |                      |
| <b>platíť</b>           |                                  | <b>zísť sa &lt;</b>       | to meet              |
|                         |                                  | <b>schádzat' sa</b>       |                      |

|  |                                   |                        |                               |
|--|-----------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>zísť sa pf</b>  | to come in handy                  | <b>zostáť/zostanem</b> | to stay                       |
| <b>zistíť &lt; zisťovať</b>  | to find out, ascertain            | < <b>zostávať</b>      |                               |
| <b>zjest/zjem,</b><br><b>zjedol &lt; jest'</b>                               | to eat up                         | <b>zošít -a/-u</b>     | exercise book                 |
| <b>zlatý</b>   | golden                            | <b>zoznámiť sa pf</b>  | to get to know                |
| <b>zľava</b>   | reduction                         | <b>zrazu</b>           | suddenly, all at once         |
| <b>zlomiť pf</b>   | to break                          | <b>zrkadlo, adj.</b>   | mirror                        |
| <b>zle</b>   | badly                             | -ový                   |                               |
| <b>zložitý</b>   | complicated                       | <b>zrúcaniny -ín</b>   | ruins                         |
| <b>zly</b>   | bad                               | <b>f. pl.</b>          |                               |
| <b>zmeniť &lt; meniť</b>   | to change                         | <b>zub -a</b>          | tooth                         |
| <b>zmluva</b>  | treaty                            | <b>zubná pasta</b>     | toothpaste                    |
| <b>zmrzlina</b>  | ice-cream                         | <b>zvoniť &gt; za-</b> | to ring                       |
| <b>znamenať</b>  | to mean                           | <b>zvyčajne</b>        | usually                       |
| <b>známka</b>  | stamp                             | <b>že</b>              | that                          |
| <b>zo = z</b>  | out of                            | <b>že?</b>             | isn't it so?<br>(aren't you?) |
| <b>zo</b>  | approximately                     | <b>želať (si)</b>      | to wish                       |
| <b>zobrať/zoberiem</b><br><b>&lt; brať</b>                                   | to take                           | <b>železničná</b>      | railway station               |
| <b>zobrať sa pf</b>  | to get married                    | <b>stanica</b>         |                               |
| <b>zobudiť sa &lt;</b><br><b>zobúdzať sa</b>                                 | to wake up                        | <b>žemľa, gen.pl.</b>  | round roll                    |
| <b>zobuť/zobujem</b><br><b>&lt; zobúvať si</b>                               | to take off<br>(shoes)            | <b>žemiel'</b>         |                               |
| <b>zobúvať</b>   | to take off, see<br><b>zobut'</b> | <b>žena</b>            | woman, wife                   |
| <b>zomlieť/</b><br><b>zomeliem,</b><br><b>zomlel</b><br><b>&lt; zomieľať</b> | to grind                          | <b>ženatý</b>          | married                       |
| <b>zopár</b>   | a couple                          | <b>žiadať &gt; po-</b> | to request                    |
|  |                                   | <b>žiadny adj.</b>     | no                            |
|  |                                   | <b>žiačak, žiačka</b>  | pupil                         |
|  |                                   | <b>žiaľ</b>            | unfortunately                 |
|  |                                   | <b>žiaľbohu</b>        | unfortunately                 |
|  |                                   | <b>žiletka</b>         | razor-blade                   |
|  |                                   | <b>život -a</b>        | life                          |
|  |                                   | <b>žiť/žijem</b>       | to live                       |
|  |                                   | <b>žltý</b>            | yellow                        |

# English–Slovak glossary

This glossary is for use with the exercises.

|                          |                                |                        |                                 |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| about (theme)            | <b>o + loc.</b>                | anything               | <b>niečo, (not) nič</b>         |
| about (over,<br>through) | <b>po + loc.</b>               | (something)            | <b>niekde, (not)</b>            |
| about (approx.)          | <b>asi</b>                     | anywhere               | <b>nikde</b>                    |
| across                   | <b>cez + acc.</b>              | (somewhere)            | <b>niekam, (not)</b>            |
| address                  | <b>adresa</b>                  | anywhere, to           | <b>nikam</b>                    |
| advanced                 | <b>pokročilý</b>               | (somewhere)            |                                 |
| afraid, be               | <b>báť sa, mať<br/>strach</b>  | apple                  | <b>jablko</b>                   |
| agency, travel           | <b>cestovná<br/>kancelária</b> | are, you are           | <b>sme</b>                      |
| ages, for ages           | <b>dlho</b>                    | are, we are            | <b>sú</b>                       |
| ah                       | <b>aha</b>                     | are, they are          | <b>okolo + gen.</b>             |
| all (plural)             | <b>všetci, všetky</b>          | around                 | <b>prísť</b>                    |
| all (everything)         | <b>všetko</b>                  | arrive                 | <b>&lt; prichádzat</b>          |
| all (whole)              | <b>celý</b>                    | article                | <b>článok</b>                   |
| all day                  | <b>celý deň</b>                | at (person's<br>house) | <b>u + gen.</b>                 |
| also                     | <b>tiež, aj</b>                | at (o'clock)           | <b>o + loc.</b>                 |
| although                 | <b>hoci</b>                    | August                 | <b>august</b>                   |
| altogether               | <b>spolu</b>                   | back ( <i>adj.</i> )   | <b>zadný</b>                    |
| always                   | <b>vždy, vždycky</b>           | bad                    | <b>zlý</b>                      |
| am                       | <b>som, see byť</b>            | bag                    | <b>taška</b>                    |
| American                 | <b>Američan, -ka</b>           | banana                 | <b>banán</b>                    |
| American ( <i>adj.</i> ) | <b>americký</b>                | bathroom               | <b>kúpelňa</b>                  |
| and                      | <b>a</b>                       | be                     | <b>byť/som, si, je<br/>etc.</b> |
| angry, be                | <b>hnevať sa</b>               | be!                    | <b>bud'(te)!</b>                |
| another (one<br>more)    | <b>ešte, ešte jeden</b>        | beans                  | <b>fazuľka</b>                  |
| another (other)          | <b>iný</b>                     | beautiful              | <b>krásny</b>                   |
|                          |                                | bed                    | <b>posteľ</b>                   |

|                |                                     |               |  |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|--|
| bedroom        | <b>spálňa</b>                       | cat           | <b>mačka</b>   |
| beer           | <b>pivo</b>                         | central       | <b>stredný</b>                                       |
| begin          | <b>začať &lt; začínať</b>           | chair         | <b>stolička</b>                                      |
| beginner       | <b>začiatočník,</b><br><b>-ička</b> | change        | <b>meniť &gt; zmeniť</b><br>(sa)                     |
| behind         | <b>za + ins.</b>                    | cheap         | <b>lacný</b>   |
| better         | <b>lepší</b>                        | cheaper       | <b>lacnejší</b>                                      |
| better-quality | <b>kvalitnejší</b>                  | cheese        | <b>syr</b>   |
| between        | <b>medzi + ins.</b>                 | chicken       | <b>kurča</b>   |
| big            | <b>veľký</b>                        | child         | <b>dieťa</b>   |
| bigger         | <b>väčší</b>                        | children      | <b>deti</b>  |
| bit, a         | <b>trochu/trocha</b>                | choose        | <b>vybrať</b><br>< <b>vyberať</b>                    |
| black          | <b>čierny</b>                       |               |  |
| blouse         | <b>blúzka</b>                       | church        | <b>kostol</b>  |
| blue           | <b>modrý, belasý</b>                | cinema        | <b>kino</b>  |
| book           | <b>kniha</b>                        | clean         | <b>čistý</b>   |
| bottle         | <b>fľaška, fľaša</b>                | close         | <b>zatvoriť</b><br>< <b>zatvárať</b>                 |
| boy            | <b>chlapec</b>                      |               |  |
| bread          | <b>chlieb</b>                       | cloudy        | <b>oblačno,</b><br><b>zatiahnuto</b>                 |
| breakfast      | <b>raňajky</b>                      |               |  |
| bridge         | <b>most</b>                         | coat          | <b>kabát</b>   |
| briefcase      | <b>aktovka</b>                      | coffee        | <b>káva</b>  |
| brother        | <b>brat</b>                         | cold          | <b>chladno,</b><br><b>chladný,</b><br><b>studený</b> |
| brown          | <b>hnedý</b>                        |               |  |
| building       | <b>budova</b>                       |               |  |
| bus            | <b>autobus</b>                      | colleague     | <b>kolega, kolegynia</b>                             |
| but            | <b>ale</b>                          | come          | <b>prišť</b><br>< <b>prichádzat'</b>                 |
| butter         | <b>maslo</b>                        |               |  |
| button         | <b>gombík</b>                       | come in       | <b>ísť dalej</b>                                     |
| buy            | <b>kúpiť</b><br>< <b>kupovať</b>    | come in!      | <b>pod'(te) dalej!</b>                               |
| by             | = <i>ins. case</i>                  | concert       | <b>koncert</b>                                       |
| by now         | <b>už</b>                           | cook          | <b>variť &gt; uvarit'</b>                            |
| café           | <b>kaviareň</b>                     | corner (nook) | <b>roh, kút</b>                                      |
| call           | <b>voláť &gt; zavolať</b>           | correct       | <b>správny</b>                                       |
| call 'vy'      | <b>vykátať</b>                      | couch         | <b>gauč</b>  |
| can (possible) | <b>môcť</b>                         | could         | <b>mohol by</b>                                      |
| can (know how) | <b>vedieť</b>                       | couple of     | <b>zopár, páar</b>                                   |
| car            | <b>auto</b>                         | cross         | <b>prejsť</b><br>< <b>prechádzat'</b>                |
| carpet         | <b>koberec</b>                      | crown         | <b>koruna</b>  |
| carry          | <b>niesť, nosiť</b>                 | cup           | <b>šálka</b>   |
| castle         | <b>hrad, zámok</b>                  | cut           | <b>strih</b>   |

|                         |   |                        |   |
|-------------------------|---|------------------------|---|
| Czech                   | <b>český</b>                                  | feel, I feel           | <b>je mi</b>                                |
| day                     | <b>deň</b>                                    | few                    | <b>málo</b>                                 |
| day after<br>tomorrow   | <b>pozajtra</b>                               | field                  | <b>pole</b>                                 |
| dear                    | <b>drahý</b>                                  | film                   | <b>film</b>                                 |
| dearer                  | <b>drahší</b>                                 | find                   | <b>nájsť</b>                                |
| decagram                | <b>deka</b>                                   | fine                   | <b>dobre</b>                                |
| department store        | <b>obchodný dom</b>                           | first                  | <b>prvý</b>                                 |
| dinner (lunch)          | <b> obed</b>                                  | first, at              | <b>v prvej chvíli</b>                       |
| dinner (supper)         | <b>večera</b>                                 | fish                   | <b>ryba</b>                                 |
| dirty                   | <b>špinavý</b>                                | five                   | <b>päť</b>                                  |
| disco                   | <b>diskotéka</b>                              | flat                   | <b>byt</b>                                  |
| disturb                 | <b>vyrušovať</b>                              | fly                    | <b>letieť, lietať</b>                       |
| disturb (bother)        | <b>obťažovať</b>                              | for (purpose)          | <b>na + acc.</b>                            |
| do                      | <b>robiť &gt; urobiť</b>                      | for (time ahead)       | <b>na + acc.</b>                            |
| double room             | <b>dvojlôžková izba</b>                       | for (benefit of)       | <b>pre + acc.</b>                           |
| drink                   | <b>piť &gt; vypíť,</b><br>(noun) <b>pitie</b> | for (payment)          | <b>za + acc.</b>                            |
| drink up                | <b>vypíť</b>                                  | four                   | <b>štyri, štyria</b>                        |
| each other              | <b>sa, sám seba</b>                           | fourteen               | <b>štŕnásť</b>                              |
| eat                     | <b>jest &gt; zjest,</b><br><b>jedávať</b>     | frankfurter            | <b>párok</b>                                |
| egg                     | <b>vajíčko</b>                                | free                   | <b>voľný</b>                                |
| eight                   | <b>osem</b>                                   | freeze                 | <b>mrznúť</b>                               |
| eleven                  | <b>jedenásť</b>                               | it's freezing          | <b>mrzne</b>                                |
| England                 | <b>Anglicko</b>                               | Frenchman/<br>woman    | <b>Francúz, -ka</b>                         |
| English ( <i>adj.</i> ) | <b>anglický</b>                               | French ( <i>adj.</i> ) | <b>francúzsky</b>                           |
| English, in             | <b>po anglicky</b>                            | friend                 | <b>kamarát, -ka,</b><br><b>priateľ, -ka</b> |
| Englishman              | <b>Angličan</b>                               | from (away<br>from)    | <b>od + gen.</b>                            |
| Englishwoman            | <b>Angličanka</b>                             | from (person)          | <b>od + gen.</b>                            |
| especially              | <b>najmä</b>                                  | from (out of)          | <b>z, zo + gen.</b>                         |
| Europe                  | <b>Európa</b>                                 | front, in front of     | <b>pred + ins.</b>                          |
| even                    | <b>aj</b>                                     | garden                 | <b>záhrada</b>                              |
| even, not               | <b>ani ... ne-</b>                            | German, a              | <b>Nemec, Nemka</b>                         |
| evening                 | <b>večer</b>                                  | German ( <i>adj.</i> ) | <b>nemecký</b>                              |
| exactly                 | <b>presne</b>                                 | get                    | <b>dostať</b>                               |
| excuse me               | <b>prepáč(te)</b>                             |                        | <b>&lt; dostávať</b>                        |
| exercise book           | <b>zošít</b>                                  | get up                 | <b>vstať &lt; vstávať</b>                   |
| expensive               | <b>drahý</b>                                  | girl                   | <b>dievča</b>                               |
| fairly                  | <b>dosť</b>                                   | give                   | <b>dať &lt; dávať</b>                       |
| far                     | <b>d'aleko</b>                                | glass                  | <b>pohár, pohárik</b>                       |
| father                  | <b>otec</b>                                   |                        |   |

|                           |                                       |                         |  |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| go                        | <b>íšť, chodíť</b>                    | if (whether)            | <b>či</b>                              |
| go!                       | <b>chod' (te)!</b>                    | important               | <b>dôležitý</b>                        |
| go into                   | <b>vojšť</b><br><b>&lt; vchádzať</b>  | in                      | <b>v, vo + loc.</b>                    |
| go round                  | <b>obísť</b><br><b>&lt; obchádzať</b> | in front of<br>included | <b>pred + ins.</b><br><b>zahrnutý</b>  |
| go up to                  | <b>podísiť k</b>                      | interest (verb)         | <b>zaujímať</b>                        |
| good                      | <b>dobrý, dobre</b>                   | interest (noun)         | <b>záujem</b>                          |
| goodbye                   | <b>do videnia</b>                     | interested in, be       | <b>záujímať sa o</b>                   |
| group                     | <b>skupina</b>                        | into                    | <b>do + gen.</b>                       |
| guitar                    | <b>gitara</b>                         | invite                  | <b>pozvať</b>                          |
| half                      | <b>pol</b>                            | is                      | <b>je, see byť</b>                     |
| ham                       | <b>šunka</b>                          | Italian                 | <b>Talian, -ka</b>                     |
| have                      | <b>mať</b>                            | Italian ( <i>adj.</i> ) | <b>taliansky</b>                       |
| have!                     | <b>daj(te) si!</b>                    | jam                     | <b>džem</b>                            |
| have got<br>(= have)      | <b>mať</b>                            | January                 | <b>január</b>                          |
|                           |                                       | job                     | <b>miesto,</b><br><b>zamestnanie</b>   |
| heller                    | <b>halier</b>                         |                         |  |
| hello                     | <b>dobrý deň, ahoj</b>                | just                    | <b>práve, hned'</b>                    |
| help                      | <b>pomôcť</b><br><b>&lt; pomáhať</b>  | key                     | <b>kľúč</b>                            |
| her                       | <b>ju, jej</b>                        | kilogram                | <b>kilo</b>                            |
| her (possessive)          | <b>jej</b>                            | kitchen                 | <b>kuchyňa</b>                         |
| here                      | <b>tu</b>                             | know (person)           | <b>poznať</b>                          |
| his                       | <b>jeho</b>                           | know (fact)             | <b>vedieť</b>                          |
| home                      | <b>domov</b>                          | leave (go)              | <b>odísť</b>                           |
| home, at                  | <b>doma</b>                           | leave (behind)          | <b>&lt; odchádzať</b><br><b>nechať</b> |
| hot                       | <b>teplo, horúco</b>                  |                         | <b>&lt; nechávať</b>                   |
| hot ( <i>adj.</i> )       | <b>teplý, horúci</b>                  | left ( <i>adj.</i> )    | <b>ľavý</b>                            |
| hotel                     | <b>hotel</b>                          | left, on the left       | <b>vľavo</b>                           |
| hour                      | <b>hodina</b>                         | left, to the left       | <b>doľava</b>                          |
| house                     | <b>dom</b>                            | letter                  | <b>list</b>                            |
| how                       | <b>ako?</b>                           | library                 | <b>knižnica</b>                        |
| how are you?              | <b>ako sa máš?</b><br><b>máte?</b>    | lie down                | <b>lahnúť</b>                          |
| how many/much?            | <b>kolko?</b>                         | lie                     | <b>ležať</b>                           |
| hundred                   | <b>sto</b>                            | like (as)               | <b>ako</b>                             |
| Hungarian                 | <b>Maďar, -ka</b>                     | like                    | <b>mať rád/rada</b>                    |
| Hungarian ( <i>adj.</i> ) | <b>maďarský</b>                       | like – to please        | <b>páčiť sa</b>                        |
| I                         | <b>ja</b>                             | listen                  | <b>počúvať (si)</b>                    |
| ice cream                 | <b>zmrzlina</b>                       | litre                   | <b>liter</b>                           |
| if                        | <b>keby, ak</b>                       | little                  | <b>malý</b>                            |
|                           |                                       | live (reside)           | <b>bývať</b>                           |

|                       |  |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| live (be alive)       | <b>žiť</b>                                   | name, my              | <b>volám sa</b>             |
| long ( <i>adj.</i> )  | <b>dlhý</b>                                  | name's                |                             |
| long, for a long time | <b>dlho</b>                                  | name                  | <b>meno</b>                 |
| look (appearance)     | <b>vyzerat'</b>                              | need                  | <b>potrebovať</b>           |
| look!                 | <b>pozri(te) sa</b>                          | nervous               | <b>nervózny</b>             |
| lose                  | <b>stratíť &lt; strácať</b>                  | never                 | <b>nikdy</b>                |
| lot of                | <b>veľa</b>                                  | new                   | <b>nový</b>                 |
| lovely                | <b>krásny, pekný</b>                         | newspaper             | <b>noviny</b>               |
| lunch                 | <b> obed</b>                                 | next to               | <b>vedľa + gen.</b>         |
| lunch, have           | <b> obedovať</b>                             | nice ( <i>adj.</i> )  | <b>pekný</b>                |
| magazine              | <b>časopis</b>                               | nice, it's            | <b>je pekne</b>             |
| main                  | <b>hlavný</b>                                | night                 | <b>noc</b>                  |
| make                  | <b>robit' &gt; urobit'</b>                   | nine                  | <b>deväť</b>                |
| man                   | <b>muž, chlap</b>                            | no                    | <b>nie</b>                  |
| many                  | <b>vel'a, mnaho</b>                          | nobody                | <b>nikto</b>                |
| March                 | <b>marec</b>                                 | not                   | <b>ne-, nie</b>             |
| material              | <b>látka</b>                                 | note down             | <b>zapisovať &lt;</b>       |
| May                   | <b>máj</b>                                   | nothing               | <b>zapisovať (si)</b>       |
| me                    | <b>ma</b>                                    | novel                 | <b>nič</b>                  |
| me (to/for)           | <b>mi, mne</b>                               | now                   | <b>román</b>                |
| me (with)             | <b>mnou</b>                                  | nowhere               | <b>teraz, už</b>            |
| meet                  | <b>stretnúť sa</b><br><i>&lt; stretáť sa</i> | nowhere, to           | <b>nikde</b>                |
| meeting               | <b>schôdza</b>                               | nuisance, be a number | <b>nikam</b>                |
| midnight              | <b>polnoc</b>                                | o'clock               | <b>prekázať</b>             |
| milk                  | <b>mlieko</b>                                |                       | <b>číslo</b>                |
| mist                  | <b>hmila</b>                                 |                       | <b>hodina/hodiny/ hodín</b> |
| misty                 | <b>hmlisto</b>                               |                       |                             |
| modern                | <b>moderný</b>                               | October               | <b>október</b>              |
| moment                | <b>chvíľa</b>                                | often                 | <b>často</b>                |
| Monday                | <b>pondelok</b>                              | old                   | <b>starý</b>                |
| mostly                | <b>väčšinou</b>                              | older                 | <b>starší</b>               |
| mother                | <b>matka</b>                                 | omelette              | <b>omeleta</b>              |
| much (very much)      | <b>veľmi</b>                                 | on                    | <b>na + loc.</b>            |
| much (lot of)         | <b>vel'a, mnaho</b>                          | one                   | <b>jeden, jedna,</b>        |
| museum                | <b>múzeum</b>                                | onto                  | <b>jedno</b>                |
| mustard               | <b>horčica</b>                               | open                  | <b>na + acc.</b>            |
| my                    | <b>môj</b>                                   |                       | <b>otvorit'</b>             |
| name                  | <b>meno</b>                                  |                       | <i>&lt; otvárať</i>         |
|                       |  |                       | <b>naproti + dat.</b>       |
|                       |  |                       | <b>alebo</b>                |
|                       |  |                       | <b>pomaranč</b>             |
|                       |  |                       | <b>pôvod</b>                |

|                        |   |                        |                                   |
|------------------------|---|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| other                  | <b>iný</b>                              | promise                | <b>sľúbiť</b>                     |
| ought                  | <b>mal by</b>                           |                        | < sľubovať                        |
| our                    | <b>náš</b>                              | pupil                  | <b>žiaček, žiačka</b>             |
| out (place)            | <b>vonku</b>                            | put on (clothes)       | <b>obliecť &lt; obliekať (si)</b> |
| out (motion)           | <b>von</b>                              | put on (shoes)         | <b>obuť &lt; obúvať (si)</b>      |
| out of                 | <b>z, zo + gen.</b>                     | put on weight          | <b>stučniť pf</b>                 |
| outside                | <b>vonku</b>                            | quarter                | <b>štvrť</b>                      |
| own                    | <b>svoj, vlastný</b>                    | quarter to             | <b>trištvrté na</b>               |
| paper<br>(newspaper)   | <b>noviny</b>                           |                        | + acc.                            |
| park                   | <b>park</b>                             |                        | <b>rýchlo, rychle</b>             |
| part                   | <b>rozísť sa &lt;<br/>rozhádzat' sa</b> | quickly                | <b>rádio</b>                      |
| past, half past        | <b>pol + gen.</b>                       | radio                  | <b>pršať</b>                      |
| past, quarter<br>past  | <b>štvrť na + acc.</b>                  | rain (verb)            | <b>dážď</b>                       |
| peach                  | <b>broskyňa</b>                         | rain (noun)            | <b>čítať &gt; prečítať</b>        |
| people                 | <b>Ľudia</b>                            | read, to               | <b>spoznať</b>                    |
| Pepsi cola             | <b>pepsikola</b>                        | recognise              | < spoznávať                       |
| person                 | <b>človek, osoba</b>                    | red                    | <b>červený</b>                    |
| piece                  | <b>kus</b>                              | refectory              | <b>menza</b>                      |
| play, to               | <b>hrať (sa)</b>                        | remember               | <b>pamätať si +</b>               |
| please                 | <b>prosím</b>                           | remember               | <b>acc.</b>                       |
| please may I<br>have   | <b>prosím si</b>                        | (about)                | <b>pamätať sa na</b>              |
| pleased to meet<br>you | <b>teší ma</b>                          | republic               | + acc.                            |
| pocket                 | <b>vrecko</b>                           | restaurant             | <b>republika</b>                  |
| police                 | <b>polícia</b>                          | return (give<br>back)  | <b>reštaurácia</b>                |
| police station         | <b>policajná stanica</b>                | return (go back)       | <b>vrátiť &lt; vracať</b>         |
| political              | <b>politický</b>                        |                        | < vracať sa                       |
| politics               | <b>politika</b>                         | return ticket          | <b>spiatočný lístok</b>           |
| pork (adj.)            | <b>bravčový</b>                         | rice                   | <b>ryža</b>                       |
| pork                   | <b>bravčové mäso</b>                    | richer                 | <b>bohatší</b>                    |
| post office            | <b>pošta</b>                            | right (adj.)           | <b>pravý</b>                      |
| postcard               | <b>pohľadnica</b>                       | right, on the<br>right | <b>vpravo</b>                     |
| potato (adj.)          | <b>zemiacový</b>                        | right, to the<br>right | <b>doprava</b>                    |
| potatoes               | <b>zemiacky</b>                         |                        |                                   |
| Prague                 | <b>Praha</b>                            | river                  | <b>rieka</b>                      |
| prettiest              | <b>najkrajší</b>                        | roll                   | <b>rožok, žemľa</b>               |
| pretty                 | <b>pekný</b>                            | room                   | <b>izba, miestnosť</b>            |
| price                  | <b>cena</b>                             | round                  | <b>okolo + gen.</b>               |

|                        |  |                     |                                 |
|------------------------|--|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| round the corner       | <b>za rohom</b>                        | smaller             | <b>menší</b>                    |
| run                    | <b>bežať, behať</b>                    | smoke               | <b>fajčiť</b>                   |
| schnitzel              | <b>rezeň</b>                           | snow (noun)         | <b>sneh</b>                     |
| school                 | <b>škola</b>                           | snow (verb)         | <b>snežiť</b>                   |
| search                 | <b>hľadať</b>                          | so                  | <b>tak</b>                      |
| seat reservation       | <b>miestenka</b>                       | so that             | <b>aby</b>                      |
| see                    | <b>vidieť</b>                          | some                | <b>nejaký</b>                   |
| 'self' (object)        | <b>sa</b>                              | someone             | <b>niekto</b>                   |
| 'self' (to/for)        | <b>si</b>                              | someone<br>(object) | <b>niekoho</b>                  |
| sell                   | <b>predať</b><br><br>< <b>predávať</b> | sometimes           | <b>niekedy</b>                  |
| September              | <b>september</b>                       | somewhere           | <b>niekde</b>                   |
| seven                  | <b>sedem</b>                           | sorry!              | <b>prepáč(te)!</b>              |
| several                | <b>niekoľko</b>                        | sorry, be           | <b>prepáč(te)</b>               |
| she                    | <b>ona</b>                             | sorry, be           | <b>lutovať</b>                  |
| shine                  | <b>svietiť</b>                         | (sorrow)            |                                 |
| shirt                  | <b>košeľa</b>                          | soup                | <b>polievka</b>                 |
| short                  | <b>krátky</b>                          | speak to            | <b>hovoriť s</b>                |
| shorter                | <b>kratší</b>                          | square              | <b>námestie</b>                 |
| should have            | <b>mal</b>                             | stamp               | <b>známka</b>                   |
| shower                 | <b>sprcha</b>                          | station             | <b>stanica</b>                  |
| single room            | <b>jednolôžková izba</b>               | stop (halt)         | <b>zastaviť &lt; zastavovať</b> |
| single ticket          | <b>jednosmerný lístok</b>              | stop (cease)        | <b>(sa)<br/>prestať</b>         |
| sister                 | <b>sestra</b>                          |                     | <b>&lt; prestávať</b>           |
| sit                    | <b>siedieť</b>                         | strawberry          | <b>jahoda</b>                   |
| sit down               | <b>sadnúť si</b>                       | street              | <b>ulica</b>                    |
| situation              | <b>situácia</b>                        | student             | <b>študent, -ka</b>             |
| six                    | <b>šesť</b>                            | study               | <b>učiť sa,<br/>študovať</b>    |
| sixteen                | <b>šestnásť</b>                        |                     |                                 |
| size (number)          | <b>číslo</b>                           | stupid              | <b>hlúpy</b>                    |
| sleep                  | <b>spáť</b>                            | more stupid         | <b>hlúpejší</b>                 |
| sleeve                 | <b>rukáv</b>                           | sugar               | <b>cukor</b>                    |
| Slovak                 | <b>Slovák, Slovenka</b>                | suitcase            | <b>kufor</b>                    |
| Slovak ( <i>adj.</i> ) | <b>slovenský</b>                       | sun                 | <b>slnko</b>                    |
| Slovak, in             | <b>po slovensky</b>                    | supper              | <b>večera</b>                   |
| Slovak<br>(language)   | <b>slovenčina</b>                      | supper, have        | <b>večerať</b>                  |
|                        |  | sweater             | <b>sveter</b>                   |
| Slovakia               | <b>Slovensko</b>                       | swim                | <b>plávať</b>                   |
| small                  | <b>malý</b>                            | table               | <b>stôl</b>                     |

|                          |   |                           |  |
|--------------------------|---|---------------------------|--|
| take                     | <b>brať &gt; vziať,</b><br><b>zobrať (si)</b> | today<br>together         | dnes<br>spolu                            |
| take off (clothes)       | <b>vyzliecť &lt;</b><br><b>vyzliekať (si)</b> | tomato                    | <b>paradajka</b>                         |
| take off (shoes)         | <b>zobúť &lt;</b><br><b>zobúvať (si)</b>      | tomorrow                  | <b>zajtra</b>                            |
|                          |   | too                       | <b>priveľmi, príliš,</b><br><b>pri-</b>  |
| talk                     | <b>hovoriť,</b><br><b>rozprávať</b>           | town                      | <b>mesto</b>                             |
| tea                      | <b>čaj</b>                                    | train                     | <b>vlak</b>                              |
| teach                    | <b>učiť</b>                                   | translate                 | <b>preložiť</b><br><b>&lt; prekladať</b> |
| teacher                  | <b>učiteľ, -ka</b>                            | travel (verb)             | <b>cestovať</b>                          |
| television               | <b>televízia</b>                              | travel agency             | <b>cestovná</b>                          |
| ten                      | <b>desať</b>                                  |                           | <b>kancelária</b>                        |
| than                     | <b>ako, než</b>                               | trousers                  | <b>nohavice</b>                          |
| thank                    | <b>d'akovat'</b><br><b>&gt; pod'akovat'</b>   | true, it is               | <b>je pravda</b>                         |
| thank you                | <b>d'akujem (vám)</b>                         | twelve                    | <b>dvanásť</b>                           |
| thank you very<br>much   | <b>d'akujem pekne</b>                         | twenty                    | <b>dvadsať</b>                           |
|                          |   | two                       | <b>dva, dve, dvaja</b>                   |
| that                     | <b>ten, tá, to</b>                            | ugly                      | <b>škaredý, ošklivý</b>                  |
| theatre                  | <b>divadlo</b>                                | umm                       | <b>ehm</b>                               |
| their                    | <b>ich</b>                                    | uncle                     | <b>strýko, strýc,</b><br><b>ujko</b>     |
| them (object)            | <b>ich</b>                                    | understand                | <b>rozumieť</b>                          |
| them (to/for)            | <b>im</b>                                     | us                        | <b>nás</b>                               |
| then (next)              | <b>potom</b>                                  | us (to/for)               | <b>nám</b>                               |
| then (at that<br>time)   | <b>vtedy</b>                                  | usually                   | <b>zvyčajne</b>                          |
| these                    | <b>títo, tieto</b>                            | vegetable ( <i>adj.</i> ) | <b>zeleninový</b>                        |
| they                     | <b>oni, ony</b>                               | vegetable(s)              | <b>zelenina</b>                          |
| thousand                 | <b>tisíc</b>                                  | very                      | <b>veľmi</b>                             |
| three                    | <b>tri, traja</b>                             | very much                 | <b>veľmi</b>                             |
| ticket                   | <b>listok</b>                                 | wait                      | <b>čakať &gt; počkať</b>                 |
| tidy up                  | <b>upratovať</b>                              | want                      | <b>chcieť/chcem</b>                      |
| time                     | <b>čas</b>                                    | warm                      | <b>teplo</b>                             |
| time, for a long<br>time | <b>dlho</b>                                   | warm ( <i>adj.</i> )      | <b>teplý</b>                             |
|                          |   | warmer                    | <b>teplejší</b>                          |
| to (towards)             | <b>k, ku + dat.</b>                           | wash                      | <b>umývať (si)</b>                       |
| to (person's<br>house)   | <b>k, ku + dat.</b>                           | water                     | <b>voda</b>                              |
| to (into)                | <b>do + gen.</b>                              | we                        | <b>my</b>                                |
| to (until)               | <b>do + gen.</b>                              | wear (have on)            | <b>mať</b>                               |
| to (in order to)         | <b>aby; or inf.</b>                           | wear (habitually)         | <b>nosiť</b>                             |
|                          |   | week                      | <b>týždeň</b>                            |
|                          |   | weight, put on            | <b>stučniť pf</b>                        |

|                  |                           |              |   |
|------------------|---------------------------|--------------|---|
| well             | <b>dobre</b>              | woman        | žena                                    |
| well, I'm        | <b>mám sa dobre</b>       | word         | slovo                                   |
| went             | <b>(i)šiel</b>            | work (verb)  | <b>robiť, pracovať</b>                  |
| what             | <b>čo</b>                 | work (noun)  | <b>robota, práca</b>                    |
| what time is it? | <b>koľko je hodín?</b>    | would        | by                                      |
| when?            | <b>kedy?</b>              | would like   | <b>želať, priať,</b><br><b>chcel by</b> |
| white            | <b>biely</b>              | write        | <b>písat &gt; napísat'</b>              |
| who?             | <b>kto?</b>               | year         | rok                                     |
| whom? (object)   | <b>koho?</b>              | yellow       | žltý                                    |
| why              | <b>prečo</b>              | yes          | áno, hej                                |
| will be          | <b>bude</b>               | yesterday    | včera                                   |
| wind             | <b>vietor</b>             | you          | ty, vy                                  |
| window           | <b>okno</b>               | you (object) | ta, vás                                 |
| windy            | <b>veterno</b>            | you (to/for) | tebe, vám                               |
| wine             | <b>víno</b>               | young        | mladý                                   |
| winebar          | <b>vináreň</b>            | your         | <b>tvoj, váš</b>                        |
| with             | <b>s, so + ins.; ins.</b> |              |   |

# Index of language points

References are to lesson numbers. P = Pronunciation guide. G = Grammar summary.

- able, be 5
- about (theme) 5
- above 6
- accusative case 3, plural 10
- across 3
- adjectives: table G
  - singular 1, 3, 9
  - plural 10, 14
  - soft 14
  - comparison -er/-est 14
  - ed, -ing 16
- adverbs 7, 9, 14
- advise 15
- after 5
- age 11
- all 16
- allow 15
- along 5
- alphabetical order P
- among 6
- animals, in plural 10
- animals, young of 16
- arrive/depart 13
- articles, absence of 1
- aspect of verbs 8
  
- be 1
- before 6
  
- behind/beyond 6
- below 6
- beside/near 5
- better/best 14
- better/worse 14
- between 6
- body, parts of 7
- by 6
  
- can, be able 5
- carry/convey 7, 14
- case forms, basic 4
- close/open 8
- clothes 7
- colours 9
- come/go 4, 8, 13
- comparison 14
- compound verbs 8, 13–14
- conditional 8, 15–16
- conditions 15
- consonants P
- could 8
- countries 2
  
- date 15
- dative case 4–5, 7, plural 14
- day of the week 8
- decimals 16

- depart/arrive 13  
 diminutives 16  
 diphthongs P  
 directions, compass 14  
 dress 7–8  
 drink 7  
 during 3  
 each other 12  
 eat 7  
 ‘-ed’ adjectives 16  
 ‘-er/-est’ 14  
 everyone, everything 16  
 family 3  
 fear 15  
 feel, I/you feel 6  
 female nouns in **-ka** 1  
 female surnames 3  
 filler vowels 11  
 fly 14  
 for 3, 5  
 forbid 15  
 fractions 16  
 frequentatives 16  
 from 4, 8  
 furniture 5  
 future 8, 13–14  
 gender 1  
 general action, verbs of motion 13–14  
 genitive case 4, 7, plural 11  
 geography, Slovak P  
 give 5  
 go/come 4, 8, 13  
 go in/out, up/down 13  
 greetings 1, letters 16  
 habitual action, verbs of motion 13–14  
 have, had 1, 6  
 he/him, 1, 13  
 help 5  
 house and rooms 5  
 how are you? 1  
 I/me 1, 12  
 if 15  
 imperative 10  
 imperfective/perfective verbs 8  
 in/into 4, 5  
 in front of 6  
 in order to 15  
 infinitives 1–2, 4–5, 15  
 ‘-ing’ nouns, adjectives 16  
 instructions 10  
 instrumental case 4, 6, 9, plural 14  
 into, to 4  
 it 1, 13  
 know 2–3, 5  
 languages 2  
 lead 7, 14  
 less/more 14  
 let’s 10  
 letter-writing 16  
 lie/lie down 10  
 like, would like 2, 6, 8  
 liking better/best 14  
 locative case 4–5, plural 14  
 me/I 1, 12  
 meals 7  
 meet/part 13  
 money 11, 16  
 months 15  
 more/less 14  
 more/most 14  
 motion towards 7  
 naming 1  
 nationalities 2

- near/beside 5  
 necessity 2, 16  
 negatives 1  
 never 9  
 nobody, nothing, no- 9  
 nouns: tables G  
     accusative 3, plural 10  
     genitive 4, 7, plural 11  
     dative 4–5, 7, plural 14  
     instrumental 4, 6, 9, plural 14  
     locative 4–5, plural 14  
     plural cases 10–11, 14  
     diminutives 16  
     nouns from verbs 16  
     type **dievča** 16, G  
     neuter in **-eum**, **-io** 5  
     vocative 16
- numbered objects 16  
 numbers P, 2, 10–11, 16  
 numbers, ordinal 12, 15
- objects of verbs 3, *see* accusative  
 of 4, plural nouns 11  
 on/onto 3, 5, 8  
 open/close 8  
 orders 10  
 ordinal numbers 12, 15  
 out of 4  
 own (my own etc.) 15
- pairs of verbs 8  
 part/meet 13  
 parts of the body 7  
 passives 16  
 past conditional 16  
 past 6, perfective past 8  
 percentages 16  
 perfective/imperfective verbs 8  
 personal names, possessives 15  
 place, with cases 4  
 place and motion 7
- please 1, 4  
 pleasing 6  
 plural forms 2, 10–11, 14  
 points of the compass 14  
 possessives 2, 15  
 possessive 'own' 15  
 possessives from nouns/names 15  
 possibility, be able/can 5  
 prefer 14  
 prefixes 8, 13  
 prepositions, *see* cases  
 prepositions, summary table G  
 pronouns: personal 1, 12–13  
     somebody, something 3, 9  
     nobody, nothing 9  
     everyone, everything 16  
 purpose 15
- quantities 11, 16  
 questions 1
- reflexive **sa**, **si** 1, 4  
 repeated action, verbs of motion 13–14  
 frequentatives 16  
 requests, 1, 4, 8, 15  
 rhythmic law 1–5, 9–10, 14, 16, G  
 rooms 5  
 run 14
- same 16  
 say/tell 8  
 seasons 6  
 self 1, 4, 12  
 sets of things 16  
 shopping 11  
 sit/sit down 10  
 soft consonants P  
 soft adjectives 14  
 soft nouns 5, 7, plural 10–11, 14  
 somebody, something, some- 3, 9  
 suffixes, verbs 8

- sums 16  
 superlatives 14  
 surnames 1, 3  
 take 7, 14  
 telephone 8  
 tell/say 8  
 tell to do 10, 15  
 that 9, 10, 14  
 there isn't 16  
 they/them 1, 13  
 this 9, 10, 14  
 through 3  
 tickets 6  
 time, from/till 8  
 time, telling 12  
 to/for, with dative 5  
 to, in instructions 15  
 to, into 4  
 to, towards 5  
 travel and transport 6  
  
 understand 2  
 us/we 1, 12  
 used to 16  
  
 verb pairs, verb families 8  
 verbal adjectives 16  
 verbal nouns 16  
 verbs: tables G  
     present types 1–2, 4, 7  
     in *-nút* 10  
     future 8, 13–14  
     past 6–8, 10  
     conditional 8, 15–16  
     compound 8, 13  
     frequentatives 16  
     passive 16  
  
     vocative 16  
     voiced/voiceless consonants P  
     vowel lengthening (zero ending) 11  
     vowel shortening: *see rhythmic law*  
     vowels P  
     vowels, 'filler' 11  
  
     want/wish 4–5, 15  
     was 6  
     wash 7  
     we/us 1, 12  
     wear 14  
     weather 6  
     week, days of 8  
     went 6  
     what kind of? 3  
     what? 9  
     whether/if 15  
     which 3  
     who? 3, 9  
     whose? 14  
     will be 8  
     will/would 15  
     wish, want 4–5, 15  
     with 6  
     without 6  
     word order 1, 3, 6  
     worse/better 14  
     would 8, 15, would have 16  
     write 4  
     writing letters 16  
  
     year 15  
     you 1, 12  
     young of animals 16  
  
     zero ending 11